The Romans of Partenay,
or of Insignen.
EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.
GLASGOW: OGLE & CO., 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 20.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
BOSTON: DUTTON & CO.
The Romans of Partenay, or of Lusignen:

Otherwise known as

The Tale of Melusine:

Translated from the French of La Condrette
(about 1500–1520 A.D.).

Edited from a unique manuscript in the library of Trinity College, Cambridge,

With an

Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index,

By the

Rev. Walter W. Skeat, M.A.,

Late fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge, editor of Lancelot of the Laik, &c.

London:
Published for the Early English Text Society, by N. Trübner & Co., 60, Paternoster Row.

MDCCLXVI.
Preface.

I. Description of the MSS., &c.

The MS. from which the present poem has now for the first time been copied and edited, is one belonging to Trinity College, Cambridge (where its class-mark is R. 3. 17), and which is believed to be unique. It is written (on paper) in a clear but somewhat loose handwriting of the beginning of the sixteenth century, or possibly of the latter part of the fifteenth. I am inclined to guess that it may appear to be of a somewhat later date than it really is, from the possibility of its not having been written by a professional scribe; that is to say, if we are to take literally the lines near the conclusion,

Sin at your request and commandement
This warke on me toke, it to fouarge and make;
And so haue I doyn after myne entent
With litterall carectes for your sake,
Tham conueying in sable lines blake, &c.,

which seem to imply that the maker of the translation wrote it out with his own hand. This, however, of course involves two other assumptions; viz. that this particular copy is the original (perhaps the only) one, and that the translator was one who did not employ a scribe. The MS. is nearly perfect, but two leaves are wanting, viz. fol. 1 and fol. 88. The sense of the latter has been easily supplied from a French MS. which will be described shortly, but fol. 1 contained original matter which might have told us more about the translator himself. As each page contains exactly four stanzas of seven lines each, we have thus lost 56 lines at most; but the precise
number being uncertain, the lines of the Prologue have been numbered separately. Had the MS. been perfect, the whole number of folios would have been 124.

On the margins of some of the leaves side-notes have been made in a much later hand. As these relate to the story, they have all been copied, and will be found in the foot-notes. On a vellum fly-leaf at the beginning are the marks of ownership—

"Liber Ricardi St Georg\nNorroy Regis armorum \} fero et spero"—

and below this—

"Beaupre Bell, de Beauprè Hall in Com. Norf. APIΣΤΕYEIN."

By the latter of these it was presented to Trinity College.

On the front of this fly-leaf there is written, in a very scrawly handwriting which it is very difficult to read, the following short poem, which seems worth transcription.

"masteres anne,
I am your man,
as you may well espye:
if you will be
content with me,
I am merrie, [say I.] ¹
but if you will
kepe company still
with every knaue yat comes by;
what boteth [be]
faythefull to [me,] ²
I am, &c.
but if you fayne,
I tell you playne,
if I shulde presently die,
I will none suche

¹ The word "merrie" is hardly legible, and the line is incomplete.
² "be" and "me" have been cut off in the binding; there are also two other readings of these two lines, through which the pen has been drawn, viz.
"then shall you be—forsaken of me,"
and,
"then kepe you still—to werke your will."
as lones to muche,
I am, &c.

For if you can
lone every man
yet can flatter & lie,
then are not ye
no mache for me,
I am, &c.

For I will not take
no suche kinde of mak[e,]
as you shall full well it trie,
yet of wil me cast
at every blast ;
I am merrie, &c."

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS. as printing allows of, all its peculiarities being preserved as far as possible, such as, e.g. the use of the long s (f), and the occasional occurrence of a small letter at the beginning of a line. Every stanza begins with a large red capital, indicated by the large printed letter. The expansions of the various contractions, which occur but seldom, are indicated by italics. A hyphen within a word, such as in "vn-to" (Prol. 1. 63), means that the syllables are written with a space between them. Letters or words between square brackets—such as in columb[e]re, 1. 125—do not exist in the MS., but have been supplied because they are necessary. To ensure accuracy, the proof-sheets have been twice compared with the MS. throughout the poem. I am of course responsible for the punctuation, marks of parenthesis and quotation, side-notes, &c.

The peculiarities of the MS. that have not been observed are these:—full points occurring at the ends of lines¹; the strokes through the upper part of the letter h when it follows c, g, or t; slight tags to f, g, t, and h, which (in this MS. at least) mean nothing; and the fine downstrokes which are introduced as metrical marks. These are often left out, and were merely intended to shew

¹ When one occurs in the middle of a line it has been inserted between marks of parenthesis, as at 1. 95.
where a pause might be best made in the middle of a line when recited aloud. Such strokes occur oftenest after the fifth syllable, often after the fourth, rarely after the sixth. In the first stanza of the Poem, p. 8, one occurs three times, as thus:—

Hit is fo in trouth / in time aunçon,
After the time / that OctauAn was, . . . .
And A man ful ripe / in other clerigie.

The lines most frequently consist of ten syllables, which require a slow and measured pronunciation to make them melodious. The —e and —es at the end of words must often be fully pronounced.

The construction of the sentences, owing to some peculiarities of grammar, is not unfrequently obscure, and the question of punctuation in particular often presented difficulties, but nearly all doubts of this kind have been completely removed by a very fortunate circumstance, which, as I believe, has nearly doubled the value of the present edition. A MS. (marked Ll. 2. 5) belonging to the Cambridge University Library was kindly pointed out to me by Mr Bradshaw, of King's College, which contains, in French, the whole of the very romance of which the present edition is a translation. The copy which our translator used must have resembled this very closely indeed, though a few differences of reading can be traced; and, as a consequence, this French MS. has proved of the utmost service, and a constant reference to it has explained many a sentence, phrase, and word, which would else have proved puzzling; whilst a comparison of the two throughout has well decided the punctuation. The French MS. is in all respects superior to the English one; it is older, clearer, and better written, and the language is easier and more poetical. It is of the fifteenth century, on paper, and contains 165 written leaves, followed by a few blank ones. Of these, the first 148 are occupied by the "Romance of Melusine," and the rest chiefly by a Chronicle of events in French history, arranged in short paragraphs under their proper years, the last entry referring to the year 1454. Numerous extracts from it, illustrative of doubtful points, will be found in the notes, and the whole of the Prologue to the poem, carefully copied from it, will be found at p. 229.

Besides these two, there is also a copy of the Romance in prose
in the British Museum (Bibl. Reg. 18. B. ii) consisting of 219 folios, and entitled—in a later hand—"A Chronicle of Melusine in olde English, compiled by Ikon of Arras, and dedicated to the Duke of Berry and Auvergne, and translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of Frenche into Englishe." But this, as will be more fully explained presently, gives a different version of the story, and I have not made much use of it. Still, a few extracts from it will be found in the notes, and one of some length on a later page of this preface.

There is also, among the Additional MSS. in the British Museum, a short abstract of the Poem in Icelandic, entitled "Melccinæ og Remunds Saga." It is, however, of late date and little value. It contains seven short chapters, and begins on fol. 62b of MS. 4870.

Several quotations will be found in the notes from a book of which the title is—"Histoire des ducs de Bourbon et des comtes de Forez: par Jean-Marie de la Mure"—printed at Paris in 1860 from a MS. bearing the date 1675. The author accepts a large portion of the romance as genuine history, and works out genealogies and titles with the most laborious minuteness. Several of his statements are certainly open to question, but the book is interesting as illustrating the romance; see particularly book ii. chapters 77—84.

II. SOME ACCOUNT OF THE ROMANCE.

The first mention of the Romance is in connection with Jean d'Arras; of whom some account is given in the "Biographie Universelle." He was secretary to the Duc de Berri, who was brother to Charles V., king of France, and uncle to Charles VI., and also notorious for exercising great severity as governor of Languedoc. In the year 1387, the duke bade Jean d'Arras to write this romance for the amusement of his (the duke's) sister, the Duchesse de Bar. The famous deeds of the fairy Melusine had been long before this recorded in some documents that had been carefully preserved in the castle of Lusignan. To these Jean trusted for the main portion of his work, but added much of his own. It seems probable that it was at first written in Latin, as we
find in the Catalogue of MSS. of Gaul, Switzerland, &c., by D. G. Hœnel, the following entry:—"187. Roman de Melusine; traduction en vers du latin de Jean d'Arras." But it is probable that it was not long before there was also a French prose translation in existence, which may have been made by Jean d'Arras himself. This seems to agree with the statement in the Cambridge MS.,

"Deux beaulx liures furent trouuez
En latin, et tous approimtez,
Quon fist translatuer en francois (see p. 231);
or as our English translator puts it,

"Within the toure of noble mabregon
To faire bokis were fonden ther-on
In latin, And all preuyd at deuife,
That men made translat in moft frenshe wyfe."

It is this version of the story which is given by the British Museum prose romance, which begins by invoking the "Creatour of alle Creatures," and continues thus. "And to the plaisire of my Right high, mighti, and doultid lord Johan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce,2 due of Berry & of Anuergne. The whiche hisstory I haue bygonue after the veray & true Cronykles which I haue had of hym and of the Erle of Salesbury3 in England, & many other bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to acomplysshe hit. And bycause that his noble suster Mary, doughtir to the kyng Johñ of Fraunce, duchesse of Bar, had Requyred my said lord for to haue the said historye; the whiche in fauour of her [he] hath doon as moche to his power as he might, to serche the very trouth & true historye; and hath commaunded me for to do drawe alle alonge thisstorye whiche heraftur foloweth. And I, as of herte diligent, of my pouere witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth of hys gracious commandement . . . . Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the Wensday, saynt Clementis day,4 in wynter, the yer of our lord mcccclxxxvii.; beseeching alle them that shalle rede or here it Redde

1 So also Brunet, in his "Manuel de Libraire," speaks of this romance as "tiré du latin de Jean d'Arras."
2 Jean H., mentioned a few lines below.
3 See note to Prol. 1, 178.
4 Nov. 23. But, in 1387, Nov. 23 was a Saturday; the letters vii probably mean iii, mistaken for uii; for 1381 brings it right.
that they wil pardon me my fawte yf their be eny. For certaynly I haue composed it the moost lustly that I coude or haue mowe, aftir the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to be trew."

The earliest printed edition of this Romance is thus described by Brunet (Manuel du Libraire, ed. 1862, iii. 519). "Jean d'Arras. La Melusine. 'Cy finist le liure de Melusine en francoys, imprime par maistre Adam Steinschaber, natif de Suinfurt, en la noble cite de Geneue'. 1478. in-fol. goth. fig. en bois." It was one of the very first books printed at Geneva. Since then, editions have been very numerous,¹ as well in Spanish and German as in French; and the story is altogether very familiarly and very widely known upon the continent.

We now come to the second and later form in which the Romance commonly appears.

In the Catalogue of the Library of the duc de la Vallière, (Paris: 1783), vol. ii., p. 260, there is an account of a fine MS. on vellum of "Le Roman de Mélusine, ou de Partenay, ou de Lusignan." The romance is followed by a chronicle in prose of events in French history from the year 1403 to 1454.

There is little doubt but that the Cambridge MS., already described, altogether agrees with this, but is not so fine a copy. This version is in octosyllabic metre, and was undertaken by one named La Coudrette, a Poitevin, at the request of William, lord of Parthenay, and continued after this William's death (in 1401), at the request of his son, John of Parthenay, of whom there are profuse praises towards the close of the poem. La Coudrette tells us, in his prologue,² that he had three books to refer to, and he professes to have done little more than re-arrange his materials. When these failed, he broke off the narrative,³ not venturing to continue it without due authority. He is also careful to tell us ⁴ that his was not the first attempt at versifying the story, and he therefore deprecates all credit for his performance. The reader will observe that the one version only preceded the other by a period which is less than

¹ See Brunet; also the La Vallière catalogue, vol. ii., p. 642; and the Conversations-Lexicon, s.v. Melusine.
² Prol. il. 154—189.
³ See il. 6398, 6399.
⁴ Prol. l. 159—161.
fourteen years. I may add here that there is an excellent modern version of the story in German to be found in Tieck, which I have often found of service. It is written partly in prose and partly in verse, but it is clear that in the prose portion Tieck has often adopted the very words of La Coudrette's version, so that a close comparison of them often explains minor difficulties. So common indeed is the story in Germany that an abstract of it can be had in the form of a "Volksbuch" for a couple of groschen, in which the principal circumstances of the legend are very well and clearly told.

III. THE LEGEND.

The subject of the legend may be most briefly shewn by an extract from a well-known work, which also discusses the name of the heroine.¹ "Melisenda is, in Spanish ballad lore, the wife of Don Gayferos, and, being taken captive by the Moors, was the occasion of the feats that were represented by the puppet-show in which Don Quixote took an unfortunate lively interest."² Melisende again was the princess who carried the uneasy crown of Jerusalem to the house of Anjou; and, perhaps, from the Provençal connection of the English court, Lady Melisent Stafford bore the name in the time of Henry the Second, whence Melicent has become known in England, and never quite disused, though often confounded with Melissa, a bee, and sometimes spelt Milicent.

Melusine was a nymph who became the wife of the Lord de Luzignan, or Lusignan,³ on condition that he should never intrude upon her on a Saturday; of course, after a long time, his curiosity was excited, and stealing a glance at his lady in her solitude, he beheld her a serpent from the waist downward! With a terrible shriek she was lost to him for ever; but she left three [ten] sons, all bearing some deformity, of whom Geoffroi an grant dent was the

¹ Miss Yonge: on Christian Names, vol. i., p. 257.
² In the original Spanish, it is spelt Melisendra—"Melisendra libertada por el famoso D. Gaiferos." Don Quijote: parte ii. cap. xxv.
³ "Près de la ville de Montbrison, il y a une paroisse qui porte encore [A.D. 1675] le propre nom de Lysignium ou Lusignium, qui est le vrai nom latin de la Maison de Lusignan ainsi communément nommé, quoiqu' elle dût être appelée Lusignem." De la Mure: Histoire des ducs de Bourbon, &c., p. 495. The "Conversations-Lexicon" makes Lusineem an anagram of Melusine, but this is clearly a wrong form of the word.
most remarkable. Prose makes this gentleman the son of Eustachie Chabot, heiress of Vouvant, but the Mélusine tradition lingers round his castle of Lusignan, near Poictiers; and to this day, at the fairs of that city, gingerbread cakes are sold, with human head and serpent tail, and called mélusines. A *cri de Mélusine* is, likewise, a proverbial expression for a sudden scream, recalling that with which the unfortunate fairy discovered the indiscretion of her lord.

The story is a frequent one; it occurs in Brittany, where the spell was broken by the husband speaking the word *death* before his fairy wife; and in Wales, where the lady is called a "pellen."

We may recall, too, Keats's "Lamia;" and how she disappeared as Apollonius uttered the word "serpent" for the second time—

"A serpent!" echoed he; no sooner said,

Than with a frightful scream she vanished—

a story which, as Burton tells us, is to be found in Philostratus, in his fourth book *de vitâ Apollonii.1*

To come somewhat more to particulars, I may first observe that the prose version is much longer and contains many more details than the rimed one; 2 and that the story resolves itself into these several parts. (1) The story of king Helmas and the enchanted mountain; (this part of the story is inserted in the rimed version near the end, but the prose version puts it in its proper place at the beginning;) (2) Raymond and Melusine; (3) the deeds of their sons; (4) the legend of Sparrow-hawk Castle; and (5) Palestine's treasure in Arragon. I now give a very brief abstract of these, referring the reader for further details to the "Index of Names" at the end of this volume.

I. King Helmas. Helmas was king of Albany, who married a fairy

1 "L'histoire de Mélusine est une vielle fable dont le cadre, nettement tracé, existoit déjà au xie siècle; du reste, cette tradition de la femme-serpent doit être beaucoup plus ancienne et n'est peut-être pas sans quelque rapport avec le Dracon-calopèdes, et même avec la déesse Derecto des Syriens." De la Mure: *Histoire*, &c.: note by the editor.

2 It records more of the valiant deeds of Raymond and others, and especially of Geoffrey; and it mentions many minor details which the later version altogether omits. For example, when Uriens and Guy depart on their adventures, the prose romance tells us how their mother Melusine gave them two magic rings as amulets; and in like manner she gives two similar rings to Raymond just before her disappearance, to protect him from harm and misfortune. (See fol. 65 and fol. 188.)
named Presine, to whom he swore a vow, that he would never go to see her at the time of child-birth. Presine had three daughters at a birth, whom she named Melusine, Melior, and Palestine. Helmas then broke his promise, and the three children in revenge, being themselves endued with fairy power, shut him up in an enchanted mountain till his death (pp. 152—161). Presine, angry at this, punishes each of them with different evil destinies. Melusine was partly to turn into a serpent every Saturday; Melior was to be banished for ever to Sparrow-hawk Castle in Armenia; and Palestine to keep unceasing watch over king Helmas' treasure, which was deposited on a mountain-top in Arragon.

II. Count Raymond. A rich earl of Poitiers, named Amery, adopted Raymond, the youngest son of the earl of Forest. In a boar-hunt, Raymond accidentally slays his benefactor; and soon after, whilst riding aimlessly about absorbed in grief, is surprised by the sudden sight of three beautiful damsels (Melusine, Melior, and Palestine). The eldest, Melusine, promises him all earthly prosperity if he will marry her; but he is to swear that he will never inquire whither she repairs on a Saturday. After some years, he secretly watches her on that day, and perceives her with her serpent's tail. He is deeply grieved, and being very penitent, is forgiven for the present. But afterwards, in a moment of rage at hearing of the death of his son Fromount, he calls her a "serpent!" She swoons with horror, and after an expostulatory farewell glides out at the window in a serpent's form, passing round the castle three times, at each time uttering a terrible and mournful cry. Raymond is afterwards absolved by the pope, and becomes a hermit at Montserrat in Arragon, where he dies at a great age.

III. Their Sons. Raymond and Melusine had ten sons, all marked (except the two youngest) with some blemish, and nearly all remarkable for their great valour and extraordinary success. Of these, Uriens becomes king of Cyprus; Oede was lord of the marches of Poitiers; Guy was king of Armenia; Anthony, duke of Luxemburg; Raynold, king of Bohemia; whilst Geoffrey with the great tooth, who succeeded his father as lord of Parthenay, performed many prodigies of valour, slaying the giant Guedon in Guerrande,
the giant Grimold in Northumberland, and discovering all the wonders of the enchanted mountain. But the seventh son, Fromont, dis-
graced the family by becoming a monk, for which act his brother Geoffrey burnt him alive with all his fellow-monks, abbey and all. The next, Horrible, was put to death by Melusine's order, for fear of the wickedness he would else commit. The two last were born some time after the rest, and were named Raymond and Thierry; Raymond became earl of Forest, and Thierry succeeded Geoffrey as lord of Parthenay.

IV. Sparrow-hawk Castle. In this castle, which was in Ar-
menia, the lady Melior was to abide for the rest of her days, as above told. Presine had given her the power of granting a boon to any knight who watched the deathless sparrow-hawk which was within the castle, for three days and nights without sleeping. He was to have whatever he liked, except Melior herself as wife. The story tells how a king of Armenia dared to ask this, and how he was punished.

V. Palestine's treasure. Palestine guarded her father's treasure at the top of a mountain in Arragon, which is variously spelt Courgo, Coinqs, Quonig, &c. In this she was assisted by a huge serpent with a huge eye, and by a great bear and innumerable snakes that infested the lower part of the mountain. The story tells how an English knight slew the bear, and passed by all the snakes, but was swallowed bodily by the great serpent, in whose mouth he appeared no bigger than a pasty does in an oven.

The rimed romance concludes with many praises of John of Par-
thenay, with a lament for his father's death, and, at the end, a solemn litany for the preservation of the family and lineage of Parthenay. La Coudrette discusses the proper name to be given to the romance, and decides that it ought to be named either the "Romans of Parthenay," or the "Romans of Lusignen"; to which decision I have therefore adhered.²

The translator appends a short epilogue of his own, as he had previously prefixed a few lines to the old French prologue.

The story of Melusine is alluded to by several historical writers.

¹ See Index of Names; s.v. Raymond (2).
² See II. 6116—6421.
Thuanus speaks of the excellent situation of the castle of Lusignan, strongly fortified as it was by a wide fosse and two large towers, and conspicuous for its "Melusine's tower," and "Geoffrey's gateway;" the latter being so called, according to Brantôme, from the colossal statue of Geoffrey au grand dents which surmounted it. Thuanus also mentions the famous fountain (for the marvellous origin of which see p. 32 of the present volume) in the words—"in ima turre fons Melusine a pocticis nostratibus decantatae fabulis famosus scatet." Both Mezeray and Brantôme record the sad fate of this famous castle, which was razed to the ground by the Duc de Montpensier in 1574, because it had been determined to pull down all the fortresses wherein the Huguenots had been accustomed to take refuge. Mezeray's words with regard to Melusine are remarkable. "The great acts of Melusine," he says, "her riches, her extraordinary knowledge, which she derived either from communication with higher intelligences, or rather perhaps from the cabala of the Rabbins who were then very numerous in France, have procured her immortal renown in the mouth of posterity; who, not knowing her real history, have invented marvellous tales concerning her. These I leave to amuse old women and children. But I am enabled to report, on the credit of many persons of honour, and who are not generally thought credulous, that it has been observed that whenever one of her descendants, or a king of France, was about to die, she appeared on the great tower in a widow's habit, and uttered long and terrible cries; that she was thus seen before the siege of Lusignan; and that, when her castle was about to be demolished, she was seen longer than ever before, shrieking aloud in so lamentable a voice that she cleft all hearts with pity; but that she has since never been seen or heard save very rarely. Si cela est ainsi (I here give his own words) les Theologiens en rechercheront la cause, et nous enseigneront si nous devons croire que des pareilles choses proviennent, ou de la malice des demons, qui se plaisent a mettre

1 Thuanus: lib. lix. § xi.
3 Brantôme: Capitaines Françaises; tome iii. p. 369.
4 Brantôme also expressly calls her "veuve," so that the historical account is that she outlived Raymond, instead of disappearing so suddenly as in the romance.
les hommes en peine par ces illusions; ou de la bonté de Dieu, qui pour montrer aux incredules l'immortalité de l'âme, et les merveilles de l'autre monde, veut permettre aux esprits heroïques de paroître quelquefois en celuy-cy dans les lieux qu'ils ont aimez durant leur vie."

Brantôme also testifies, but less strongly, to these miraculous reappearances;¹ and especially laments the destruction of the fine castle, for which many spoke of the Duc de Montpensier in terms of bitter execration. The ruins of the castle can now scarcely be traced. Miss Costello has recorded her extreme disappointment when visiting the site of them.²

With regard to the question just above raised by Mezeray as to the existence of fairies, the following extract from the prose romance is very interesting, and may serve also as a specimen of it.

"We haue thenne herd sey and telle of our auncyents, that in manye partes of the sayd land of Poytow haue ben shewed vnto many oon Right famylerly many manyeres of thinges the which som called Gobelyns, the other Fayrees, and the other bonnes dames or good ladyes; and they goo by nyght tyme and entre within the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of their cradelles, and somtyme they turne them out of theyre wit, and somtyme they Brenne & Roste them before pe fyre, and when they departe fro them they lene them as hoole as they were before, and sorn gyue grette happe & Fortune in this world. And yet haue I hered say of oon Geruase, a man worshipfull & of credence, that sorn other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places in lyknes of wymen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body, whichide dice scoure pannes and potts and dide suche thinges as a mayde or servaunt oughte to doo, lyberaly & without dooynge of any harme. And also he saith for certayn that in his tyme he had a frend that was auncyent & old,

¹ Cf. note to l. 3711.
² Miss L. S. Costello; Béarn and the Pyrenees, vol. i., p. 140. She gives a sketch of the legend, and adds that Bouchet, in his chronicles, says he cannot find that any duke or count of Poitou was ever called Bertrand or Aymery; whence he concludes that the whole story is one of those which it is impossible to believe, but which are at the same time delectable to read.
which Recounted for trouth that in hys dayes he hadd seen many tymes such things.” (fol. 2 b.)

Jean d’Arras then goes on to give several instances of men who had married fairies, always under certain conditions, and specially mentions one whom “Geruase” well knew, viz., Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the province of Asy, who found a fairy in a meadow, and married her on the understanding that he was never to behold her stripped; but happening one day to see her in this condition, she immediately “putte her heed into a watre, & was tourned into a serpent.” (fol. 3.)

With regard to Melusine’s re-appearance before calamities, and to her tending her youngest son, Thierry, as described at p. 140, the reader may compare the following. “In German tradition the name of Berchta is given to the so-called White Lady, who appears in many houses when a member of the family is about to die, and, as we have seen, is thought to be the ancestress of the race. She is sometimes seen at night tending and nursing the children, in which character she resembles the Keltic fairy. In other and more widespread traditions, the White Lady is an enchanted or spell-bound damsel, who usually every seventh year appears near some mountain or castle, points out treasures, and awaits her release.¹ Sometimes she is seen combing her long locks or drying flax-knots. Some pretend that, like Huldra, she is disfigured by a tail.”² The story entitled “How Count Baldwin of Flanders married a devil”³ has several points of resemblance to that of Melusine; but Melusine is always represented as most loving and beneficent.

IV. THE LANGUAGE OF THE POEM.

Judging by the occasional occurrence of plural verb-endings in —en, the dialect would appear to be Midland; but the lateness of the MS. renders such speculation doubtful. I may remark, however, that I have observed that many of the words used occur in the Promptorium Parvulorum, with the same peculiarities of spelling. The chief points to be noted are these.

We find plural verb-endings of the indicative present in —en;

¹ This clearly applies to the legends of Melior and Palestine.
³ Ditto, vol. iii., p. 283.
as, 
willen, shinen; and also of the past tense, as weren. The past tense of weak verbs ends in —ed, and the past participles end in —ed or —ged. The past participles of strong verbs end in —en, —yn, and even —ing or —yn ; as founden, forsaïden (1290), wroughten, thrown, corne, yeuyn (1860), taking (4921), tayng (1754), yeung (1799). Even the infinitive mood sometimes ends in —ing or —yn, as endesing (5625), yeuyn (1528). Present participles end in —ing, —yn, —and, —ant. Examples of the latter forms are trenchand (3045), distrassand (4082), Ioynant (4513). But the most characteristic marks of the poem are these; (1) the continual omission of inflexions, so that we meet with reste = rested, yilde = yielded, gif = given, whilst diffend (1468) is to be compared with deffendyd (2105); so too goo = gone, be = been, mysdo = misdone ; (2) an extraordinary partiality on the part of the writer for the present participle, which he continually compels to serve both for the present and past tenses of the indicative; see musing = mused (363); and (3) a continual omission of the personal pronouns —see note to Prol., I. 4—and even of the verb to be, which gives many sentences an awkward look, and obscures the meaning. As a genitive case-ending, —is twice occurs written apart from the word, as sone is = son's (28), and Tristram is = Tristram's (5750). By comparing Tristram-is with Tristram his (6008), we have a good example of the unhappy substitution of his for the genitive case-ending; a change to which proper names were very liable. It is further remarkable that this case-ending is constantly neglected altogether, as castell strength, lady love, medee auise, judir deth, for castle's strength, lady's love, Medea's advice, father's death. The following past tenses are noticeable: fly (flew), blent, glint, rought (recked), sly (slew), cline (clove), grint (ground), lepe, condute (conducted). Some of the past participles have prefixes; as, I-graunted, I-thought, A-conqueste (2492), A-stoned, generally spelt stoned. Also to-stoniste, to-chapped, to-rent occur, from the verbs to-stonish, to-chap, to-rend. Owing to the frequent occurrence of y avoir in the French, the translator constantly uses had or was had in place of was, and had or were had for were. Similarly, the occurrence of the French elle induces him to use she in place of it more than once. The accusa-
tive case me is curiously used, as me moste goo = I must go, speke me shall = I shall speak. Me is also found, as commonly elsewhere, in the sense of the Fr. on. The plural bretherin occurs twice.

Of adjectives, we find many double comparatives, as, more leuer, more fairer; and superlatives, as moste hieste, moste gretteste. The forms bryghty, moisty, occurring for bright, moist, are very significant as pointing to the full pronunciation of the final —e in old authors, being no doubt corruptions of brighte, moiste. So too pitty is written instead of pitte = pit. The forms breueloker = brieflier, and good-lokest = goodliest, are worth remark, as instances of forms common in older MSS. The adverbs fro-hens, fro-thens, wher-hens, ther-hens, ther-thens, occur often. The adverb well is generally spelt will, which is at first sometimes perplexing. Souly occurs instead of soon in l. 4078. In and inly mean very, extremely.

The conjunctions yet (yet) and as (as) are strong provincial forms. The preposition toward admits of separation, as to-Brehaigne-ward (2147, 2151). Double negatives are common. The forms not-for-put (nevertheless) and never-for-neuer (never at any time) are curious.

A few words as to spelling. Th seems to have often had the sound of t; as we find thought, thowne, thaken, thouchyng, thyme, meaning taught, town, taken, touching, time. Compare whyth, with, and whent, went. Such words as crying, rejoying, noyng, are spelt cryng, reioyng, noyng. We find, too, piteous, shameuous, beauteuous, hiduous, for piteous, &c. World is spelt both worle and icordle, and for worldly we find worly and wordly. But one of the most curious freaks is that two letters are often transposed; continually is for written when fro is meant; and traying, presone, beded, presight, aduersite, berres, ther, severely, perdestinat, portared, sogren, all noticed in the foot-notes, are simply errors for taryng, persone, bedde, perjight, advertise, berres, thre, severely, predestinat, portraed, sogern, respectively. It is curious that r is the letter shifted, in nine instances out of eleven. We are thus left somewhat uncertain as to whether the spellings refershing, crossing are intentional, or whether they should be altered to refreshing, curssing. Cf. the O.E. kerse, bril, for cress, bird.
It only remains for me to explain why my name appears alone on the title-page, instead of jointly with that of the Rev. J. Rawson Lumby, as at first advertised. Mr Lumby had done his full share of the transcription, viz. the latter half of the poem, from l. 3151 to the end, and had begun to add side-notes, when he was compelled by stress of work to relinquish the task. He has nevertheless been ever ready with suggestions and advice, and to him therefore are my thanks especially due; as also to Mr Bradshaw (as before mentioned), and to the authorities of Trinity College, who have allowed me the unrestrained use of their manuscript.
CORRECTIONS, ETC.

P. 9, l. 28. For "fone is" read "fone-is," to show that is is the genitive case-ending; see preface, p. xv.

P. 19, l. 347. For "faluż" read "faluz."

P. 22, l. 443. The reading "ne" is certainly right. See the note.

P. 26, l. 554. I am not sure that I am right in displacing the MS. reading "os," and substituting "as"; for though "as" is the usual form, still "os" occurs no less than four times, viz. in l. 554, 2076, 3372, and 6424. Os = as, occurs in Piers Plowman; Harl. MS. 875; Passus III; and in other MSS.

P. 45, l. 1095. Insert a hyphen in "ther-thens."

P. 64, l. 1723. The MS. has "ftafte." But I propose to read "ftafte." See Glossary.

P. 82, l. 2269. For "Anly" read "And."

P. 85, l. 2339. The MS. reading "will" should be retained.

P. 100, l. 2792. The MS. has "shifte;" but I propose "shifte."

See Glossary.

P. 139, l. 3964. Add a comma at the end of the line.

P. 150, foot-note. For "3492" read "3942."

P. 181, foot-note. For "by mistake" read "intentionally." I have since noticed that wherever the word "pope" occurs, it has a line (a very thin one) drawn through it.

P. 188, l. 5456. For "yift" read "yift."

P. 206, l. 5992. For "displaide" read "difplaide."

P. 215, l. 6297. For "parfight" read "parfight."

Line 980. Probably *ris* means Rays, near Rennes.

Line 5414. The eve of St. John the Baptist was an appropriate time for the adventure. In Thorpe's Northern Mythology (vol. iii., p. 140), we read that "treasures burn especially on St. John's night, and those who know how can [then] raise them."

Line 6210. This feast is not called St. Louis' day; for that is Aug. 25, the day of his death.
The Romans of Partenay,
or of Lusignen.

[Fol. 1 is wanting.]

* * * * * * *

For full fayne I wold do that myght you please,
yff connyng I had in it to procede;
To me wold it be grete pleaunce and case,
yff aught here might fourge to youre wyl in dede;
But barayne is my foule,1 fauting connynghedde,
Natheles in it wil I make progreffe,
Euermore truftyng to youre gentilnesse.

8 I not aqueynted of birth naturall,
   With fre[n]the his verray trew parfightnesse,
   Nor enpreyntyd is in mynde cordiall;
   O word For other myght take by lacheffe,
12 Or perauentre by vnconnyngneffe;
   For frenfhe rimed or metred alway
   Ful oft is sraunge in englifhe to diplay.

As nighe as metre will conclude sentence,
16 Folew I wil here my president,
   Ryght as the frenfhe wil yiff me euidence,
   Cereatly after myn entent;
   Al-be-hit I am vn refusing,
20 Ne can noght peynt my boke as other be,
   Vnder youre supporte yut aunter wyl me.

1 MS. "foule."
I will not invoke false deities,

In ancient times, men invoked deities; thus Valerius Maximus invoked Tiberius,

In the proem of his notable book, how the gods were created.

Midas, the rich king of Phrygia, besought Bacchus that all he touched might become gold; which the god granted, even with respect to his meat and drink.

Some gods owed their origin to poets' fancy; others were malign spirits, giving oracular responses.

To call to my aid gods such as these, who are of no

In auncion tyme of antiquite

Men called goddis to theire helpe and ayd,

With detoute prayers to theire deite,

Their werkys to fourge eche houred brayd,

Their celles of memoir to refreshe prayd;

As valerius maximus gan do,

Tiberius Cefar called helpe vnto,

In the proheim off hys notabile boke,

Wher all thes goddis apertly may fee,

(ho-so luft out it to behold or loke),

hou thay were creat eche in their degre;

Som luft their faders honoured fhold be,

Som for their strenght or for thing in holde,

Som for wisdome or fomwhat vnfold.

Off roial frige Midas the riche king

Bachus god of wyne ther befoght he,

That al gold myght be what he were touching,

For he was of hys confraternite;

hys defyre graunted that gold fine fhold be,

Ne had thys god relefed hym at large

Off hys mete and drinke, per fhold he had dif-

dcharge.

To declare how they were deyfied,

large tyme, longe fpace wold it ocupie;

Poetes whilom fom fantefied;

Som maligne goftes, ful of tyrannye,

yeuyng anfweres to peple fondrye;

For to tell or fay their generacion

yn vayn, ryght noght their fundacion.

To callen in ayde tho of no valoure,

Which want myght and strenght, vertu none hauyng,

1 MS. "houredbrayd."
BUT ONLY THE TRUE GOD.

52 That miscreantes whilom gan honoure,  
    As for their goddis thaim deyfigyn,  
    As power had, where non wer hauyng,  
    Poetes faynyd in their poetrie,
56 Theim-felfen the more for to magnifie ;

Suche fayned goddys nought is to cal on,  
    Thing Agayne our feith And but fantifie ;  
    No help ne focour to cal thaim vppon ;
60 I lay theim Apart And fully denye,  
    Requiring that lord whych is Almightye  
    That of hys highneffe he be my trew gide,  
    The weyes of trouth me vn-to prouide ;
64 That in thys mater my penne conueid be  
    As plefaunce may be vn-to the highneffe  
    Off our saced lord, fitting in trinite ;  
    Now be he myn ayde in thys befinneffe ;
68 To hym only I truft in thyths forth progresse,  
    That throug his mercy he me fend such grace,  
    For frenfh tyll englifh that it may purchace.

Mi labor wil don After my simplesesse  
    hit for to conuey As I can or may,  
    Befeching hertly of your highneffe  
    My defautes for to pardon alway ;  
    Truftyng to your grace now euer and ay,
72 The prohemy and prologue of frensch here begun,  
    After my sampler palling forth ther-in.

The philisopher ful wyfe was And fage  
    Which declarid in hys firft pagont,  
    hys methephifike off noble corage,  
    Werto plieth humayn entendement,  
    Naturally conceuyng the entent

1 MS. "feith."  
2 MS. "fend."  
3 Fro (?)
SCIENCE IS A WORTHY THING.

To lerne And know; thing said wel and wifly;

D

efieth come to know that he knowith noght,
Whoether of loue or of reproche it be,
And sspecialy if it touche hym aught.

88

Things of long time paflyd in contre,
When rehearsed is, pleafith hertes fre;
Auncion things Wich ben good and fayre,
As to fpeke of king arthurde debonayr,

92

How he wold preue his vertu and manhede
With noble knightes and peple worthi;
Many of hym fpekith at thyshour in-dede;
And fo thai don of lancelet fureli,

96

Wher ful good loos had ryght ful preyfingly;
Of perceuale also, And of Gawayn,
Which lo! at no time had hertes in uayn

A

s for to adquire grete honour and prife;

100

Ful wel leruid were in knightly coniectures.
Who wyl know and enquere in what maner wyfe,
By fye and land meruelous auentures
Which came unto fondry creatures,

104

For to conne it is an excellent thyng,
And caufe of many marnys preferring.

A

s rofe is aboue al floures moft fine,
So is science moft dignne of worthynesse;

108

ho noght ne can, noght worth is to deuine;
hit wel belongeth to tho of goodness;
Strongly to enquere hiftories exprefse,
Which that of longe tyne makith memorie;

112

Moch more is if he be of degré hye;

H

E fhold ferche, fro degré into degré,

[Fol. 3 b.]

Is to know that which he before knew not, especially in matters that concern him closely. Old things, when rehearsed, are good and fair; as when we speak of Arthur,

and of his noble knights and worthy people: or of Lancelot, Percival, or Gawan.

Whoever inquires of their marvellous adventures by sea and land, will find it an excellent thing to know them.

Science is a most worthy thing: and every one should study history, more especially if he be of high degree.

[Fol. 4]

Such a man ought to know his pedi-
A LORD OF POITIERS BADE ME WRITE A BOOK,

Duke, Erle, or Baron, or markois if he be,

116 So pat long mynde therof shuld be ywis;
   Al thes lorde's gret fo fhold do in thys,
   Ther-off seripture make as an historie,
   To ende that ay ther-of be memorie.

120 For-fro-moche I say that an high grete lord,
   Whilom of peiters, (whom god yf honour),
   lord of partenay named of record,
   To whom I shal be redy at ech hour,

124 Me commaunded, noght gretly, to labour
   Of hys proper fenement and feling;
   Hys commaundment wern shal I no-thing.

Thus it was that a great lord of
Poitiers and Partenay commanded
me to labour after this manner;

128 For every knawith and full wel May fee
   That to lorde's here men obby, lo! fhold;
   ho can it noght do, wife ne fage is he;
   In hys fwtte langage ther he me unfold
   That I ther take the exampleir wold

132 Off a boke\(^1\) of his which that he had made;
   He it ther me toke, to fourge it me bade.

To know in fertayn ho fourged and wrought
   Roial lesigne\(^\text{[a]}\), the noble caftell,

136 Als ho made the town, vnto mynde it brought;
   A meruelous ftrength is in for to dwel.
   Then I anfwerd greing to hym well,
   "My lorde," said, "vnto your wil and plefire;"

140 Then said he, "do it at your owne lefire;

F or all the labour and iornay is your;
   Thys caftell was made with on of faire,
   (As ouer all reherfed is eche hour),

144 Of the which I am drawen lynally,
   I and all the lyne difcendyd fully
   Of partenay, it is ryght no doute at all;
   The fair meluigne men gan hire to call,

\(^1\) MS. "aboke."

---

gree, and cause it to be duly recorded.

and men should always obey great lords. His bid-
ding was, that I should make a (rhymed) copy of a
book of his; which book he gave me,

so that men might know who
made the castle
and town of
Lusignan.
I promised ac-
cordingly to do so.

[fol. 4. b.]
He then told me that this castle
was built by a
fairy, from whom
he was himself
lineally descended,
and whose name
was Melusine;
whose arms, indeed, he still bore; and he bade me rewrite the whole history of it in rhyme, because then people would the sooner recite or hear it.

I replied, I would gladly undertake it, but desired to receive no praise, for that it had been put into rhyme once before already.

Still I would try and put it into another shape, which would please him better;

[Fol. 5] and would consult two books that had been found in the tower of Mahregon, originally written in Latin, but which had been afterwards translated into French;

The contents of which books had been subsequently confirmed by Anthony, earl of Salz and Barry, in another book.

148 This fairie womman that you namyd haue, Of whom the armys here now bere wee, The which ofte were borne; and daly it craue, And to end of it there-of memoir be,

152 ye shall put in ryme thys historie fre: I will that it be rimed hole entire, The fonner peple wyll it fay or hire."

Then sayd, "my lord, I grant your entent; Always your will and plefire wil doo, My power alfo; but lofe wil none hent, For in other tyme in frenf put alfo, And rymed, As men me haue told vnto;

Wherefor vnto me fhold it be gret fhame, Of thys dede me auant and of it haue name,

Syn Another time hath fourged be and made. But to my power what I can wil doo;

164 fo god be pleyd, my witte fhal put to fade In-fo other fourme, if leyfer hane, lo! Which letter1 fhal you come plefaunce vnto, Syn that the other ye haunt ne vse noght;

168 And, that you plesith, put to will I my thought

After tho bokes which of it men fynde, Wher this historic preuyd manion; And to ende that we may bring vn-to mynde,

172 Within the toure of Noble mahregon To faire bokis were fonden ther-on In latin, And all preuyd at deuise, That men made translait in moft frenshef wyse.

176 And fyn, after monthes fife or fixe, lo!

This historic confermyd anthonye, The erle of falz and of Barry alfo, In a boke whych had of this castel hie,

1 Sic in MS. Read "better." The French has micule.
I WILL NOW BEGIN MY STORY.

180 Whiche that was so faire, ful strong and myghtie; But al-wais spake in his wordes al Vn-to thes bokes Aboue-faid egall:

184 Off bokes thre that boke drawen oute, (Ryght so fayn men reherfyng the chaunce), And that wherby it was know no doute, Which other tymes haue fayne the subftaunce; here-to flal I put all my hole pufaunce, 188 In ordinat rule flal it fett surelye, As plefire may be vnto our lord hye."

Then toke I my leue As of my good lord, (Vn-to whom god yeff ioy, grace, and honour). 192 As to pe caftell ftrength here to recorde Of pe faid lefignen, whiche was fair pat hour, here flall ye here thys historic labour; So pat it may plef the kyng of glorie, 196 Which to me yeff Felyng ther-of fullie,

Whoutwth whom a man here may do no thyng, Be it in franfh tongue other in ebrew; All fcience cometh of that noble kyng, 200 Wich is the clere wele or the pilour trew, The maker of all whom liff doth enfew; Of hym cometh goodneffe, wite, and fence; Non, but by our lord, herite in fcience.

204 With hole hert entire here I hym require To thys neede me ayde; and hys moder fwt Mi mater conduce to the ende entire, Thys werke vn-to me here fhewyd and gett, 208 To the hie plefaunce of my good lord grete, To whom god yeff ioy, worhip, and honour; Right thus the prologue Endeth at this hour.

[End of the prologue.]

1 fayn (?) 2 MS. "aman."
A CERTAIN EARL, NAMED AMERY,

[THE ROMANS OF PARTENAY.]  

Hit is so in trouth in time auncion,

After the time that Octauian was,

In peytiers a erle had of grete renoun,

4 Off whom gret talkyng men held hie and bas;¹

louid of all, cherished in eche place,

Callid Amerys; wel cowde astronemie,

And A man ful ripe in other clergie

8 Off the right Canoun and Ciuile alfo;

Wel nye al by hert thes scienc coude he,

Als wordly witte I-now had ther-to;

yut hys dedes neuertheleffe to fe,

12 Neuer better astrononian might be,

Founde was neuer man being christian;

He cowde moche more than any other man,

But only he which fterres gan to name,

16 Then all other, with ther names all.

A gret man this was And of noble fame,

And wel at eafe of goodes mondiall;

Difport of houndes loued moche with-all,

20 Full ofte chaced he hertes, bores grete;

Thys erle of peytiers huge nobles gan gete.

A Fair fone had by hys gentill wiffe,

Full moche loued hir, chirfly can hir hold,

24 And A doughter fair, ful swete As fare liff,

Straight nose, fair mouth, wel fetured, me told,

Gret beute she had wonderly vnfolde;

¹ MS. “has,” which is wrong.
HAD A COUSIN, THE EARL OF FOREST.

Which men callyd Blanche, she was inly fair;

28 And the fone is name Bertram debonaire.

Thys Erle thes children ful moche loued tho;

yut was noght founded, neither like to be,
Rochel ne machon, neither of them to;

32 Thorugh al peytors foyfon of wode plente,
A ful gret foreft with many A streight tre,
And in the wild foreft As of columbere,
Which is noght full ferre fro peyters there.

36 For tho ther was A Erle in the foreft,
Which of children had A huge noumbre gret;
In riches herite was not in pe beft,
But of good lyuuyng was in-dede and fet,

40 Sagely And wifely good gouernaunce get;
After that had, warly gan dispende;
And for hys good gouernaunce, at ende,

Loued and cherished was of peple all.

44 Cofyn he was to Erle amerye fre,
Which thes nouels hurd at that entreuial,
That his cofyn had of children plente;
Then came hym in wil and in volente

48 Off fuch greuous charge hym to difcharge tho;
Without traying, therfor, gan he do,

At peyters made A roial gret fefte,
A more worshipful neuer fayn with eye;

52 After tho he fend the Erle of foreft,
Of poiters The erle comandued fo fullie,
And other Barons lyke-wyfe verilye,
Which of hys feignorie landes gan hold

56 Of this noble erle A-forne fpoke and told.

Tho wer after fende, to hym came gladlye;
All other cam, non lakke, vnto that iournay

1 tarying (?) See note.
AMERY ADOPTS HIS COUSIN'S SON,

That thys sayd Erle commaunded hertlye.

60 The Erle of Forest brought hym, thay say, Thre of his fones vnto court that day, For to do to hys cofyn gret plefaunce; And he cam vnto full fair ordinaunce.

The earl of Poitiers was glad to see them, and regarded the three sons closely, especially the youngest, and said,

64 The Erle of poitiers had gret ioy to fight Of hys good cofyn, And hym sefted fo, And hym cherisshed in al that he myght; Hys children ferently gan he behold tho, 68 To on of them thre hys behold gan go, The left gan hym plese in hert brennynglie, To hys cofyn sayd thes worcles swetly.

"U"nderstandeth me, my fair fweete cofin, 72 I haue vnderstande And by neighbours knowe That largely ye haue children good and fin, Full good is that ye ther-of discharge yowe; here I you require, yeff me on to owe; 76 he shal be wel taught in curtefie and speche, For fuche doctrine shal hym lere and teche; And for euermore ryche man shal hym make."

"My lord," sayd thys Erle of the forest hie, 80 "Of thes thre on your plesfire do and take, And you ther-of I thanke whyth hert ful humly, Refon is ne right that you werne shold y; Se ye here now thre in your hie presence, 84 Do as liketh your noble reverence.

Take whichever of them you like best." "Then give me the youngest," quoth the earl of Poitiers;
The Erle of poiters this to hym gau fay.
"Sir, I wyll gladly do your will and heft,"
So hym Answerd the Erle of forest, 1

92 "Syn he you plethith, ye shal hym haue trulie;
My lord, fe hym here, you here take fone myn;"—
"My fayr cofyn, I thanke you ful hertlye;
Declare me hys name (.) gentil good cofyn."
96 "My lord, men hym cal Raymound good & fyn,
The fair, the fvet, the gentill, the curtoys,
Off all thre beft thught, ftil, not moche of uoys."

W
When thys roiall Feist was endyd and done,
100 Ryght fo As it fell vppon the thyrd day,
The Erle of forefte toke hys lene to gone;
Tho thes brethen thre to-geders kyffyd thay,
Entercommaundyng to god other ay,
104 At ther departfon had thay gret dolour;
Thys Raymound Abode with hys lord that houre.

F
Ful wele he hym feruyd vnto his powere,
Off trouth he it knew ful wel verilye,
108 Thys full noble erle, sir Amerie, there,
Which moche hym louyd And cherished2 hertly,
As for that fo wel hym seruyd daily,
And furely wold do that to hym wold fay,
112 Neuer feruitour louid fo no day ;

And3 Alfo he was his faythfull cofyn.
Raymound after thys, gaynwyl, hym gan fly;
Stanned caft to ground, to deth moft incline
116 By fortune fals gleotenous cruelte,
Which no-thyng dreedith ne doubtedh to be,

\(^1\) MS. "forest."  \(^2\) MS. "cherished." See l. 121.
\(^3\) MS. "And."
The earl Amery went often to hunt in the afore-said forest, during five or six years, and he went to hunt one day with a large number of knights, with Raymond on a high courser beside him, bearing his sword.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.

The chase began; the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by the earl, and the boar was still slaying the dogs.
Novmbred were thay ther mo then twentye
Which full ferently rode after thys game;
"Come heder," said, "Raymound, lord, in goddys name!
Our houndes, our peple lost now haue we,
In what part thay ben vnknow is to me;
And now is it nogh to retorn, parde?
Thought we cerche Aboute we shal not thaim find.
What fay ye now? what do now shal we?"—
Raymounde sayd, "go forth, tary we not behynd,
Vnto fom receit nye the wodes lynde,
Wher we mow thys tym receyued to be."
The Erle anfwered, "ful wel now fay ye;
Rght fo shal it be As to me faid,
Sithen the mone is rifen vp an hie,
The euening is fair and clere displaid,
The sterres shinen fair I-now truly
That all the wordle enlumyneth goodlie."
Then vnto ther way went thay ful nere,
For the mone gan shine inly fair and clere.

Thorught the wodes went, athirt tranerfing,
Where thay found places diuers and fondrye,
Then a full fair way to thaym apperyng
Wheron a stronge pas rode thay hastily.
The Erle faid, "Raymound, thys path wyl vs bryng nye,
As me femeth, to peyters the ryght way ;
What fay ye? is it noght fo, now me fay?"
THE EARL, BY OBSERVING THE STARS,

We shall come ful late thought we ful faft hye,
That into the town to entre haue no space;
180 yut perauenture we may fynd som grace
To mete your peple whiche that knowith the way:"

"Go we," sayd the Erle, "I graunt, al that we may."

Then thay toke ther way wonder spedfullye.

184 Thys noble Erle began to behold
Thes fair fterres shynyng ful bryghtly,
So that the fkye enlumyned manyfold;
Of astronemye wyfe was As is told,
188 So moche ther-of knew he the maistri.e.
As he a fterre beheld in the fkye an hie,

Ther he saw a meruelous auenture
Which ful sharpe and hard after to hym was.

192 The profite of other touched he ther fure,
But of hys owne ille perceyued no cas.
Ther wonderful fyghtes⁠¹ gan to purchas,
hys handys gan wryng and to draw faft,
196 "O lord god!" sayd, "that angelles formed haft,

That thes meruelles so strange bene fothlefe!
Fortune is ful strong any man to know;
O varray god! for why made she encreffe
200 Only a man,² for doing ille, to grow?
She is ful glad of duyng ille, I trow,
Now is it ryght thus, I fe wel now expresse
That, for ille doing, comyth gret goodneffe!

Raymond! behold these stars, and
know that if, in this hour, a man

⁠¹ fyghes (?) ⁠² MS. "aman."
Thys Erle hym said, "the thal declare fure,
Without any doubte know thys of trouth pure,
And no-thyng no doubte, but be in certayn,
If a man\(^1\) gan fle hys lord fourayn,

As in thys hour, he shuld gretter lorde be;
More pufaunt, ful myghtly, and ryght gret
Then any of hys kynred in contre;\(^2\)
In al places thal fructefie and get,
loue of all thal haue wher he entermet,
More gretter loue haue then his neyboures all;
know thys, fayr cofin, this is trouth, & fhall!"

Raymounde noght o word yaf hym to anfwere,  
Al penfif a foote diffenced adon;
An hepe of wode a[t] that tyme founde there,  
That herdes had lefte, gret and fmal, theron;
A lytyll fire found ther, the wode brend anon.
Certes ouer warme at that tyme was noght;
The Erle ther lyght doune, fomwhat hym chaufe thought.

\(^1\) MS. "aman."  \(^2\) MS. "incontre."

15

\[\text{Fol. 9 b.}\]

were to slay his sovereign lord,
he would become himself a greater lord, and more puissant than any in the country, and be more beloved than his neighbours."

Raymond answered not, but alighted, and found a little fire kindled in a heap of wood. The earl also alighted to warm himself.

Then heard they a noise. The wood brake, and they beheld a huge boar, in marvellous wrath,
and whetting his tuskes. Raymond begs his lord to climb wightly into a tre, who boldly refuses

Ther thai hurd a noyfe, for to speke shortlye;
The wod breke and rent ful heulio tho;
Then Raymound his fwerd gan to gripe ferfly,
And the Erle his in that other party to.
leuing the fyre which ful clere brend, lo!
Then afor them faw ny to them comyng
An huge bore of meruelous wretch beyng,

With tuskes tho whettyng ful ftrongly,
And with malice yre comyng, faft fmytyng;
"My lord, faue your lyf and ward yow quiklye,
here vppon a tre wyghtly be clemmyng;"

With hie hautyng voice the erle anfweryng,
A WILD BOAR SLAYS EARL AMERY.

"I neuer was repreued at no fround,
Ne here fhal not be neuer fhuch wife founde.

W Ere it plefaunce to god I fhold hens fle
As befor A pigge of A fowle fowe, lo?"
Towards the fwine hys fwerd faft fhoke he;
Raymound vnderftode his worde hym noyed tho.
Thys fayd Erle tho went to launce hym vnto,
And when it cam fo, the fwerd went adôn;
Thys fwayne to the Erle forth fafte ran anon;

B By mischfeth ther thys noble Erle gan die;
The Erle hym ne myght no lenger ther hym hold.

but his sword also turns aside.
A second stroke, however, is successful, and
he cleaves open
the boar with
his steel sword.

By myfchef thys fwayne finot hym fereuntlye;
But hys fwerd in hym entre ther ne wold,
There he mofte of horfe fal to hys tufkes bold.
Raymound fast gan ren thys fayd fwayne agayne,
Trowyng hym to finte thorugh the body playne;

but hys fwerde glente, non hurt had he tho,
For vppon the bakke was the fstroke to fe;
Againe Raymounde finote, thourght the bely
gan go,
With the ftilen fwerde there tho made entre;
The blade fourged good, rafour kene was he,
All the bowelles cutte, all fil out anon;
Hys good fwerd withdrew, the bore ther fil dön,

To mortail deth to grounde fallen tho.
Thens vnto hys lord went he forth anon,
Neuer gan to refi til hym cam vnto,
Al dede ther hym founde And the foul gon;

Commaunded was she to goddis hie renon,
For A worthy man and vaillant he was
As Any A-thif-fide1 Rome to purchas.

1 MS. "A thiffide."
Raymond laments despairingly.

Raymounde hym tike fast ther to wepyng,
hym-felsen gan bete and hym fore torment—
“ha! alas! thou fals fortune,” ther sayng,
“To me haft thou be felonely bent!
Goode to tho wykyd thou graunteft and lent;
he is A more foole then Any mute beft
That truftith on the, or in thy beheft!

Thou art no gudfader ne Godmodere!
To on art thou fwet, Another bitter to;
Non may on the truft, ne in thy fals gere;
Off A final man thou makeft a kyng, lo!
And of tho ful rych right pour men also.
In the no wyl ftreine to helpe mofte or left;
Thou on aydeft, Another destroeft!

Alas for forow! thys in me to fynde!
Thou here me haft destroed entierlie,
And perdurabelly dampned to mynde,
But ihesu crift, the cheritable god hye,
The trew, the fwete, the pitiful, of mercy
Of my wery foule luft to haue pyte!”
And with that Raymound zownyng dön gan fle,

And wel nye an hour ryght so gan hym hold
Without spech or loke; after cam agayne,
Ther begynnyn his forowes manyfold.
When he rewardyd hys lord fouerayne,
Whiche ther dede-cold lay, fore hym gan com-
playne,
Rewfully sayng with fcerychyng vois hie,
“Come, deth! tarye noght, anon let me dye!

Comyng me to take, for time now it is;
For lofté haue I here both foule and bodye;
My fouerayne lorde that dede here lith thys,
By my grete myflede here hym flayn haue I. 
Deth, come to me! feafon is trulye;

300 Come forth here anon, or I shal me fle; 
But god shold me fle, I shold nought fo me.

God wold nught, which is our chef fader hye,
That any criftyn in difpeir be shold;

304 But the hour courfed that born was worly, 
Or that wretched lyf fo long leuyng hold. 
Better had me be dede-born here vnfold, 
For then had I nought dampned ne loft be.

308 Alas! my lord coufyn, gentile and fre,

Elfe worth am I then any faryfyne, 
Whiche is in beleue of fory mahound!" 
Ther leping vp into hys fadel fine, 

312 More lenger ne reft he ther that sfound, 
The body of hys lord reft1 in that ground, 
A fory man was thorth the wode gan ride, 
With wofull malice destruuffed that tyde;

316 The brydell-rayne lefte, at large let it go; 
hym-felfe2 tormented and curfid ful fore, 
Vmnethes for-bare hym-felfe to fle tho, 
Ful ofte hys colour changing euermore, 

320 he had non end of his dolorous (.) store. 
In thys eftate rode lamentabillye, 
Tyll he Approched, certes, fodenylye 

324 (As faid is, it came3 of the fayrie); 
Thys wofull man apas ftreight ther-to gan dreffe, 
hys horfe chef a path conueyng wightly, 
Ouer all thys hors fo went wylfully, 

328 here and there ouer all where at hys luft wold, 
For that he had lefte the rayne for to hold.

1 left (?)  2 MS. "felfe."  3 MS. "canne."
He sees three beautiful ladies.

A

thys faid fontayn hys courfer hym brought,  
So forth paffing by ther tho apertlye;  
Neue ne rest, but was in other thought;  
hys courfere hym bare forth faft and wyghtly;  
For discomforted was he moche truly,  
That hys mynde was gone fro hym-sel full ferre,  
So that he ne faw Abowt, ferre ne nerre.

U

ppon thys fontayn ther had verilie,  
Which was right holfsome, ful clere as creftal,  
Thre fair laydes of gret feignorie.

In hys forth-paffyng faw non of thaim all,  
Such dolorous thoughtes to hym gan call.  
Then fpak the mofte gentilleft of thaim thre,  
The moft goodlokeft And iolyeft to fe;

Sayng, "neuer faw, dais of my lyfe,  
Where it were gayn night or at morne erlie,  
Gentil man to paff but had respectif  
Aforn ladies without faluʒ hye,  
I wyll goo And speke with hym verilie."  
She vn-to him cam, taking by the rayn,  
After openly to hym faid certayn—

"For goddis fake, man, shew the noght foo,  
Which be descended of noble linage,  
Sin Afrom vs thre ye apperen, lo!  
And without worde fay for to make passaige,  
It is noght the dede of gentil corage."

he, whiche dolour hurt tho ful feruentlye,  
vpp fodenly lepte, perceyued thys ladye;

Ther he trowed that fantasie it were,  
Where he slepte or wakyd wel knew he  
noght;

A dede mannys colour that tyme had he there,
He returns her no answer.

She asks him why he will not speak, and wishes to know who taught him such behaviour:

for that it is a dishonour to him that he thus forces his heart to be unnatural. Raymond is many times astonied.

[Fol. 12 b.]

and, perceiving the human body of this fair lady, his heaviness of heart troubles him yet more. Knowing not whether he is alive or dead, he alights hastily, and says, "Most gracious image, pardon me, sweet thing! My heart is heavy with misfortune;"

and, perceiving the human body of this fair lady, his heaviness of heart troubles him yet more. Knowing not whether he is alive or dead, he alights hastily, and says, "Most gracious image, pardon me, sweet thing! My heart is heavy with misfortune;"

He returns her no answer.

She asks him why he will not speak, and wishes to know who taught him such behaviour:

for that it is a dishonour to him that he thus forces his heart to be unnatural. Raymond is many times astonied.

[Fol. 12 b.]

and, perceiving the human body of this fair lady, his heaviness of heart troubles him yet more. Knowing not whether he is alive or dead, he alights hastily, and says, "Most gracious image, pardon me, sweet thing! My heart is heavy with misfortune;"

and says, "Most gracious image, pardon me, sweet thing! My heart is heavy with misfortune;"

with that he faw she hym held by rayne—

But when perceyued the humayn bodye Of thys fair lady hym fo to refrayyne, In whom gret beute was preynted freshlye, Moche the more troubled his noyfance heuye, That he wifte not where he were quicke or dede; Fro hors fill down vppon the grasse in-dede.

When that he faw she hym held by rayne—

But when perceyued the humayn bodye Of thys fair lady hym fo to refrayyne, In whom gret beute was preynted freshlye, Moche the more troubled his noyfance heuye, That he wifte not where he were quicke or dede; Fro hors fill down vppon the grasse in-dede.

A fter hys\(^1\) sayd, "mofte gracyous ymage, Soueran layde of gret beute hye, With whome to compare non hath Avantage, Pardon me, swet thyng, for goddys mercye; With forowes I haue the hert ful heuye

\(^1\) thys (?)
AND ADDRESSES HIM BY NAME.

By ouermoche meruelous auenture;

392 By my faith, lady, I will you enfure

That in such aftate wher-on that I was,
I remembred noght what I owght to do;
So moche forow and care me doth enbras,

396 Truly more than man can say you vn-to.
For-foth I noght you perceyued no wyfe, lo!
But, noble lady, you besfeche and pray
Me vnto perdon fo it pleafe you may.”

400 Ther thy lady spake, “Raymound!” anfwer-
yng,
“I am ful forye of your gret noyfance.”
When Raymounde knew fche hym ther namyng,
A litell began to mufe that inftance.

404 “lady, of my name ye haue conyfance,
Where-of I am Ameruelled gretlye;
By my feith, I know noght your name redilye. 1

You named but ............... 408
Wher that perceyue fo full huge beute,
hyt caufeth me to beleue verifie
That I schuld by you wel affured be,
And that I fhal yut wel recover2 me,

412 By you to acquire fom good recomfort
Off my huge forow is my dyfcomfort.

For of fo fair A swete creature
Approcheth non ille, but ay al goodneffe;

416 Fro you may noght come but good auenture,
I beleue noght that terrene boody fothilleffe
Of lufty beute may haue fuch richelleffe,
So moche of fwetneffe, fo moche of connyng

420 As in your gentil body is beryng.”

1 Here follows the catch-word—“you named but.” See note.
2 MS. “yecouer,” the tail of the y being partly erased.
She then recounts to him all he has been doing, explaining that she is well acquainted with all that has happened.

She then declares that all the good fortune which his lord predicted for him will be brought about if he will attend to what she says.

“Raymounde, I perceyue how it goth now;”
She declared hym ther all hys doyng,
Ther hym gan rehers everydele how,

As Aboue is faid al hym declaring.
Then Raymounde feruently reioyng,
How-be-hyt he moche aftoned tho was
How hys name myght know ; ftrange to hym put cas.

Then thys lady faid of gentil bodye,
“Raymounde,my good loue, vnderstandeth me,
Al that whiche your lord faid youe varilye
By wordes myn fulfilyd shal be,

Truly and forsoth, yf so do wil ye
Ryght As I shal here vnto you rehers,
Things to non hurt, fondry and diuers,

Unto the plefire of our lorde an hie,
And of his glorius moder alfo.”

When Raymounde vnderftode she spake trulye,
Stedfaftly hym toke the more furer to,
Ther hir faing, “swete gentill lady tho,

I fehall put my hert And my holy entent
To your plesfour do your commaundement.

But certes, lady, I may no wyse tarie
That you me demaunde the trouth and verite,

how ye myght my name knownen verilie,
And how thys dede know any wyse may ye
That by my fortune and mitchef fil to me,
As wherthorugh I haue deferred deth full wel,

Wherfor that I haue defired deth cruell ?”

“Raymounde, you counsele, Aftoned be noght,”
Afaid thys lady, “for god shal you ayd ;

1 hole (?) See l. 482.
2 ne (?)
And declares herself a good Christian.

Yf ye will, moche more to you shal be brought
Of worldly goodes then your lorde you said,
Whiche in the forest dede-colde light this braid.
I wyll in no wyfe you to discomforth,
I shal you focour, helpe, ayd, and comfort.

Am, after god, your next frende truley,
Wordly catell I-now shal be brought.
But loke ye me truste And beleue verifie,
And dubte ye no-thing of goddys part am noght,
I nought beleue in hys vertues wrought;
yut I you promife that I do beleue
Ryght As holy Catholike feith doth yeue.

And is in ryght fyde of hys fader hie.
Raymond, vnderstand here now me vnto,
Firmely all beleue without doubtye anye.
Now ye here beleue that fagely ye do,
And ye shal rife vp, to such honour go,
That more shal ye be As of hie parage
Then any man, lo! As of your lineAge.

Then Raymond mufyd and gan aduertise
The wordes ther saide, and hertly joyed tho;
A litel his colour cam, vnto deveise,
And moche amendyd of forow and care to,
When he anfwered, "lady, I shal do
With all my hole hert, without withfaing,
Al that which ye wyll be me commaundung."
“Swell then to me,” she said, “at this time, that you will marry me, and that you will never inquire as to where I go on a Saturday; .

Raymond swears, but was, in the sequel, forsworn, to his great misfortune.

She tells him that if he breaks the compact, he will lose her; and that himself and his heirs will lose their lands.

“Raymounde,” she said, “this is full well said; Now vnderstandeth me without gayn-fayng, To god and his sayntes me fwere now thys braid, That in marriage me wil be taking, 1

And that neuer daies of your leuing, For no worde that man wyl vnto you say, ye shal not enquire of me the saturday,

NE after me cerche in no wife ye do,

Neither to what part drawith my body, Ne what I will do, ne to what place go; Als I schall you fwere For trouth uerilie, To non ille place go me will certaynlie,

But alwais to labour that iournay, Puttyng my hole hert, strength, mynde, and thought (.) ay

To your honour, hawfe, and encrese alfo; Neuer shal ye se me forsworn no day.”

Raymounde wolde fwere and ther hys othe gan do, But att end forsworn was he, is no nay; To ful grete myschef it cam hym alway, For that hire couenaunt brake and noght gan hold.

“Raymounde,” fche sayd, “understande this told;

If thys poynement hold noght in thys deuife, ye shal me lefe, be therof certane, Without fight of me any maner wife;

After that, ye and al your hoires playn Shal begin to fall, and thaim-felte diftayn Off landes, honoures, and heritages; Then doloure s fshall be in their corage[s].”

1 MS. “betaking.”
Raymonde fwere agayn secundarilie,
That neuer no day forfworne wolde he be.
(Alas! thys dolent man fai'd not foth trulie,
For gret heuinesse After suffred he,
Hys cherefull lady loft of nicete!)
At thys present time of it fpeke no more,
Vnto my purpos torn fhall I therfore.

"Raymounde," she faid, "ye moft to court go,
And me this not werne here in no cas,
To peytiers boldly go ye now vnto,
Say wel and playnly when ye come aplas,
If any you demaunde, hie other bas,¹
Of your faid lord ne fay ye no thyng
But that in the wode ye loft hym huntyng;

And that longe ye gan After hym Abyde,
Cerching, enquering in wodes ramage,
A wilde fwine chafing at that houred (.) tyde.
Many other to court fhall do make paffage,
Whiche equipollent fhall fay of corage,
After fhall your lord truly fhall² ther be founde,
And to peytiers brought openly that frounde.

Then gret heuinesse ther fhall fone Awake,
With every man huge forow fhall arife;
Full dolorous wo this lady will take,
And with hir other gentil wemmen of price;
his children lamenting in wofull wife.
Thaim aid and counsell ryght auyfilye
yn that belongeth to hys obsequye.

Looke ye thaim counsell hie and lowe that hour,
For a man³ fhold do A grete lordé vnto
his funerall obsequye with gret honour,

¹ MS. "has." ² This word is redundant. ³ MS. "aman."
Cloth you ther in blakke As other ther doo.

When that paffyd is ther dolour and wo,  
By proceffe of tyme at leyfer and fpace,  
When weeping dais an end do purchase,  

And that the enheritour ther shal be  
The erldom of petyers refceyued to,  
And hys homage take of men of contre,  
Of thys lord demaunde A yefte or ye go  
For your guerdon of feronf ye haue doo.

To the Erle laft paft in the fame place;  
Wher pe present be, so myght pleafe his grace,

So moche as¹ A hert-fkyn myght aboute enclofe,  
In feueral to fhitte wodes and contre.

hit will not you wern but graunt, I fuppose;  
Dedes therof mak the caufe ther-on be,  
Off the lordes yifte the enchefon may fe,  
Wher-for he it yaf, And for wat reafon;

After fette day of lyuerey and feafton,

That men deliuer you poffeflion;  
And when your letters ye haue all redy,  
Thens ye depart, a litell² way shal gon,  

ye shal fe A man come gayn you haftilie,  
The hertis fkyyn bring gret and large to eye.  
By ye that fkyyn, I you gyf in charge,  
What-someuer coft, fpare not, yif ye large.

After cutte that pece into thwanges final,  
leste it not be brode, but narow As may be,  
Enuiron the fkyyn rounde Aboute cut all  
As narow as may perceyue it to fe,

As long As the fkyyn endure fe may ye;  
After ther-of A fardell do ye make,  
And afterwarde to your repair you take,

¹ MS. "os."  
² MS. "alitell."
And let it not be left to do, certain,
But men deliver to yow your lande fad
Aboute this clere well and ful fair fontain.
Now complaineth noght of your huge pain had,
For ye shal finde this place fourged and made
In al places ryght As it liketh me,
Where that your lande appere fhall to fe.

If the changes be more lenger certain
Then the roundnesse made which that ye
finde fhall,
Again the ualey do it to remayn
The rennyng of thys fantain clere with-all,
Where ye shal take the dwelling to fall
The thwanges lenght after to ende had.
Do thys hardly, be no-thyng Adrad,
Nd when that ye be Affuryd of all,
As at peiters when ye come only,
Take your leue and return that enterual,
For in thys faid place shal ye verily,
At wat tym ye come, fynde me certainly.
Iuke ye me hold trew perfecte couenaunt."
"lady," said Raymound at that inftaunt,

I shall plainly do your commaundement,
What-fomeuer cost it for to cheue,
Sin it pleafith yow me it commaunde to hent."
Fro hir depertyd, taking fair hys leue,
This thing takith on ioyufly in breue,
To peyters he cam in the morow tyde ;
Many demaunded wher ther lord gan bide.

Raymounde Anfward, "yufterday hym loft
vppon hys courfere which bare hym
fwyftly ;

1 MS. "lefte." 2 MS. "finde." 3 MS. "courfere."
That I was baffled, wist noght to what cost he went, I cowde not mete with him truly; After I sawed As I myght full ny,

I hym loft when in-to woode gan draw, Neuer after perceiued hym ne faw."

Thus Raymond excused himself, and accused not the soul of the homicide (himself); and none ever thought of accusing him.

Many now return from hunting, both high and low. There were none but were sorely annoyed at not knowing the truth, as to where the earl was that night abiding. At last his sorrowing wife and children saw two men approach, bearing the body,

Thys notable Erle whilom off renon; And thys foule swine besides hym that stounde. Ther wepte burgefies And shqiers manyon,

1 MS. "bailulere."  
2 MS. "myght."
The Earl is buried with great pomp.

When that the Countesse of him had the fight,
Ful dolorous wo hir hert gan attain,

Here handes wrang, hir heere tire pis woful wyght,
With wepyng teeres foroly gan complain;
Ther wepte the fone, the doughter, both twain;
Ther wepte the gentle that Raymonde men call,

Through Peiters Every man forow lad,
Both tho grete and fnal ful fore were weping,
Thys day can noght be faad the heuinesse mad,

Noght halfe the wofulnesse the cite haung.
Tho that this dede Erle were per beholdynge,
Evry bewepte hys deth mornycgly,
Thys Erle beried ryght ful solemnely;

Ful nobley wele the almes yef and do;
Aboute hym grete waxe, fair Store, and grete light.
Forsoth the burgeesses of the cite tho
Cast thys curfis fwayne in A huge fire bright;

The Barons of contre there had ech wyght.
A man shold shortly the dole ouerpas,
When remedy non may be in the cas.

Rymounde Ful wel aquinted hym that hour,

Ther many A perfone of hym said, "a! he Felith fore in hert anguifh and dolour!
Of hys souerain lord heu fuch pite."
So he gan do in trouth and uerite,

As for to see hym grete pite it was,
His mornyng, his wailyng, his looking bas.
After the burial, the barons busily went to do homage to the new earl; and Raymond approached to prefer his request.

| After when that the obsequie was don,      |
| The Barons fafte went ful befelye,         |
| To the nouvel Erle homage hym do echon,  |
| After the season and usage customlye.     |
| Then Raymond drew hym forth to thys lorde |
| hye,                                      |
| his requent to make after hym lady lore,  |
| As the hym warned long tyme ther before,  |

The lady of whom he had take leue to go.

"Honourous lord," he said, "bef[e]ch you yif me,

Ni to the Fontain of thur shitty gladneffe, lo!

Off wode, Roche, or ualey in that contree,
Be it medewes or arable (.) to fee,
So moche as an hertis fkin of grounde strech wold;
For noght wyll demaunde, ne in thys place fhold,

and requires no other payment.
The young earl accedes, if it will content his barons.

"Thynge which that fhold you be in coft gretly;
I require of you non other payment
For my service done continually
Of your Fader, whos soule god haue and hent."

Thys yong Erle faid, "I graunt all your entent,
So that it may pleafe to my Baronage."
Then the Berons faid with full fair langage,

"Raymounde may full wel thys fayd yifte to haue,
(For he hath full wel deferuyd it certain,
His lord fo seruyd), As hym luft to craue."
"Then shal he it haue," Afaid thyys Erle plain;
"hys dedes letce make his graunt to contain."

Deuifed thay were paffyng fotilly,
After the writyng sealed ful truly

1 MS. "and and."
With the grete seal\(^1\) of thys Erle nouvel,
Which curious was, fair, and moche of told;

696 The hye barons put to al-fo well
There grete sealles to the dedys unfold;
The scripture deuifyd full wel to be-hold,
Fourged and made of good ordinaunce,

700 The day perfixst of the deliueraunce.

The morn a man certaingly he found
Which A hertis skin broght hym there be-
A ful curtois man hym it toke that ftounde.

704 The skyn ful narew kerue thay euermore;
His gyfte required after hys lady lore;
The Erle said, men him deliuer it fythold,
Fro peiters partyd with grete raundon told,

708 To Raymond hys ghyfte deliuerd this wyfe;
The Erle fend peple to delyuer plain,
Fulfillyng that which he gan promife.
By that were comyn vnto the fantain,

712 Streith Raymond thaim lad to pat place fertain,
Raymond drew hys skyn ther forth vnto fight;
Of pat merueled strongely many A wight,

716 Vnknowin was thaim what that thai fhold do.
To men comyn were ther to that contre,
Takyng ther thys skin coruen ful smal tho,
Anon on A band put thay it vnto,

720 A grete truffe ther-0f making yp that ftound.
On ende to a pain thai had ther y-bound,

\(^1\) MS. "seal."
HE ENCLOSES A LARGE TRACT OF LAND.

A
l the Roche thay had enuironed,
   But yut of the fkyn ful gretly abode.

724 To A pane on ende stronly thai tied,
   That other ende bare againe the ualey brode,
   Ful litill it held As thay forth glode.
   A-ferre fro thens A streme gan to rife,

728 Wher-of ftoned were stronly to deuife;

For neuer body had that water fain.
   And when thay had all prouided thys place,
   Which the hertis fkin compassd fertain,

732 Seing the contre that comprehended was,
   That supposyd noght that it wold purchas
   Neither to enclose ther-of the moite,
   Gret wonder and menuail had thay tho, perde,

736 So large contre the fkyn gan comprehende.
   Forfoth al the procincte ther gan hym take
   Ryght As for that where charged and owte fend,
   As ther dedes mencion gan make.

740 To poiters toke way, And ther told and fpake,
   Thys said Erle vnto, al the gret menuail,
   Whych neuer ne faw fuch like apparaill.

744 FOr thys hertis fkyn in circute gan hold,
   To miles aboute gan it comprehende;
   And of tho men which it gan clofe hym told,
   Also of the streme that thai faw at ende,
   Ryfing ther vp, again the ualey wende.

748 "I beleue it was thing of the fairy,"
   As said thys Erle, "fo god me faue only !

FOr thys Raymond hath founden in pe way.
   Ful ofte hath bene faid that at that fontain,

752 Many menues have fain ben A day,
RAYMOND RETURNS TO THE LADY.

Whiche men fodenly and ofte there haue fain;  
And so to Raymounde myght it come certain,  
For of it wold [I] merily rejoy.

And raymounde tho spake that he had gret joy,

For he was comyn hym to thanke hertly,
Of hys notable gyfte ther hym thanking;
And he Answerd to hym, "graunt mercy!

Of your goodneffe ye luft so be sayng.
I wout nere what to me fhal be comyn,
But, if your lord wyll, good may com to me."
So forth passyd till morn-day-lyght to fe;

Raymond rides away to the fountain, and finds there the lady, who welcomes him.

Aynioimde tho lepte vp hys coursere vppon,
To the fantain and wel of thruft gan to go,
Wher that hys lady founde beyng alon,
Which hym said, "my lone, welcome me vnto!

And ye shal now haue for your good labour  
yut here-ahfter gret worlship and honour!"

[Fol. 19 b.]  
They enter a chapel, and find there knights, ladies, clerks, prelates, and squires, all nobly apparelled.

Raymond thanks the earl, declaring that he hardly knows what is coming to him.

Non into A schapel made entre,
Which thaim ny vnto ful redy ther found,

[Fol. 19 b.]
He cannot refrain from asking her about them. She replies that he needs not marvel, for they are all his.

Thys lady had tho many in housfold,
That he demaunded noght thys gentile body;

Thys lady had tho many in housfold,
I-now hym femyng for to haue truly.

"Neuer bafh herof," said this faire lady,
"Thay ben al youres," ther commaundynge al

hym for to refceiue for lorde principall;
They humbly do him reverence.
Raymond muses within himself, and hopes the end may be as good as the beginning.

The lady tells him he must take her in marriage. Raymond declares himself ready at once; but she tells him that all is not yet ready.

[Fol. 20.] He must bring a number of witnesses to the marriage with him, and come again on the Monday.

Raymond returns to Poitiers, and comes into the presence of the earl.

He salutes the earl, and says he feels that he ought not to hide anything from

THEY ARE TO BE MARRIED ON THE MONDAY.

Alfo gan thai do ryght As thai shold, Ful humbly thay gan do hym reuereuce; But raymounde in hert mufid manyfold, In hym-felfe faid demurly in audience, "Se here a noble gynnyng in prefence! God yif that the ende therof be ful good!" Thys lady hym refoned there he ftood, 792 Sayng, "ye Raymounde, what willen ye to do? Til that ye haue me had in marriage, ye may noght the eftat fe ne know, lo! Wherefor you councel, puruey As the fage." 796 Raymounde faid, "I am redy to that paffage." Thys lady hym faid, "we faute that we fhold haue, Raymond, all other wyfe we mofte do craue,

Off we shall do to plefaunce honestly; you behouith to trauel and haue pain So that peple ye mofte bryng redy, Which of thys acte may haue conifaunce plain. haue no point of doubt, but therof be fain, I-now of all good here fchal fynd by grace, But warde that ye be a monady in thys place." 808 Fro thens deperted Raymounde haftily, Vppon his courfer retorned and went, To poiters he cam, ther descending, hent And anon forth went, taried ne bode, Toward the erle of peiters where he ftode. 812 Aymounde anfwerd to hir curtoifly, "Forfoth I shal do your commaundement."
816 There declarid his lord honourable,  

"My lord," said Raymond with contenaunce ftable,  

"I ought ne fhold my dede be couering,  
To you al declare And certefying;

820 I shal noght you lye for no maner wight,  
Maryed shal I be vpon monday;  
To a gret lady that day be trought plight,  
Ryght at the fontain of thurfstes gladneffe ay;

824 Nothyng fo loue ne likyng to my pay,  
humbly you besekte at that day to be,  
And to bryng with you your peple and mayne;

Ryght gracyous lorde, to me honour do,  
And your gud moder wife and debonair,  
My ryght doubted and shereful lady to,  
Which is proclaimed fo noble lady fair."

The Erle sayd, "I shal to that place repair,  
But afoure will you thys demaunde make,  
What is that lady which that ye shal take?

WArde you And beware ye tAke noght amis,  
knowith whens she is and of wat linage;

836 Say me, fair cofin, now what flo ho is,  
Thys day am redy to your mariaige."  
"Sir, it may noght be for non auantage;  
More may noght enquire As of hir beyng,

840 For ye may no more of hir be knowyng;

You it suffifith I-now hyr to fe."  
The Erle to hym sayd, "thyis is gret meruell  
That ye take A wif vnknow what is fche,

844 Neither haue knewlich of hir gouernail,  
Ne of hir kinrede; strange is without fail!"

1 MS. "nomanev."  
2 MS. "nomore."
The earl comes to Coulombiers.

...she is like a king's daughter;

and that a fairer lady was never seen. The earl promises to come, with his mother and all his barons.

"Sir," said, "I hir faw in fo noble ray As kinges daughter where fresh is and gay ;

More fairer neuer fain with ey ;

Off hir linage enquired I no-thing ;

Where she be of duk or of markois hy, Forfoth I wyll hyr haue, she is me pleasyng."

Thys Erle said, "Raymounde, to you fhal be comyng,

My moder also with all our barony."

Humbly Raymounde sayd, "my lord, graunt mercy !"

The monday cam men apparrailed faft ;

Thys Erle Awakyd, rose vp ful erly,

Hys moder with hym brought, frefhly on hyr caft

Full ryche Atire, befain ful womanly ;

Sondry ladies with knightes many ;

But moche on thaim toke to ful gret meruail,

How thay fhold there loge, by what gouernail,

When thay approched ny to thys fantain. But therof certes nodid noght hane doute,

All redy was made A place ful folain.

The wayes And pathes fo rode thay aboute That thay approched Columbere toun al-oute, And ouer that went ryding the contre,

Hilles, wodes paffyd, the roche might fe ;

Entes And pavilons freghted and pight frefhly Befyde a ualey, enmyddes a plain ;

The ftreme befydes, the fontain ful ny,

Which nouelly was vp-rifcn and fain ;

Eucry man meruellyd of it certain, Ful wel thay fad knew it the fayry was.

Into the medewes thay beheld apafe

1 MS. "fo." See note. 2 MS. "aualey."
MELUSINE DECLARES HER NAME.

876 Twenties, pavilions freshely wrought and good, Doucet fonges hurde of bridles environ, Whych meryly chirmed in the grene wod; Vpon the ryn faw A wyld wood anon,
880 Where gret peple were to-geders manyon; And in there kechins fay thay gret smove to; As tham femyd, was A ful huge hooft thoo.

A nd thay faw comyng toward thaim anon
884 Ther nombred aboute knightis ful fexty, yong, strong, lufti, fers, and ful lyght echon, I-horfed ful wel, armed nobilly;
(hyt nedith not demaunde of it truly);
888 The noble Erle demaunde of peiters, And thay hem shewed fondry and dyners,

O ff whom demaunded had the trouth to know. Raymounde thai anon gan fe and behold
892 In the said Erles company fo grow, Which ther ful iocunde tales gan unfold, humbly to the Erle cam thes knightes bold, And hym ther falute ful debonerly.
896 The Erle ther faluz yilding ryght goodly

U nto every man, without other abode, After that to hym it shold appertain For that place whens that he cam and rode, 900 Both to gret and final menal perfones fain, Ful wel knew to eche ther faluz yild plain; And thay which ne wold haue no point of blame, To hym cam and faid worchipsfully the fame:

904 "T hat fair Melusine hym thanked hertly That of that pleased hym to com to ther feste; And that she had charged thaim verily, you wel for to loge yaf in charge and heft."

They heard sweet songs of birds; and saw a wild wood with many people; also several kitchens, with much smoke.

[Fol. 21 b.] Next they saw coming about 69 knights, well horsed and armed, who asked for the earl, whom many pointed out to them.

The knights ride up to the earl, and salute him humbly. The earl returns their salute, yielding to every man the respect due to him, according to the place whence each came. The knights say to him that the fair Melusine thanks him heartily, and
that due lodging was provided for his retinue

[908] Thys Erle thaim said, to pleseire in the befte,  
"For here I perceine ful Nayre ordnauence."
Nobley thay loged thys Erle that inftaunce.

Ful fair pauilon thay hym gan take,
[912] Ther couriers loged pailllye inlye wel,
Both rekke and manger at their eafe gan make,
Infyde tentes ful fair eueridel.
Gret ther labour was wherfor atimed wel.

The Countesse receiued in that housfold
In-to a chambre frethly bete with gold,

Which men pight And freight vpon the fontain;
Many ladyes, ful of gret beute,

920 Went to a company with the Countesse plain,
Ech welcomyng hir after ther degre.
Al meruelyd there thys ryche fght to fe,
Als of the noblesse that ey myght purches,

Neuer trowed fe fo faire in no place.

Aymounde with the Erle that tyme logid was.
Of ther fair chapele doubt therof had non,
Wel apparalled was it, hie and bas,

928 With riche iuelles stuffed manyon;
What wold ye fhold fay? freth was envirion.
The ful noble Erle And thys fair countesse
The efpoufe demaundyd thay expresse.

Ther men anon forth aplace hir brought,
Fair melusine, enmyddes the chapele;
Thys mayden ful faire As cowde bene I-thought,
Frefhly atired rychely and ful wel,

936 That al hir saw preied thys damycel,
Sayng, "it was noght no humayn body lyke,
But more better seemed a thyng angeyllyke."
Then thys said Erle applied vnto
Thys fair meluline to receiue sothleffe,
And of that ful wel his deuoir gan do,
And ful wel or better the noble countesse;
Al tho bothe that hour weren at that meffe.

In that place was had ful great meny
Both hye and bas instrumentes fondry;
A

And fro\textsuperscript{1} that constantinople vnto,
In no place was so noble a feste made;
Al the wodes range merrily founding tho,
ther was no perfone\textsuperscript{2} that prefent tyme hade,
But that "merueles," said, "I fe ful fad;
Neuer humain ey faw to it egal!"

With great joy made thys matrimonial.

Af
fter thys meffe don, taken haue the way;
The Erle the espoufe courteiffly forth lad;
In that other part, A prince of contray

In-to the chef hal thys fair mayden had,
Which noble peple held that day ful glad;
Ther mete al redy, vnto wafh thay went;
After fette As was moft convenient.

Besides thys maiden thys noble Erle fate,
The gentile countesse next fette hym vnto,
After A gret lord of contre that date,
Which for gret honour worshipped was fo.

Raymounde tho fate with other knightes no.
The courfe tho broth\textsuperscript{3} in with squiers many,
Gret plente there had of deyntees fondry,

Which that apperid As thing infinite;\textsuperscript{4}
With wine of Angoy, And als of rochel tho

\textsuperscript{1} MS. "for."
\textsuperscript{2} MS. "prefone."
\textsuperscript{3} brought (?)
\textsuperscript{4} MS. "infinite."
Wine of Touraine, And of Bewme alfo,
Which iawne colour applied noght vnto;

972  Clarke Romain, with doucet ypocras,
Thorught al the hal rynmyng hye and bas.

Wine of Tourimz, and also of digon,
Wyne of Ancerre, of feint Jougon alfo;

976  Wyne of Seint Johan of Angely good won,
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;
Wine of estables, of uiart1 alfo;
After thaim cam the wyne bafterd good,

980  Wine of feint purfain, and of ris hys brood.

Ouer all theses wines ther had the prife
The nouel ofey of Dingenon,
Off all the wynes named to deuife.

984  Ther all peple preuilage had echon,
Ecery in hys loge plente and fuson,
Ecery of that which thai wold demaund
Off wynes and of uitaillouns viand.

988  After thys diner, men to iouftes went;
Be-fyde the fontain ful fair iouftes had;
But Raymond ioufted ftrongly and feruent,
Certainly myghty iouftes2 ther he made.

992  Thys jouftes dured till femme went to glad.
After to cueslone went every wyght,
And fin to foper fet were and dyght.

996  When fopyd thay had at ther owne deuife,
Strongly thay daunced, ioying merily
Ful long that night in right gladfom wife.
And when that men faw time approched ny
Vnto go to bedde, And depered fully,

1000  Men made the espoufe to depart fair.
Into A pauilon made the A retrait,

1 MS. "mart."  2 MS. "ioufted," roughly altered to "iouftes."
A bishop blesses them.

Off whom moch coft the fouring And makyng; Portreid it was with briddes freshly, 

1004 Thys fair paulon rich was in seing; Forth Anon the bede freight And made redy, Which with floura-delife couerid was to ey. Quicly cam Raymond, in the bedde 1 him laide 

1008 By fair melusine, the fuete doucet made. 

Forsoth A Biffhop which that tyme ther was Signed and blisfid the bedde 2 holyly; "In nomine dei " fo faid in that place; 

1012 After fro thenes departed haftily, For the ceafon late le[n]ger to tary. The Erle hym withdrew to hys paulon; And hys good moder, time was and ceafon, 

1016 In to hir chambre goodly went to bed. Every man went to hys erbigage, But from all night dysported And folas led, Singing, dauncing, disporting with longage; 

1020 Many fayr fongis fonge that compernage. Off thys noble fefte no more 3 you will breke, Off gentile Raymond fhall I to you speke, 

1024 Which 4 with melusine lyght ful meryly, To whome ful fuctly outred she and fayd, "Now underfandith, bayre swet loue, hertly, The Auentur conyn vnto vs thys braide That we togeders by grace here bene laid, 

1028 Ryght As mAn And wyffe after entent, And I Am her at your commaundement; 

But that oth moft hold which firft day me made, I know full wele, when ye cam to pray 

1 MS. "beded,"
2 "body;" French text, Le lit.
3 MS. "nomore,"
4 MS. "Whicht."

A bishop gave his benediction, "in nomine dei." The earl and his mother also retired to their tents.

All went to their allotted chambers, but some spent the whole night in singing and dancing.

[Fol. 24.] Melusine addresses Raymond, reminding him of his good fortune.
him she is aware how the earl inquired concerning her lineage:

she proceeds to tell him that his good fortune will last as long as he holds to his covenant:

but that if he breaks it, he will suffer huge harmful pains, and be disinherited of all.

1032 The Erle of peiters And knightes that he had To come and to do you honour that day That I shuld be maried to your pay, Be you enquered full moch what it was, And of linage ye gan me purchas."

HE answered hym to the point ful wel, "Myn owne verry loue, now doubt ye ryght noght."

"ye fall be moste beft fortuned to tell, So ye couenaunt hold As of reon ought, As euer was Any of your linage brought, Hou-fomeuer fortune that thay haue had, So the contrary by you be noght made.

1044 If it be, ye fhall haue gretly to doo huge noifaunt paunes with aduerfite, And defherite be wrenchedly also Of tennementes, landes, the befte to fe; It wyl be fo And fertiauly fchal be." "Fayre fwet lade," said, "I you plegg[e t]roth myne, Whyle I leue fhal be, be it non m[align]e,

[Fol. 25 b.]
He again swears to be faithful, giving her his hand in pledge of his sincerity.

Melusine hyn answered fwtely, now, my fwet loue, I say you faithfully, If ye be ftedfsfte and couenaunt hold,

1 "He" (?)
2 A piece near the corner of the page is here torn away.
3 See Note to 1. 1050.
4 MS. "bold."
In good hour ye be here borne treuely;
keep it truly, before you manyfold;
For in my part fail I for no gold,
Off me haue ye had ful tru Assurance.

Which I shall hold; no more say this assurance.

With clipping, kislyng, that nyght gan do fo,
That an fair one ther engendred was;
Vrience call'd at that tyme tho.

Dedis and warkis fuch gan he purchas
As in tyme fhal hire the mater and cas.
Thys feste endured daies ful fiftene;
At ende to lordis yiftes gaf melusine.

And to lades which that men brought
With thys roial and noble Countesse.
Al said ther, "lord god! what wyfe is this wrought,
Which that we se here present of rycheffe?

Maried is he vnto gret hineffe!"
Raymounde of all moch ther preisid was,
No worldly man myght better in no cas.

After when it cam vnto departson,
Faire melusine went faste ther openyng
A forcelet wrought fesh of your bon;
A formelet, of gret value beyng,
With precious stones gemenish'd that thyng,
With vertues perles ful many,
To the countesse gaf it verra hertly,

Which of that iewel she ful gret ioy had.
Thens departed the Erle and his maine,
Which were ful noble peple, good and sad,
Melusine taking her leave of them.

Leaping up to their saddles, they ride away. Raymond accompanies them to the edge of the forest.

At leave-taking, the earl would fain have asked Raymond who Melusine is, but durst not. Raymond, seated on a courser,

[Fol. 26 b.] takes his leave of the earl, and returns to Melusine, who receives him joyously. At the end of eight days, all the trees in the wood were uprooted

by labourers of an unknown nation. They made hideously deep ditches, and were

No man knew when was, ne of what nation; Ful gret ditches made, ryght huge and profounde,

1116 Ful hideous was to behold adon; No cause had thai dismaing thaim no ftoond, Neither no deffaute in pe pament fownd,
Every day had ther money and argent,
1120 The laborers were the more diligent.

The fundementes made thai right profonde,
(Ful wel know may be if y myffay, lo !)
Fair melusine was deuifer of that ground,
1124 And of werke also lyke as it was do.
Vpon the quicke Roche thay it fett tho ;
The fyrfte ftones to put thay, and made
In litell of tyme ; Mafons I-now had.

The walles hye deuifed fhe echon,
Wel founded was vpon the said uayley ;
Too ftrong toures made with a huge dongun,
And Enuiron an hy with wardes ftrong that day.
1132 Of it meraelyd strongly the contray,
hou ful fone men made this said ftrong repair.
And when thys caffell was bafulled fair,1

Thys fwete melusine faw it full fair tho,
1136 After hir ryght name gan it fhe Baptistf ;
Off hir name fhe hath taken a part, lo !
lufignen to name yaf after hir deuife,
yut is oueral named in that wife ;
1140 Many bare that name, it aboute gan cry,
And yut is ryght and cried was fuerly ;

Oght-withftandyng the good kyng Ciprian
hit cried lufignen euer in his cry,
1144 As the history feith to every man
Off whom after shal do make memory.
Melusigne is As moche to fay truly,
Ryght As ho feith, merueles fautif[t]h non ;
1148 She was A woman A-per-fe, alon.

1 At the bottom of the page is the catchword—This fwet melusine faw.
When this castle was built, high walls and all, people wondered how it had been finished so soon.

Melusine bare a son, named Urien, whose visage was very short and broad, and who had one eye red, the other gray;

Every man might fe it openly,

Huge mouth And large gret nostrelles also; neuer man fain non to hym egally;

But of body was inly wele made tho,

Off legges, of Arnes, of feete therto,

In it not failled thing thouchyng nature,

And at the ful made vnto hys ficture.

After that she made a city, with high walls and towers, well provided with loopholes.

The walles bild hye, and als tours,

The goinges and comynges wroughten fair,

All couered and made, non might ben gair;

At louers, lowpes, Archers had plente,

To eAft, draw, and fhete, the diffence to be,

That non worldly man myght no wyfe it take;

So strong with peple Acompanyed was,

1 "Vryen" is here scrwled in the margin in a later hand.
That strenght ful strong with peple gan make,
The ditches profounde large brede gan purchas,
With this toure couerid hye and bas,
The yates fumelles, mighty and strong,
To fain the trouth, ful large were and long.

A twixt the borough and thys strenght myghtly
A place ther fougred meruelously strong,
The toure trompe fom calyd it daily,
In luignen town fo named tham among;
For Sarisins trompers tho were put ful long,
To ende this said toure thay fold kepe and ward,
And al enuiron aboute to rewarde

That peple noght approch neither to com ny,
But tho of that strenght hould it know
and fe.
That yere childed fhe the fecunde fonne truly,
Oede\(^1\) named ; a fair femblant had he,
As fhinyng fire his uifage femynge be,
With wonder redneffe fo resplendifing ;
his membres ful fair formid in makyng;

IN that fame yere made that lady fair
The castel and brought which men callen mel,
Vauuant and meruant made fhe, non gair,
The tour of feint Messent after made ful wel ;
The Borugh fourgred, the abbey gan echdel,
Where put our lady is ferued alway ;
And After the town of noble partenay.

And Als the castel fourgred fhe roial,
With good lime and ftone freffly vnto fight,
Toures, torettes, pinacles, and harde wall ;
The craftifmen wrought As tho persfight.

\(^1\) Oede is also in the margin, written in the later hand.
By that, Raymound was doubted of ech wight,  
Into gret honour risen is A-hy,  
And worshipped is in ech company.  

Her third son was named Guy,  
who was of great beauty, saying  
that he had one eye a little lower than the other.

[Fol. 28 b.]  
The same year was founded Rochelle; and  
soon after she built a great bridge, for which  
she received great praise.

Her fourth son was Anthony,  
who had on his jaw a mark like a  
hurt made by a lion.

All these things are true. And when it pleased  
our Sovereign Lord, this lady had the fifth son,

\[ MS. \text{ “alitel.”} \]  \[ In the margin is guy in the later hand. \]  
\[ Sic in MS. \]  \[ In the margin, A\text{r}\text{t}o\text{u}. \]
Which in his hed had on ey and no mo,
Mofte hieste set, wonderly to fe.
hys name of Baptime Raynold called tho;¹
his sight more clerer weryle then he
Whiche to eyes had, for al their plente;
Merueles gret gan do, after ye flal hire,
So it may be hurde thys tale hole entire.

Assrey with gret toth Afterwarde fhe bare,²
Which growyn in mouth A wonder toth hade,
Which without issued pasing gret and squire;
he meruelous strong, of nothyng Adrad,
Blacke monkes he flay, to mortail deth lad;
Off mellers Abbay were thay, lef or loth,
Which caufyd hys fader strongly to be wroth.³

Again melusine wrothed he ful fore,
That to hir fayd moch repref and velony,
That hir company loft for euer-more;
Which caufid a fal fro hys Aftat hy
To hys gret repref, ryght to fhamfully,
As after wyl make declaracyon,
Of al ther warkis the conclufyon.

The fefte child Ffromont that time callyd was,⁴
Of fttature of perfone hie, gret, and long,
Inly wel formed, pulcrious of face,
Sage, fubtile, wel taught, myghty and ftronge;
But vppon hys noffe fuch a tach had fong,
Ryght As A wolfes fkyyn row was it tho,
Ful strange vnto fight to fe hys nofe foo.

¹ In the margin, Raynold with on ye.
² In the margin, geffrey withe gret tothe.
³ MS. "wroght."
⁴ In the margin, Froymonde w[as] a monke, and w[as] burnd.
The eighth son was Horrible; he had three eyes, and was of a very wicked disposition.

Then the eighteth fone borne of Melusin, Thre eyes haung on in front uisible;¹ Moche peple mornelylyd and wonderd ther-in, Thys child named and called horrible;

For hym vnto fe was thyng terrible, And also he was of wycked doing, In no goodnesse, thought but to do ille thing.

Now return Again vnto vriens, Which of tham was the moost auncéon. Eche fhall declare by ordres diligens, That men may perceiue dul am not ther-on. vriens was A fair fquier of perfon,

Growen ful bygg, myghtly, stronge, and lyght, Willing to know where by fee and lande ryght.

At Rochel toke A shippe ful fair and large, (And for the was long, wide, hole, founde, entire,

I founde in scripture that it was A barge), Sayng pet he wold go land to acquire, So god hym warede fro perel to plefur ; Moche peple with hym had, the barge ful was ;

Ther Guy with hym went landes to purchas.

In many places preuid was hardly Thys forfaiden Guy truly manyfold. And to wel find ther peple only,

The fair melusine of filuer and goldGrete plente toke, in trefour store to hold. Into fee thay went, the sayl vp gan reife, To eipresse contre ther shippes gan teife

Straight to that place wher fair auenture funde. Of Cipresse the kyng tho befeged was

¹ In the margin, horrible with iii yes.
AND COME TO FAMAGOUSTA, IN CYPRUS.

In A myghty towne, which owyd that fround;
Named Famagouce¹ that cite and place;

1300 Which, enfaimling, Almofte gan purchase
The foudan bigly the town befeging,
With an hundred thousande men fightyng.

Off it knew vriens the uerite,

1304 Off Famagouce¹ the Cite roial;
land toke, referfhing² hym and hys maïne.
Forth-with declarid to hys peple all,
And to thys Cite his peple gan cal,

1308 Wher-vnto thai had An euyn freight way;
And beforne tham his baner gan display,

Whych of Fine filke was enbrauded frefhly.
The Sarafins knew and faw ther comyng;

1312 Alf tho in cite knew tham uerily,
And ther oofte myght fee ful faft herbiging,
The peple of Armes ther defloging.
Nye to the foudan thai re[n]gid tho were;

1316 As to the Cipriens to fight femyng there,

That the Soudan cafst Away for feere to flee;
That faid to othir, "we moft after few."
The kyng Armed was with fair Ermynee,

1320 hys fweet daughter ful maydenly to vew,
hyr honoring fader with harnois new;
Ther hym conuicing ryght ful curtoilly,
Vnto hys courfer ful debonairly.

1324 Trompes, clarions, blew up faft foundling,
The kynges baner lifte, vp-reifed hy;
Ther full gret affray was at ther mellyng,
The paynymes faw the kyng cam frefhly,

¹ MS. "Samagouce."
² MS. "referfing;" the or is blotted.
Saracens are slain.

The king is shot with a poisoned dart, and the surgeons fear that they cannot heal him.

The Cyprians thereupon retreat, closely followed by the Saracens. Great clamour in the city.

Ermynee bemoans her father, and tears her goldish hair, perceiving that he had arrived at death's door.

Meanwhile Uriens and Guy had displayed their banners.

1328 Anon Assembled that full hastily;
Many A cristyn Approched deth in hast,
And Sarafins many to mortal deth caste.

The Sarafins were myghty, fers, And strong;
1332 The Cipriens fhewed ther frenght and myght.
The king with a dart\(^1\) toxicat poifon soge,
Such A malice stroke his foes hym dight
That in garifon hym wold take no wight.

1336 Tho Surgeons doubte, As thay gan report,
Wherfor the peple were tho discomforth.

Th\(^2\)e Cipriens went for fere euermore,
The Sarafins after full fraft fleing,
1340 Into the thowne thay bete thaim before,
Many ther flam And many don caftyng.
In that towne was horrible crying,
As for tho wounded And Als tho flayn;

1344 And for the kynges hurt, ther fouverain,

F\(^3\)ull dolorous wo ther enforced was;
Ermyne by-ment hir good fader fore,
Gret torment to hir ther gan the purchas,
1348 hir goldifh herre tering, breking, euermore,
For hir fader and lord lying hir before,
Whom perceivein riuned at dethes port,
And that no man\(^3\) cowde yif theroff comfort.

1352 Off kyng Ciprian leue we shal and rest,
And of vriens speke and talke we shall,
Which was wurthy, uaillant, and gentillest,
Full femly to see, lusty over all;

1356 And of his brother, that Guy men do eal,
Of fader And moder As befor is faid;
Ther baneres were openly difplayd,

\(^1\) MS. "adart."
\(^2\) MS. "Thy."
\(^3\) MS. "noma."
And in their handes full faste gan to hold.

A fers and hardly stoure ther a man\(^1\) shold fe,
When to-geders mete with sperryes manyfold.
The petyuins tham bare As warly men fre ;
For ther good vitail and wines plente

The more strenger were And the more femly ;
Affautes tha[y] gafe dyuers And fondry.

Ther vriens shewed his noble provesse,
Many be-gan ffe and hurt manyon ;

his brother Guy in lyke besinesse,
Men hym doubted As thai wold A lion ;
Paynymes hym drad, fered his person ;
After wifte noght the foundan what to do,

But with spores priked his coursere tho.

His forbeshed fwerd of ftele faste holding,
To A peiteuin wightly smote he faste,
So that neuer myght\(^2\) be purchasing,

With-in litel while ftanded was in haste ;
The timbre And yre thorugh hys body wrafte.
hyt perceiued tho gentile vriens ;
Semyng fro hym-folfe, with gret uiolens,

\(1\) MS. "aman."
\(2\) MS. "nyght."

\[\text{Fol. 31.}\]
and attacked the Saracens.
The men of Poitou, owing to their good viatual
and plentiful wine, were stronger than their foes.

\[\text{Fol. 31 b.}\]
so that Paynims, Turks, and Syrrians flee fast to their ships, hard pressed by Uriens.
THE KING OF CYPRUS IS MORTALLY WOUNDED.

So flynyng thay vnto thar naue.
Vriens which had to tham enmyte

1392 As for to dyftroy the farifins all,
Smote vpon thaim As vpon curres fhal.¹

Ther by² vryens And curtois Guy
Were flayn of paynymes the myghtieft.

1396 Vriens in ther tentes thought long fully,
Thens thought not go, but ther take to reste,
Sin vpon paynyms had he fuch conquyte.
Ther ne taryed he noght ouer³ long,

1400 That the Cipriens cam besily strong

Off the kinges part to hym fend, and come,
Befechyng tham com to the cite,
Oft frendlyhed the way to hym nome,

1404 For vnto tham come certes myght not he ;
For vnnethes myght speche on hym be,
Strayned with fekness fuch wyfe was tho,
Wounded and hurt with hys enemyes foo.

1408 When vriens was thaim understandyng,
he Anfwerd thaim ryght ful curtoiffly,
That gladly wold he Approche that hy kyang.
In noble Aray greithed thaim frefhly

1412 Vryens And hys brother in company,
Towardes the kyang whent thai forth Anon ;
Moche went Cipryan, beholdyng the perfon

Off vriens, which he saw moche, large, And
grett,

1416 Ther seing he had A ful strange uifage
In horrible wyfe, As he went by ftrett,
Evry man blessed, sayng in ther passaige,
That never such a man⁴ saw in al ther age ;

¹ "fmal" (?) ² MS. "Therby."
³ MS. "oure." ⁴ MS. "aman."
"By reful," said, "he shuld do conquere 1
All landes with hys semblant and chere;

On shold to fight 2 hym attende ne bide,
Which fro hym may Any wyfe diffende;
ho, lord god, ho? noght A geaunt no tide!
I you endure, meruelus is to attende!"
At the gret paleis gan thay to diffende;
On grice went vp, the kyng on bed thay founde,
Hys nofe, hys mouth bolned gret that founte,

[Image: image]

Numbly vibens salutes thys fouerain,
Thys kyng which in body this poifon hent;
Anon hys faluz yild forthwith ther prefent,
Sayng, "ye haue me feryd nobilly,
And to me ye haue done gret curtefy;

"Worshipful kyng, men cal me vibens;
Off lusignen am naturally grow,
I wyll that my name to all men ben know."

"In faith," sayd the kyng, "of it am I glad
That dreffyd and come ye be to thy place,
And that your wyll were truly to be hade.
Swet frende, I fele mortal dethe me brace,
Neuer After thyss comforth to purchace
Off surgery-crafte ne with medicine,
For stuffed I am ful of uenyme,

1 MS. "comquere." 2 MS. "fight."
The king tells his barons he expects not to live longer, and that he wills to leave his kingdom to his daughter Ermyne.

The barons thereupon do homage to his daughter; and the king adds,

That his subjects cannot be defended by a simple woman against

"The barons All here me vnderstande, ye warde And kepte truly may noght be

1480 By simple woman gayn Sarifins hande ;

1 MS. " wyght."

Wherefore he besought him to please to condescend to accept his gift, which Urien does.

The king thanks him for his assent, and sends for his barons and his daughter Ermyne.

If he tells his barons he expects not to live longer, and that he wills to leave his kingdom to his daughter,

[1452] Wherefor you bes[e]che with me accordre here That to my gift you please to condescend, Whereby noght shal lefe, vriens, gud frend ; honour shal ye haue, worsphip, and profite."

1456 Vriens graunted hym without respite,

That hys commandement wold he do gladly, Agre and Accorde hys sayd gyft vnto ; The kyng hym thanked, And sayd full humbly, "Thys is wel sayd, and the more gladder, loo ! I shal mortal deth take ;" commandynge thoo That Al the Barons After fend fhold be, And hys fayr doughter the fwet Ermyne.

1464 To hys barons said, "now ye vnderstande, More longer liff noght in me attend ; lenger may not line here with you in lande, My noble Rewme Cipresse ; now say you at end, Whom, to my power, haue warded and diffend Efro paynymes at point of fwerdes cru[e]lte, Now it wyll I leue my doughter Ermyne, In me noght had no poyn of medicin ; For therof she is enheritour of ryght."

1471 Thai sayng hym with contentence good and fin, That gladly wold do hys plesire eche wyght.1 Ther homage made to hir do in fight, So takyng of hir ther landes and fe.

Then toke to speke this noble kinge fre ;

"The barons All here me vnderstande, ye warde And kepte truly may noght be

1480 By simple woman gayn Sarifins hande ;"
HE SHALL LEAVE HIS KINGDOM TO URIENS.

Your neighbours that ben wonder ny to fe; Such fers ftores of huge cruelte As off Armes bere, ne the sharpe shoures;

Here Auifed have to you good focoures. Such fters ftores of huge cruelte As off Armes bere, ne the sharpe shoures;

Uppon thy dede here I haue deuifed That vriens is puissant and myghty, Off lusignen uaillantly franchised,

Which that the Soudan discomfith manly, And hys men gan fle by dedes Army, By the huge prowefse off hys body ftrong; Off thys knewlych non hath by mene of tonge;

What demaunde or aske here of hym now wold, To pray hym I you here befche hertly, That he me noght wern, but my requete hold.” Thay hym befought and prayed fwtely;

To ther requet Acorded he humbly; To the kyng reportyd thay that he wold do What-fomeuer he wold hym demAunde, lo!

Heroff was the kyng Full ioyous And glade, To vriens faid, “me requete hir ye, And here perdon me of my wordes hade, For nothyng wil ne of you for to gyf me, Off youres nothing fall demaunded be;

But you wil I gif gentilly, fire, of myne Thys Rewme with all enheritaunce fyne,

With my fair doughter in franke mariadge; For other have non difcended of my lyne. You befech to take here thys fair Image.” When the Barons knew to that wold inclyne, Strongly ioyed all off that discpline, Ther loue to vriens strongly gan draw,

For the gret goodnesse that thay on hym faw.
 Uriens thanks the king, and says he would not take the gift if he saw in the king any respite from death.

The marriage is performed; and, as the priest was raising the host at the mass, the king yielded up his soul.

[Fol. 34.1] Their great joy is thus turned into wo. The bride's heart is "locked up" with heaviness.

The king is buried royally; and there were therefore no plays or tournaments at the wedding.

which was, nevertheless, honestly done. No blame attached to these
AND URIENS MARRIES ERMYNEE.

Tho molled of thes dede paffed and gon; So wyll was this thing At poynt don put day, At which thar was full noble array

1548

Appertaynyng wel to A kinges dede. At thyss mariaige was nobles ful many, Of fondry townes peple in that flede, knightes, laydes, damycelles worthy, 1552 yonge Squiers, And maydens goodly, Where-with thyss said feste gretly gan honour, Which thar dancned At that tyme and hour.

Right1 thus the peple merily ioyng

As off the good rule noyfed of thaim to, Of the espouse full noble gouernyng, And of the good lorde renomyng alfo. Anon was shee made vnto bedde go,

1560 For vriens wold in no wyfe tary, With hir went to bedde As man ful haftly.

That night Grefson thar engendred was, Off whom I shal declare, outre, and fay; 1564 Which in payny conquered hye And bas, Gret feignories And contrees that day, And of Colcis quitte the contre Alway, Where playnly no man in no wife passe myght.

1568 Many merueles of trought cam ther right,

Every moneth twenty And mo. An Ile was thar had full fair to deniye, Wheron conquered was the flees tho, 1572 Which conquefte was made by medec auife,2 By Iafon Away it bering fuch wife. he it conquered by the hy prudence Off medee the fair, And by hir sciene ;

who were busy about that matter;

for many nobles, knights, ladies, damsels, and squires, honoured the marriage feast, and danced thereat.

[Fol. 34 b.] Thus joyed the people on account of the good rule of those two, viz., of the bride and Uriens.

Their firstborn was named Grefson, who conquered many countries, including Colchis,

where was an Ile, in which the golden fleece was gained by Jason, with the aid of Medea.

1 In the margin, [Vr]yen kyng of [Oip]re by ermyne [hy]s wyf hathe a boy [cal]led gryffon.
2 MS. "medecauife."
60

DEEDS OF GREFFON, SON OF URIENS.

It would take up too much time to tell all that story. I should then be going aside from the matter in hand.

[Fol. 55.] Greffon was quick and ready in war, and conquered many places. At last he came to Tripoli (?),

which he assailed and took. Thus he acquired land, honour, and praise.

Uriens is crowned king of Cyprus. His wife's uncle is king of Armenia.

This king of Armenia dies, to

1576 EVil long tym wold be it to rehers here.
ho in-to thys boke thys mater draw wold,
The mernuailles huge had in that ille there,
A thousand ther hau[e] fall, come, and unfold ;
1580 A thousand sayn, A thousand tymes told,
As wele opin plain As fayd by straitnesse ;
Out of my mater iffue fhold expresse.

Off thys Ile to speke thys tym fhall I refte,
1584 And vnto Greffon retorn here me fhall.
Greffon with fwerdes fors was rely and prefte,
Off maree the prince, chef, And principall ;
After the porte yaffe, conquered he all.
1588 So Aboute went purfchafting dayly,
That the uailant Cite of Triple cam by ;

Bhyss huge prowesse went it to affaill
In ryght werly wyfe, For manly was in brefte,
1592 That both his penon And baner fanfaill
Put within the town, fo making conquiste.
Neuer At no day taried ne refte,
That he [ne] went by land And by ffee,
1596 laude, honour, preifmg fo conquered he.

Of f hym we fhall refte And tary now,
And to our purpos here retorn fhall we
Off vriens, kyng which is full know,
1600 And crownyd lorde of Cipresse was he.
Uncle1 to hys wif, the king of hermyne ;
When hir Fader in lif was being,
Brother to hym was of hermyne the kyng.

1604 Thys full noble kyng of Arminiens
In his days was man of grett goodnesse,

1 In the margin, kyng of hermy[ne] enkull to vriens, brother to her fa[ther.]
But Ay myght not be in liffes exiftence;
The feble and stronge dethe takyth expresse.
Ther ware hys peple full of heuyneffe,
With that forow had many mortalite,
For whyle he regned, well ruled the contre.

A doubtther he had gentile And full fayr,
A more genteler was ther non then fhe,
Off hym discended was non other hayir.
A concell ther hold off the hermyns fre
That thay wold fend to cipresse contre,
Requiring the kyng that hys brother Guy
Sol[d] fend in-to ther region only,

And1 he fhold haue that gentile damycell
To hys wedded wife, flourye the fair.
Thay thys ordnaunce Amonge thaim held ful wele;
To Cipress cam thes meffyngers debonair,
Without taryng or Any retrair
Vn-to the kyng declaryng ther message,
For euery off thaim was full wyfe And fage.

With full gret ioy refcveyued thaim the kyng,
And tham fefted wonder nobilly.
When thes nouelles vriens knowyng
Off the fayr debonair, the gentile floury,
Off hys barons toke concell haftily.
Thay All accorded2 And to hym thay said,
That hys brother rhold fend with pam pat braid.

That thys thyng were done hafted he bigly;
Guye after fend, Accorded All ther-to
That which vriens commaundde hym only.
Into sfe thay went with moche peple tho,

the great sorrow of his subjects, many of whom
died of grief.

[Fol. 35 b.]
His daughter was his only heir; wherefore the
Armenians send to Cyprus, re-
questing Uriens to send them his brother Guy,
who should have the damsel,
Flourie, to wife.
The messengers come to Cyprus.

1 MS. "AAnd."
2 MS. "occorded."

Guy agrees to the proposal, takes
ship, and arrives at Armenia.
1636 Off Armes doubty, noble, And gentile, lo!
Arriued thai were In hermey;
Wher enhereite shold the full fair floury.

1610 At erthe discended, fo thay forth going,
lordys of contre contring thaim Again,
With A wilfull hert full gentilly reseeyuyng,
And ioyfully brought forth thys fourcrayn.
Off hys comyng gret ioy had fertayn,

1644 All the estates made hym full gret fette;
he maried floure without other refte,1

1648 To brothers Afrom of trouth had it be,
So ben thay now in to brothers powere,
By fader and moder, in like manere.
Thes kynges to regned, As it is sayd,

1652 And ther tyme strongly gan thay aid

to tho which of thaim discended were;
As I understande, tho of rovels to,
That in mischief ye know, And uifite there.

1656 Full many children had thes brothers tho,
Which leuid till thay were large woxen, lo!
Many fair dedes in ther tyme thay wrought,
That fele payymes to difconifiture brought.

1660 A fter diceffe of ther fader good,
Which vnto tham both gentill fader was,
Ther Rewmes ruled well while in lif ftood,
And ther noyours underfote put bas.

1664 Fro thaim to ther fader torn wyll by grace,
As vnto Raymounde And fair melusigne,
Ther noble moder with all honour dygne.

1 In the margin, Guy marryd flowre kyng of hermyne dogter,
ys ky[n]g hymself.
When that thy have hurde the nouelles and tiding
Off ther fonctes too, goode, fair, and gentill,
How conquered had to gret Rewmes hauyng;
Wherefor thy sayd the sept fabulmes until
The kyng of glorie, enpreiling with vos flill,
By whom thy have had the huge victory,
And conquered ther foes many;

And that in so gret honoures put be
That Ayther of thaim claymed is A kyng,
And of fogettes loued in eche degre,
Then was fhe fette in defying
Our lord for to ferue, hertly hym thankynge.
Thys noble lady called Melusine,
As for the helth of hir foule deuine,
Thys fair Melusine, without tarying,
Of our lady A minstre fourged fhe
Which was ful fair, gladsom in feing;
hit edesied Melusine the fre,
And full richely it founded to fe;
Thorough All peiters, by hir owne deuyfe,
Many churches founded in glorious wyffe.

To every place yaff fhe gyftes grett.
After Oede hir son gan fhe to marie
The fair daughter, of the noble Earle gett.
For soth Raynold, whych had but on eye,
Full gret, thikke, And fers wax he wonderly;
Anthonye And he parted Lusignen fro,
For peple went thenys when dined had tho.

Or Anthony was ayne and eldeste,
Towordes Brehain toke he the freight way,
Till that luxemborugh Approched ful preste,
A famous town of gret renon that day.
which was then being besieged by the king of Alsace, who had nearly taken the town. They asked the cause of the war, and find that it was for the duke's daughter, an orphan, whom the king of Alsace wished to marry forcibly. The brethren defy the king by a herald, whereof the king is glad, as he is fierce and cruel. From afar the brethren perceived the host, armed with knives and halberds.

Beforn whom many A penon gan display, the king of Aufoy it besiegied had, Almoste it toke, within thy fore Adred.

When thes brethren to in feld comyn were, The town vnnethes gayn Aufoys myght hold;

When thes brethren to in feld comyn were, The town vnnethes gayn Aufoys myght hold;

Ther Aither of tham had hurt\textsuperscript{1} the manere, Wherefor thaim werred thyss myghty kyng bold; For A mayden it was that haue wold, That within the town was gentil, curteys, & faire,

1708 Doughter of A duke,\textsuperscript{2} Orphelyne debonair.

\textbf{B}I streght to wife haue wold hir the kyng, Remeue wold he noght thyss faiid Cite fro Til the dukes daughter he were hauyng.

1712 But Anon cam A-place thes bretherin to, Which with thaim brought A wonder huge hoft tho,

Vnto thyss faiid kyng fendl thyss diffiance, By An heraude of theres that instance.

Whereof the king was ioyus And glad, For he was lufti, yonge, fers, and cruell; A-ferrome thay perceyued the strenght had, Seing the baneres with the wynde ful wel,

1720 Which blew thaim A-lofte with many A penfell, Of Army peple feing grett fufon, With Cuftiles And Gifarmes manyon;

Then thay stafte thaim, putt in-to ordinance, Goyng to smyte ther enemies uppon, huge noyse and crye Assmembled that instance. The lusignens went, stafte crying tham on;

\textsuperscript{1} "hurd" (?) \textsuperscript{2} MS. "guke,"

[\textsuperscript{Wh}e\textsuperscript{r}o\textsuperscript{f} of the king is glad, as he is fierce and cruel. From afar the brethren perceived the host, armed with knives and halberds.]

\textsuperscript{[Fol. 37 b.] The Lusignans attack the foes boldly, so that the}
To-geders dreuing cam with gret randon,

1728 And when thay cam the Assemble to,
The erth made thay to tremble and quake tho.

Their entre-fembling don wonder ferfly ;
A gret Abashment was it tho being ;

1732 Aufoys peityuyns assailing bigly,
Peiteuyns vppon Aufoys fafte knakking,
Manyon ther flyyn, mortally deyng ;
Ayen lusignens crying1 were Ful fafte,

1736 "Theffes Aufoys ! byde our fwerdes taste,

For escape no wyfe mow ne shal ye noght !"

Ther army dedes the peiteuyns gan do,
Fro fele bodies pertid the foule in brought.

1740 Then thes brethren, ech by thaim-self, tho,
So ful werrely wrought, can noght be said, lo !
Off o fide and other fo departed there,
That the peiteuyns Aufoys gan conquere.

1744 A nthony the kyng toke with handes to,
In his hand he femyd hym no-thyng,
hym wold he hane flyyn, but he yilde hym tho,
A-non hys fwerd forth-with presenting.

1748 When Anthony saw to hym fo yilding,
he hym resceyued And his fwerd gan take ;
And tho the Aufoys gret flight gan to make ;

But peyteuyns Full ny gan thaim to few,

1752 And Raynold strongly full fafte gan to fight,
Many ther were flyyn And fele gan fubdew,
The Aufoys takyng all And flyyn don-right.
Raynold was full saxe, And wel taught perfight,

1756 In like wyfe was hys brother Anthony,
Full gentill And connyng vnto mannys eye.

1 MS. "cryng," c being mis-written for e, and i omitted.
Anthony and Raynold take their ease in their tents, and send six knights, with the captive king, to the fair maiden.

The fair creature inquires who are the two noble lords who have thus come to her assistance.

An aged knight tells her they are the "sons of Lusignan;" and that their names are Anthony and Raynold.

She is very grateful for their services, and expresses a wish to counsel with them ere they go.

She tells her council she shall invite the brethren and their host into the town.

Where that day they took to cafe thaim surely
As for ther repara in the tentes and place.

In-to the town After fend quickly
To fe if thay were rejoed in thys cace;
knightes fixe made go vnto the good grace
Off thys fair mayden, hire to present the kyng,

Thay toke to eafe thaim finely
As for ther repara in the tentes and place.

After fendi ckly
To fe if thay were rejoed in thys cace;

An aged knight tells her they are
"sons of Lusignan;" and
that their names are Anthony and Raynold.

She is very grateful for their services,
and expresses a wish to counsel with them ere they go.

They are called Anthony,
And that other hath name Raynold,
To full myghty men, manly And full bolde."

Thay toke to eafe thaim finely
As for ther repara in the tentes and place.

An aged knight tells her they are
the "sons of Lusignan;" and
that their names are Anthony and Raynold.

The fair creature inquires who are
the two noble lords who have
thus come to her assistance.

An aged knight tells her they are
the "sons of Lusignan;" and
that their names are Anthony and Raynold.

She is very grateful for their services,
and expresses a wish to counsel with them ere they go.

She tells her council she shall invite the brethren and
their host into the town.

Where that day they took to cafe thaim surely
As for ther repara in the tentes and place.

An aged knight tells her they are
the "sons of Lusignan;" and
that their names are Anthony and Raynold.

She is very grateful for their services,
and expresses a wish to counsel with them ere they go.
AND ENTER LUXEMBURG.

And with ther hofte thall\(^1\) come loge also,  
In thys said towne ther herbigage haue tho,  
And in especiall the Barons moste hy.  

1792 hyr peple said, "it shal bene done truly."

Toward thes brethren went thay forth anon,  
Within the tentes merily tham founde,  
In place where was the kyngys pavilion  
1796 For time that the sege was hold in \(\text{pat}\) ground,  
Ther founde thay I-now of goodes \(\text{pat}\) frounde,  
But of it thay wold take ryght no-thyng,  
But to men off armes All was yeuyng.

1800 What-someuer thing in that place was founde,  
Fyrfte gaf to tho gret, After final vnto.  
When fro luxemborugh where come \(\text{pat}\) frounde  
Thes meffengers Ful Aperture tho,  
1804 Ther meffage fagely And wighty gan do  
To thes to brethren off full huge prouesse  
Fro the part off thyss lady And meffresse.\(^2\)

The brethren to refceyued tham humbly,  
1808 Ryght fo As thay k\([n]\)ew full wel for to do.  
When thes meffyngers underftod nerily  
All thare Anfwer, no lenger taried tho,  
That of thes knightes five hundred and mo  
1812 Went thaim to loge there, were noght dangerous,  
knowing that ther was al thyng plenteuous.

The hoftes marfchall lefte thai \(\text{pat}\) instance,  
Ther forigers\(^4\) A-forn gan to fend  
1816 For ther hoftes to make ordinance,

\(^1\) MS. "\(\text{sholl}\)."  
\(^2\) At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Thes brethren to refceyued."  
\(^3\) MS. "\(\text{Thyes}\)."  
\(^4\) MS. "forigers."
Every place and cross-way are filled with people.

The nobles of the city convey the brethren to the castle. The maiden arrives thither; her name is Christian.

She is accompanied by many ladies, both married and maiden, who receive the brethren nobly.

A feast is provided; they wash their hands, and sit in order; the king of Alsace highest, Anthony next, and Raynold and three barons next.

A more "honest" feast was never seen. After dinner they washed their hands; and, grace being said,

Of whome the Instrumentes founded at end,
Off luxemborught entre moche to commune;
No place ther had, neither carfoukes non,
But peple shold fe ther come many one,

To the founde that thes instrumentes gan make;
The nobles and gentiles comyng thaim agayn.
Tho moste worthieft thes brethren gan take,
Vnto the castel conueng thaim certayn.
To thys assembler peple cam ful fayn,
Where appered thys criftin creature,
Whiche criftian was named, be ye fure.

Ther Acompanied was the noght ill
Of laides had ful gret company,
With noble damyfelles longing hir until,
Als of tho maried As of maidens many.

Thai thes brethren resceuued nobilly,
And ful fagely ryght fo As thay shold,
Ther vitail redy As to plesire haue wold,

With-out tariyng to wa fh ther handes went;

After went to fitte ther ceriatly.
Sche made thaim ther A ful fayr fight to hent,
The kyng of Aufoy fette was he moste ly;
After the brother to Raynold, Anthony,

After thre gret barouns of the same place,
Enmyddes tham Raynold ther fette wace.

Ther tho had was An excellent feste,
A more honester neuer fayn with ey.

Of vitail and als wines of the beft;
The peiteuyns were at eafe merily.
When dined thay had, ther handes wa fh clenly;
The tables rayfed After tho anon,

And graces faide with gret deuocion,
The king of Aufoys to the brethren to
Said, "I am your prisoner thy instance,
In your handes take at thy s journey, lo!
1852 I you here bezech to make ordinance,
In such wyse I may be put to finance."
Anthony hym said in fayr, "lord and knight,
Our prisoner be ye noght of right;

1856 Here haue we done And fhewid curteffy,
Where to wrongoufly villanous ye doo,
To thy noble damicel and lady.
Owr deades we haue put now hir vnto,
1860 your body we haue yenyn hir alfo;
Now by hir moste be all the ordinance,
Other-wyfe ryght noght but to hir plefance.

1868 In hir standeth all your deliveredance,
Or elles your deth without doubt ANY”—
(When the kyng it liurd, in hert had noifance)—
"for that ye haue hir noyed wekkiely."
Forfoth tho anon spake thys fayr lady,
1872 But by my feith As to that dede surely
Off kyng Aufoys, I wyll not ordayn, lo!
he is yours, I leue hym you vnto;
here all that I haue you1 gyf you thys day,
1876 For you to guerdon2 certes can ne may,
And hopes of gold had in trefory,
That which ye haue yufterday me do,
By your gracious noble chiualry.

1 "I" (?)  2 MS. "guerdon."
HE SUBMITS HIMSELF TO CHRISTIAN.

1880 In you lyth hys lit, And his deth also:
No other thyng shal I do ther-to;
So to your goodnesse am I bounde & hold.”
hir wordes hurde Antony and Raynolde,

They answer, “If so, he shall have a
quit-claim of us,
provided he kneel
down here
debonairly, and
cry you mercy.

1884 That hir answering, “fin ye wyll do fo,
Of vs shal he haue A quite-clayme fully,
With-that he Amend that he hath mifdo.
Then here shal he knele ful debonerly,

1888 here Aforne vs al, crying you mercy
Of trefpas and wronges he hath done here;
And yppon hys feith truly you to swere

That neuer you il after thys shal doo,

1892 No noifance, disturbance, neither demage;
Surete And hoftage shal you take ynto.”
Thys fair maden said wth full fwt langage,
“Ryght As ye hawe said, it pleafith my corage;

1896 Unto you I wyll Agre in all thyng,
As ye wyll, fo wyll I, by consenting.”

The kyng was full glad, ioyng merily,
For he trowed wel exiled to be.

1900 To thys lady went, crying hir mercy,
lyke-wyfe As was wasd by Anthony fre.
Thys womanly thyng ther refceyuned he,
Ryght As it pleafid ther thys brethren to,

1904 She Accordid in femble wyfe tho.

When the kyng had made hys othe & swrete,
Then ful lowde he spake And ful
hautaynly,
And fayd the Barons, “ful glad mow ye1 be

1908 yf such a neighbour puruely myght I
As on of you to to hame urely,
Which bene fo chivalrous in your doing,
And which for to do is prefiable thyng.

1 “myght I” (?)
ANTHONY MARRIES CHRISTIAN.

1912 S Eth here now thys plesant debonair
Gentile Cristian, thys nobyle duchesse,
Which holdeth contrees and rentes fair!
Anthony, me hire befeech your hineffe,
1916 ye don haue gret curtefy and gentilnesse,
Hit is gret refon ye were fateified
Off your ful good will don And Applied.

I fay thys to ende that it myght be wrought
1920 As that we App[r]oche that I thenke fully,
Ryght noble Barons, fin wel I haue thought,1
To my femyng, Cristian might mary
As to be yeuen unto Antoni.
1924 A man no better myght hit employ nay-where,
For this knight is A worthy bachelore.”2

Off luxemborough the Barons and eche lord,
Thay sayng, “ful wel here hath faid the kyng.”
1928 All Agreeable feete in one Accorde,
To thys werke the kyng was thaim there faing.
The mariage had with all the weddyng,3
Which endured eight days plenerly,
1932 Ther had iouftes and tormalentes myghty.

There ioufted tho ful nobilly the kyng.
At eight days ende finishted the fette,
Then evey man redy fafte haftying
1936 To go And lene take of tho femyng beft.
Anon ther cam, wythout bode or refte,
A messenger, freight faft As he myght goo,
Which longing was the king of Brehayne to.

1 MS. “thought.” 2 MS. “bachelore.”
3 In the margin, Anthony ys [duke] of luxemb[ourgh] by marry-[ing] Cristyne, eyr yerof.
with a letter to the king of Alsace. Having read the letter, he begins to sigh and weep tenderly; and, being asked the reason,

[17x485]To the kyng of Aufoys lettres he brought.

Anon the gate opened hym vnto,
Forth-with pe kyng brake thes strange lettres wrought.
As fone As he had radde thes letters tho,
There gan he to figh and fowghid for wo,
And Als for to wepe rytgh ful tenderly;
Then thes brethren to demaunded for why

That he weped fo, And wat tydinges he hade.

Vnto tham he sayld, “refte wil noght to tell;
Full ill me is come, hard nouelles and fad;¹
Befegyd haue the faryfins cruell
In Brehayne with the tirauny fell.
Off my brother kyng haue I gret pete,
Which fore difpleasith and hurteth foule me.

For your lordys fake, take therof pete,
And if it you pleafe to hys focour goo,
When Anthony underftode hys wordes tho,
Full goodly he faid thys hy kyng vnto,
“Sir,” he sayld, “for thys be not diſcomfort;
My brother you ful wel fhal recomfort.

For certes Raynold my brother fhal go,
My good knightes with hym fhal he bring,
And your brother put Away fro wo,
Ther many Sarifins fhal be deing.”
“I thanke you hertly,” to hym fayld the kyng;
“I Afferme And plegghe here vppon my life,
My brothe[r]s doughter fhal he haue to wyfe;
Raynold fhal fo enpoed be and fette,
Then in your brother better may nought be;
So god me ayde, he fhal hir hane without lette

¹ MS. “fayld.”
After my brother, kyng of hy degre;
And he fhal goure ne noble Brehayne;
For non other hoir hath non my brother,
But only hir; ne may haue non other.”

When Antony vnderftode thys nouell,
Which was ful fayr and inly gracyous,
To the kyng he faid hautayuly and wel,
“Go hens, ye noble king vertuous,
your hofte Assemble with peple plenteuous,
Al your ful hofte vnto pat place bryng,
Within thys Auynfime be ye retornyng.

M I peple ye fshall finden al redy,
Noght ouer ferre, but ny by fshall ye;
Raynold my brother to you fhal come truly,
In propre perfone me ther fhal ye fee.”
The king hym thanked goodly As myght be,
Fro thens departed he ful haftly tho,
hys peple to Assemble faft gun to go.

And when Assembled hys peple hade,
Then forth-widh As fone As he goodly myght,
To luxemborough A retorn he made,
And then to that place came hys peple raid ryght,
A noble Baronage hanuyng ther to fight;
Then he made to come A messengere
Fro king Aufoys to Anthony there;

Which ther cam tho in ful noble aray,
With A fhil vois faid to duke Anthony,
“Sir, I pray your lord you falute thys day;
The king of Aufoy And hys company

and, after his brother's death, succeed as king of Brehayne; as his brother had no heir but this one daughter.

Anthony bids the king go and assemble his army, and return again to Luxembourg within a fortnight;

for there should Raynold meet him. He himself also (Anthony) would appear there. The king hastily departs,

and soon returns to Luxembourg with all his people. He next sends a messenger to Anthony

to say that he was all ready to go to Brehayne, and that his hosts

1 See note.
were beneath the town in the fields.

Duke Anthony says he is welcome; and tells Raynold that the king of Alsace is come, and he must find his army good lodging, and make them take their ease. Raynold obeys, and all is well provided.

The king departs to Luxemburg to see the duke. A great feast is made, the particulars of which I need not rehearse.

Anthony makes all ready to go to the aid of the king of Brehayne. The number of the two hosts was, in all, 30,000.

2000 here comith to go to Brehayne haftly;
By-nethes ar thai in the fayr medew,
With ful noble company hym to few."

The duke hym sayd, "welcom shal he be."

Raynold forth he send, mofte no lenger byde.
Raynold cam Agayne, ther taried noght he;
Sir Anthony sayd, "brother, goth thyds tyde;
Into thyds faire medew forth moft ye glyde,
For ther is comyn king Aufoys roiall,
Makyng to loge hys peple gret And small,
Hys pavilon piche vnto Auantage;¹
To that done was he inly fage and wyse.

let tham take ther eafe after ther corage,
Then make the kyng come of hys hye emprife."
hys commandemement Raynol[d] gan Auife,
And it was wel don to hertis plefance,

The Aufoys loged wel with all circumtance.

The kinge departed and for² thaim toke leue,
Towards luxemborough thyds said duk went,
The town entred in, ther founde, in breue,

Gret feft thaim Among was to all entent;
After at borde fet conuenyent.
Of ther diner and fayr leue here I fhal,
For hit nedith noght As to rehers All.

Anthony Anon made tho all redy,
Such peple As were ther in that contre,
he hauyng ther A noble company
As to aid the kyng tho of Brehaigne;

Nombred thay were thirty thoufande fre,
Ther thes hostes too full Assembled were,
And full gret honour to-geders can bere.

¹ MS. "A uantage," Fr. text, "dauantage." ² "fro" (?)
Oble felowship ther A man shold fe;
As moche peple the duke As had the kyng.
When that to-geders thay made affemble,
In euery parte the grounde fafte tremblyng.
But er that made fro thens departing,
Thys fayr Criftian called Anthony,
Sayng, “you befeche, fouerayn lord hy,
That it myght you please me do such honoure
That ye the Armes wold fouchesafe to bere
Off luxemborough; noght put non hourre
Other blazon, you befeche, to were.”
“My fair swet lone,” Anthony gan Anfwere,
“Accorde fhal I noght your wyll ther-vnto,
But Another thyng for-fothe fhall I doo.
In whatsomeuer place, lo! that we be,
The fchild fhal I bere of A lyon,
Vpon my armure, plenerly to fe;
That Armys wyl haue; other wyl I non;
For that when I was born thys worlde on,
A hurt of A lyon tho I gan to bere,
Vpon my Iawe ftrongly appering there,
Where-of the peple Abaffhed was fore.
Alfo your plefire certes fhal I doo,
And ffull your wyll days euer-more.”
She said, “I you thanke full hertyly, lo!
For yf the Auffle be put Away fro,
My hole Armys fhal ye bere surely,
Both youre armys And thes fame only,
Which ben Armes ryght full Auncion.”
The Armes he toke And tham gan to bere,
And fo Afforted thaim ryght thys to gon.
Of this fair lady toke he his leue there,
Then fro ther logis thar1 dreffyd tho were,

2064 Towarde Brehaigne went thai faft dreyuing ;

every Afore other went fleing,

Paflyng fo Bauerere And also Almayn,

Suehe progresse forth made ouer the contre,

2068 By huge Iournays, ualey and montayn,

Till thay Approched the land of Brehaigne.

At thar owne defyre ther made thay entre,

Now fhal I fay of paynymes the felons,

2072 Which werred dayly thys fayd Brehaignons.

The king of Craquo2 mighty And strong was,

Werrying ful bigly the Brehaignons thoo,

With the hym Efclauons many had aplace,

2076 So as3 we haue founde in old scripture, lo !

For of that lande was lorde and fyre also.

To Brehaignons ful gret wreere he made,

On A day he went, to fearmith4 with thaim fad,

2080 A forne Brehaigne without hodelnesse.

There hym perceyued the king of Brehaigne,

And ther thought display his baner expresse,

Fedris, which held that Rewme And contre ;

2084 Armyng hym rygth fafte, taking his helme fre,

When with his armure coueryd he was,

Ther the gates made opon5 And unbras ;

FRo town issued his peple And he ;

2088 Off noble peple had he full many.

And the Sarifins bete thes knightes fre,

Many ther cafte done And moche peple fly,

But such store was of Efclauons only,

2092 That we can not put tham As in writing,

Off whom Brehaignons were ryght fore doubtyng.

1 "thai" (?) 2 MS. "Traquo." 3 MS. "os."

4 See Note. 5 Sic in MS.
Eclauons Brehaignons put fore Abake,
And tham fore chafed A-non to the ende.
2096 But of luxemborught the duke on gan take,
He puttyng Away ther huge debate tende.
Off Brehaignons kyng to fyght\(^1\) was bende,
With the Sarifins faught he in eche fide,
2100 Which his peple had put Abake that tide.

But the kyng was noght put Abake only,
But he had ynow hys life to deffende,
Here And there cafte dou\(n\), fighting ful manly,
2104 On all for-fmete, Another to grounde wende,
As A wyld boor deffendyd hym at ende.
Ryght As at bay floed thys manly good knight,
Full fore were thay hurte whom he Approche myght.

2108 But with A shotte off A launcegay tho
Thys noble knyght\(^2\) finetyn through hys body
Full felonely And cruelly alfo,
That to mortal deth fill doun fodenely,
2112 Fro body went the foule ful heuily ;
To our lord An hy commaundet was the,
For A worthy man certes was he.

There vp ros the cry, As feith the scripture,
2116 The Brehaignons wo fore wepte for pite ;
Tho that myght, ther fled ; but farifins fure
Thay fled ny, attayning tho gan\(^3\) fle.
There fwerdes gan take, fafte Aboute gan fle,
2120 Ferfly on tham went whom put myght attayn,
Full fafte caft thay doun, And many ther slayn.

\(^1\) MS. "fyght."
\(^2\) MS. "kynght."
\(^3\) MS. "gam."
The few who escaped came spurring to the town, and told the sad news; to the great grief of the slain king's fair daughter, Eglentine.

The people ran fast back into the city for fear of the Saracens, when they saw their king dead. But the Saracens are overjoyed;

and, making a great fire with bushes and wood, burnt the king's body before the gate. Those within cry and grind their teeth.

Whereof Brehaignouns braied and cried,
And tho which might ther be escaping

2124 Unto the town come spored And hied,
Declaring thes nouelles of the kyng;
Whereof At hert had that gret noyng
The kynges daughter, named Eglentine,

2128 Whome All good beute gan fair enlumyne.

Eglentine, thys kinges daughter fre,
Off paynymes had gret fere And doubtance.

The peple ran to town And Cite,

2132 The farisins moche doubted put instance,
When the kyng saw deele, whylom of pufance;
Whereoff the farisins had gret ioy tho,
Crifyng1 ther were had be ended And doo.

2136 Tho A full gret fire thay tende made And hade,
With buffhes And wod makying it full hy,
Ful ny to pe gate thys said fire put thai made,
Byforme hys peple the kyng brend truly.

2140 Marred therof ben tho within Fully,
Crying And grinting fore with ther teeth tho,
But no remedy cowde thay shap therto,

For on other wyfe ther myght it noght be.

2144 But tho cam Anthony And alfo Raynold,
Which to paynymes made fautes plente,
And of Aufoys the noble kyng hold.
To-Breaigne-ward cam thes thre told,

2148 Ther buffimentes fayr resplendifing,
As the bryghty2 fume light and fayr shinyng.

A noble thyng was to behold and fe

2152 Which gret neede had to focour and furete,

1 Triftyng” (?) 2 Sic in MS.
For gretly thai were thaim ouerpressing;
The Brehaignons went out thaim Fafte truffling,
Wheroff Brehaigne was Aftoned fore,

2156 And diffendyd thaim febly euermore.

Off thys Eglentyne had gret discomforth,
She had more leuer had mortalite.
"Als! dede is,” said, "my fader, my comfort;
2160 Fader ne moder hane I noght, perde!
here bide And dwell moft, orpheline to fe.
What now wilt thou don, woful Eglentine?
To gret heuynesse off-fors moste thou incline;

2164 For now I fe here the destruccion
Off all my regyon And Rewme roial.
Als! caytif! what shalt thou now don?
In what maner forme gourner the now fhall?

2168 Thy contre shalt fe put in exile all,
Difstroed, robbed, peled, and more wurfe,
By ille farifins; god gife thaim his curfe!

I wote nere wat to do, neither what to say,
2172 Ne I may noght to it shappe remedy;
Me moste here-After our lord to renay,
And in farifine lau beleue fully!"
Thys complained Eglentine heuily;

2176 For farifins strong Affeilede fafte certain
The cite And town, And strongly gan thaim payn

T o hauoe it, and take by affante that hour.
Such trowed it to dreffe, which failled tho;
2180 For in lytell whyle, thorugh godlys labour,
Er that pay[n]mes trowid it to do,
A meffengere cam the Brehaignons vuto,
Entred brehaigne without tarying,

2184 Ful coyly And preualy within entring,
THE PAYNIMS ARE IN TERROR.

Then escried he ryght full hautanly,
"Now go ye forth, And well shall it appere,
Which that will diffend thys cite truly.

2188 Diffend you now well, fe your focour here,
Which comyng is you in ryght fwiuste manere.
Se ye noght her of Aufoys come the kyng,
Anthony And Raynold with hym doth bryng?

2192 Moche ther comyng is you vnto focour,
Ne haue ye no worde deth vnto, fothleffe.
For the noble Duke Anthony of honour,
And raynold hys brother to this place thaim
dreffe ;

2196 With thaim peytenyyns many bryng expresse,
Which norifshed ben with good mete and wyne,
Paynyns thay will make to-ftonifte incline.

The kyng of Aufoys thaim haue in company,
2200 To focour And aid tho Af Brehaigne."

When the Barons it vnderftode truly,
Thay yildyng thankes to god in trenite.
Eche off tham diffended fcharply to fee,

2204 Ther every man good hert gan to take,
The farifins it faw, flore gan to quake.

Mvfyn what nouelles or comfort thay hade.
When thai perceiued tham to contune fo,
2208 "Se," on faid, "A meffyngere comyng fad ;"
Whiche with full fhil vois cried right loude tho,
"your efcairmish, lords, lete passe And goo.
Vn-to your loges make fair retrete Anon,

2212 Withdraw, remeue hens time is that we done.

For crifyn peple comyng faiyt many fe,
To comforth tho within, famdele¹ fered,

¹ "famdele," (?)
Off Army peple Full many here bee,

(2216) (The feldes overall, lo! ben couered),
Which us cometh, by gret wreth ftered."
Then thes paynymes wrethfully ther thenes
Whent, leuyng Anon ther ftorudy uiolens.

2220 Then to ther logges went thay retornyng,
And not-For-pat made clariners vp-blow;
And ther batailles Anon ordaynyng.
Off that other part Anthony fo grow

2224 Hys batail rengers, comyng to be know;
When entreproched thys huge hoftes to,
Sarifins stronfy ther thaim doubted tho.

The criftin peple tho ran thaim vppon;

2228 Perfed And brokyng fhildes were many;
Tho criftn went toward thaim emui[r]on,
The farifins went tham to def fend withly;¹
Ther A myghty ftoru men fhold fee to eye.

2232 To off thaim hath ther caft don Raynold,
Mereulous frokes fmote he as man bold;

2236 A paynym to fmyte went he forth Anon,
hym not warented harnes ne helme About;
For hym fwerd entred hym hed thorough-oute,
Which ther rent And clesfe d^-n the feth² vn-to,

2240 he gan fall to erth with gapyng throte tho.

Tho criftn manly gan do at that day,
Euerly fowth went with frokes fnyting.
Tho went Lusignans ef cryyng allway,

2244 "lوردys, Barons, Aforn here paifying,
Vppon the paynymes be ye wel fighting!"

¹ "wighty" (?) See l. 2260. ² Sic in MS.
THE SARACENS ARE ALL SLAIN,

The kyng of Craquol ful wroght tho he was, When hys peple faw fuch hurtes purchas,

2248 To thaim focour hym efforced tho, With gret strenth And myght his fwend gan enbrave, hys fwend ferfely thone, And by gret vertu, lo! A crifin hath he cafte dön vpon the grace,

2252 Al deth to ground laid throwen in the place. After Craquo1 hily cried And grad, “O ye crifin, your dethe now here had ;

[Ped. 47.] you shall all die.”
But Raynold strained his brand of steel fiercely, and smote the king with such force that he rent his head to the teeth.

[2256 A] All shalle ye dye, escape ye ne may,

hys langage greuyd moche Raynold that day, With ipores fmete farte his course[r] bigly, With hand ftrained hys brande of fitile ferfely,

2260 And wightly went to fmite the kyng Craquo,1 By fuch fors And frentred hed rent teth vnto.

B uftely And rude the fstroke gan difcend,
Raynold cafte hym dön, to deth the king fall ;

2264 Wherwith hys peple to difcomfort wend, No longer fogerned farifins, gret ne fmall. With ther courfers ther ways torned all ; When thay perceiued and faw ther kyng slayn,

2268 Thay thaim held tho All difcomite plain.

A Pertly Anly Openly torned to flight,
But peiteuins tho purfute after made, Vpon farifins fmete and bete dön ryght,

2272 Tham all to-chapped And kerue in pecis fad, As men dön the flesh vpon the stal had. Anthony, the full noble fouerayn, Off paynyns hath ryght manyon slain.

1 MS. “Traquo.”
AND AFTERWARDS ENTIRELY BURNT.

2276 The farifins thaim held for discomfit;
       he rent And tare don all he gan attain.
The kynge of Aufois, Also A good knight,
       He hym bare ful wel And nobilily certain.
2280 All the paynymes ther of trouth were slain;
       When ther perceiued the king Aufois bold
Tho kynge of Craquo1 standed and all cold,

2284 A nd of painymes fo full gret fusion,
2288 In every part put to was the fire,
       Ther paynymes were brule and brend entire.

Off Sarfons2 A man fhold venge hym ryght fo,
       For of verray trought of Craquo1 the kynge
2292 like made hys brother to Afskis brend tho.
Anthony And Raynold ther were logging
       In tentes reifed which thei were finding ;
The poitvinys ther logged in-ly well,
2296 And farifins dislogoed euclidelle.

The kynge Aufois lefte3 thes holy mightes,
       Vnto the town went he ther forth A-non,
       With hym An hundred of noble knightis,
2300 Of mofte wurtieft being enviorn,
       And mofte hightieft goodly of perfon.
The fair Eglentine comyng hym Agayn,
       What-so she gan do wel be-cam certayn ;
2304 Humbly And swetly falute she the kynge,
       For hir uncle was he naturally,
The kynge gentilly hir ther enbrafoxing,
       After hir gan kyffe ryght full curtoilly.

1 MS. "Traquo."       2 MS. "Garfons."       3 MS. "lefte"

Anthony rent and
tare all he could
attain to, and at
last all the Pay-
nings were slain.

[ Fol. 47 b ]
The king of
Alsace bids that
all the dead
bodies should be
laid upon a heap,
and burnt; and
thus was it done.

It was in revenge
for the way in
which the king of
Cracow had burnt
his brother’s body.
The Polteins
lodge well in the
enemy’s tents.

The king of
Alsace and 100
knights ride off to
the town.
Eglentine comef
off to meet them,

and salutes her
uncle. He assures
his niece that her
father’s death is
well avenged.
2308 "Fair nece," said the kyng, "here I you affy
That your fadir Deth auenged is well;
Be ye noyht wroth, displea ye no dell.

2312 Ye haue fayn hys deth uenged with gret fors;
The king of Craquo 1 for hym is ther ded;
Off your fader ne haue mynde ne remors,
Thys faiad king Craquo 1 brende haue I in-ded.
Comfort your-felf, that is wit and womanhed;

2316 iff Any demage don haue in contre,
Off ther wages thay truly payed be.

2320 Now haue thay failled of ther art all-oute;
And of shame no-thyng certe haue not ye,
Wherfor reproche or repref fhold be.
I haue wonnen that nedith you thyts hour,

2324 Acquired haue ye worhip and honoure."

"H A, fir," the said, "good lord fourerain,
My gentile uncle, and my ful fwet frend,
When I me bethenke on my fader fayn,

2328 A-non my hert within weepingly is tend."
"Was not he my brother?" replies her uncle;
"Was not he my brother?" said the kyng at end;
"hyt behounith us forow to fete paifie,
Pray we god on hym haue mercy and grace.

2332 H is funerall obfeque to-morn we do,
And for hys good foule to our lord pray we."
Rygth as he sayd, don was al thyng tho.
A thousand pound of wax fourgaded and made she,

2336 As for the morn to done the obfeque,
At fodayn warneyng had thay such huge light,
Anthony And Raynolde both were ther ryght;

1 MS. "Traquo."
Only will

Moche the Brehaignons gan vnto behold
The habilite of thes compaynouns tho,
Thes said wurthy men, thes to brethren hold,
That myght noght be wery, youre ne olde,

As theim vnto see fo fette verily,
Large, long, gret, strong, ftreight, wel thought truly.

Then began the Brehaignons to behold these two wurthy brethren; and none were ever weary of looking at them.

Many were astonished at the mark upon Anthony's face, as it was very plain to the sight and large.

They also thought Raynold was well-shapen for conquering kingdoms, and commended him for everything but his lack of one eye.

The king of Brehaigne being honourably buried, the king of Alsace holds a council,

and advises them to choose a new

1 "well" (?)  2 "bold" (?) See note.
3 MS. "of." See note.
The king. They reply that it is his business entirely.

And ho your king fhould be know now ye fhould, For prefently now with-out king ye be.” Ther hym Answering, “good ryght is to fe, 2372 But the werke therof fully doth partain And all the labour in you hole and plain.

For gif Eglentyne were ended And gôn, you to enherite fhould fall the contre; 2376 The purueaunce therof lith you uppon, Auaunce you now, for hys lone in trinite, So that thys contre well purueyed be Off on, chofen by you, that Eglentyne 2380 May¹ marie and gouerne us and our line.”

The kyng Answered, “to my parte you say, To whom behouith my nece to mary? Or for whom² wold ye? you beseech All-way, 2384 That ye me say your Auife fully.” “Sir, at your deuife,” the Barons said surely, “Ryght As ye will, fo certes will we doo; No knight will receiue but at your pleire, lo!

He replies that in that case they shall have for a lord one who is a worthy and famous knight.

Al the werke therof we put you uppon.” “Then in goddis name, fires, let me do”— (This Answered thys noble kyng Anon)— “On fhall ye hane gentile And curtois to, 2392 A man of goodnesse and of honour alfo, Whom ye fhall receiue As unto your lorde, Is hardly wurthi knight, good of recorde; 2396 On other I will certes to you take.

On other I will certes to you take.

Then to brothers hane, noble kynges to, And An hye Duke,” to thaim thys the kyng spake, “In your grette nede you aid hath alfo ;

¹ MS. “Many.” ² MS. “whom.”
To thy place comyn firre contrees fro;
Delivered hath your noble Cite
Fro the paynimes And all your contre."

Raynold called forth by the kynge, Anon,
Sayng, "vynto you will I couenaunt hold."
The kynge wyth oys hyc said, hurnd manyon,
"Come forth here! Appere! come forth, Raynold!
Approche As come nerre, fwete frend, As man hold."
here-beforn I haue you be promyfing
That of this contre make you wold A kynge.

Y will not you lye, but to it consent,
For A kynge he shold lye ne be gabbyng;
My nece Eglingente to wife shal ye hent
With all rewme And that to it longing.
Will ye hir now take, the lande diffending?
Off hyr And hyrs you lorde shal I make,
And all longith hir ye As for to take."

When sir Anthony All thyse vnderftode,
he taried noght to Anfwere redy,
hc hartly thankyng thyse noble kynge good
That fair Eglingente Raynolde shold mary.
"Off your fre kyndeneff And curtefy
The contre shall diffende, ruling well the lande;
For werre he can well, knightly is off hand."

When thes Barons thyse Anfwere had fong,
To our lorde thankeyes yeldying full hyly,
And to our lady in thar hertes ftrong,

one of them a duke, have saved their city.
He therefore calls Raynold, and tells him he will perform the promise he made him, that he would make him a king.
Raynold is to have his niece and all the kingdom.
Sir Anthony thanks the king heartily, and promises that Raynold shall defend the country well.
The barons praise Our Lord and Our Lady when they

1 MS. "hyr." Fr. text, "en hault."
2 "bold" (?)
3 MS. "by." Fr. text, "mentir."
4 Or "werie;" but "werre" is right.
The marriage-feast.

Raynold and Eglentine, being finely arrayed, are married; and the marriage-feast lasted 15 days.

Never were fairer presents given than were then given by Eglentine. There were 1000 men there from the country, besides the "townish" people.

Raynold gained great honour in the tournaments, and is greeted with loud acclaim on all sides.

But Raynold, ther thens bare the grete honour That of Brehaignons lord was tho present; Ther faing al with O wis pet hour, "Lif, lif oure noble kinge reuenter!"

For A man hym know vnto All entent! And blisfede be he hym A-place gan bring!"

At feftene dais end ceffed the fefting.

1 Thys kyng ordayned his nece Eglentine All that pertain shold A quene of ray fine.

2 And Raynold like-wiue put hym in Aray As pertained to kinges hye corage.

The marriage don And finished that day Before the fyght of all the Baronage; Thys fett ther roiall fourged by tho fage; Hit days fiftene endured largely,

Full noble gyftes ther geuen frely.

N Euer was yeuen more fairer thinges, Robes, courfers, iew[es] forth preuent. Alfo ther had thes honorous kinges

Ioufes, tornementes full excellent In presence of ladies courtois And gent. Prefently ther had A thousand of contre, Without tho townifhe peple, vnto fe.

1 In the margin, Raynold marr[ies] Eglentyne, & ys kynge of br[h][aine].

2 "with O vois" (?) MS. "with .O, wis."
Towarde luxembrough he and hys mayne, Which were full noble And gentile to fee.

And in Brehaigne gan to byde And dwell Raynold the hye kyng, whome gan to honoure

All the wide contre courtioily And well, And by hys nobleffe be such gouernoure, Eche man his dedes preiefd hugely that houre. In Friœ made gret werre Rainold er he refte

At orthologue off the grett conqueste.

By hys strenght Denmarke gan he to acqure; In his tyme regned As man pufantly; Full goodly leuid hys lif here entire; And As that man non here more wurthy Was not A-thys-fide the romayns truly. As off hym here no more declare att All, Off the Duke Anthony talke & speke me fhall;

Anthony the Duke, And off Aufoys the kyng, Which were courtiois, gentile, connyng, And fage. Fro Brehaigne tho ensemble comyng, After at luxemborough toke ther hostage.

Ther on fro other parted of viage, At luxemborough 'king Aufois not wold sogourn, A1 freight in-to hys contre gan retourn. 

Anthony with hys wife gan vnto remayn, For litill while had thai maried be. Ful moche hir louing with perfecte hert plain, In wil and dede hir loued hertly he, As any man cowde A-this-fide the fe.

and returns home to Luxemburg.

Raynold acquires great honour as king of Brehaigne, and carries on a great war in Friesland.

and also conquers Denmark. We leave him now, and return to Duke Anthony.

Anthony and the king of Alsace arrive at Luxemburg, where they part; and the king of Alsace returns home.

Anthony remains awhile with his wife, whom he loved heartily.

Here follows the catchword—“Anthony with hys wyffe.”
BERTRAM IS MADE KING OF ALSACE.

2484 hys wyse by hym had to chelldren perfight,¹
On named Bertran, which was A good knight;²

The yonger had to name lochier the gud;
he delyuerd straytes all and gyed

2488 As of dardane, which plente had wood,
Many A good knight³ ther fortefied;
ywon all-ther-sirt ther he edified;
Vppon meufe the noble brigge made

2492 Off meifiere, after A-conquefite had

Any other places by hug proweffe;
Of al gret noblesse thys faid man tho was.
Anthony wered with strong befrinesse

2496 The Erle of Faborough,⁴ conquerft gate by gras;
Pafl'ying Aritrige,⁵ many richefse made purchas,
And all put in-to hys fubieccion,
Conqueryng ther many A regyon.

Aftcr, Bertran the eldefte fon becam,
Within litell whyile, ful gret And ryght

manly;
To wyfe toke the daughter of Anfoys kyng of

fame;
A full good knight was, gentile And wurthy,

2500 Entrepreignant, coragious, and hardy,⁶
And more often-tymes then I can you fay;
kyng of Anfoys was after the kynges day;

Hys⁷ daughter maried, As beforne gan tell,

2508 Which lady tho was of al the contre.
Bertran ther regned and gouverned welle.

¹ MS. "prefight."
² In the margin of elder Bertran, Anton[yo] sons, & of younger lochý[er].
³ "brought" (?) ⁴ "Friborough" (?) ⁵ "Aritrige" (?)
⁶ In the margin, Bertran kyng of Anfoys. ⁷ MS. "Hhys."
Thes brethren to regned As men fre,  
That by strenght & myght put vnder fote in fe  
All tho which thain made trouble or noyfance.  
Off thain will I refte me here this instftime.

To Melusine shall I retorn Again,  
And my mater ayen taken shall bee,  
how that Raymond hym gouerned certain.  
Ther full excellently regned he,  
In places fele, in many A contre,  
By strenght of fwend conquered of corage ;  
For hys nobleffe All Barons gan do hym homage.

Affray with grette toth becam man full grette,  
Ryght myghtly, strong, fers, whight, & full  
pufaunt ;
In werring A strong werriour ryght fet ;
Dayly his vertu preuyngly gan haunt.  
For he conquered Guedon the huge Geaunt,  
And by knightly strenght hym ther difcomfight,  
Which Geaunt wafted the contre don ryght,

Every man strongly gan hym to redoute,  
To Rochel toke saugearde, for all hym drad ;
he paceyfed \(^1\) the contre thorough-oute,
As well in meddes As at endys had.

When Geffray underftod thes nouvelles sprad,  
And put hym called with gret toth tho,
He fwere hys oth Again hym wold he go ;

And in hert thought well hym to difcomfight,  
To the swete plesire of kyng of glory  
Which yeuith all tho that wyll victory ryght.  
His fader Raymounde full wo and fory,  
For the Geant he doubted heuly,

\(^1\) "fet" (?)  
\(^2\) Or, "paceyfed."
FROMONT ASKS HIS FATHER

2540 For that he was so horrible grete;
Off Geffray in mynde ful huge doubte he get.

Geffray with gret toth Armed hym full preste,
hym-selfenn the tenth went to that parte,

2544 Paffyng forth hys way without any ryfte.¹
Here shal I hym leute, no more now said be;
Retorn Againe shall to Melusine fre,
The fwe, the courtois, the benigne alfo,

2548 Which after thys bare wurthy children to,

Rygght As we find A litterall scripture,
On called Fromont, Another Tierry.
For-foth fromont was A good creature,

2552 An huge gret clerke ful of clergy,
The Abbey of malers louyd feruently;
Callyng to god, louyng relygyon,
So that to hym cam of denocion

In the abbey of Maillezais; and therefore ran to his fader, and besought him to consent to his wearing the monk's habit.

2556 IN the faid abbey A monke hym yilding.
Fro thens departed without restyling plain,
Vnto hys fader fafte he cam rennyng,
A-non hym ther made thys requeste certane,

2560 Be-fought the neusture of Malers myght attain,
On monke habite A monke hym to make.
When Raymond hird thys, wo was for hir² fake;

HE merueled gretly, to fromont³ faing,

2564 "Fair fone, how is thys? A! good lord hy!
Wil ye A monke be nedis be-comyng?
Reward and behold your brother Anthony,
And all your bretherin being full knightly,

2568 Which ben fo noble knightes to fe!
Vnto be A monke certes may noght be;

¹ *Sie*; for "refte." ² "his" (?) ³ MS. "formont."
S O god be pleased, monke shal ye nought be.  
Another ordre to you yiff I shal,
2572 A knyght will you mak of full hye degre  
As your brethren ben named ryght roiall.”
Fromont Answered to hys fader all
That he neuer wold be in ordre of knight,
2576 Neither armes bere, but ferue god to ryght,

"Prayng to our lorde, vnto hys hy empire,
For you, my moder, and my bretherin all;
Vnto be A mo[n]ke I you here require,
2580 No-thing fo moche coueyte ne defire shall  
As in maillers Abbay be perpetuall.  
That place or cite haue I noght in hate,
For ther wold I ufe all my lifes fate.
2584 Befech you and pray, caufe me not it refufe;
Cherefull fader myne, in you al the hold.”
Raymounde sawe wele herd was it exeufè,  
To Melufine fent A meffynger bold
2588 Which As for that tyne the befte gan unfolde;  
Then the meffynger gan declare and tel
All that Raymounde had told hir euerydell,

"On Fromont A monke of maillers wold be.
2592 Haftily Raymound fent, for joy of it had non,
To ende that for Fromont ordayn shold she,
If pleased wold be, A crowne his hed uppon,
And pat claustrall monke he shold be made on
2596 In faire maillers, that miniftre roiall,
That lorde for to ferue which is eternall.”

The fair Melufine Answerde hym tho;
"Off my part ye go, vnto my lord fay,
2600 At hys plefaunce all ther-of will I doo,
Me submitte vnto hys ordinaunce all-way;
RAYMOND WOULD DISSUADE FROMONT,

At hys plesire be I will, noght say nay;
For whatsomuer pleareth hys hynees,
2604 hit liketh me wel, hon-so he it dreffe.”

Then the messinger retorned anon,
No lenger fogorme in that place ne wold;
Fro then retornyng vnto Raymonde gôn,
2608 A-morn him found Al redy rayd to behold;
Al hir answere the messinger hym told.
Ful greit joy of hert in hym gan furmount,
Anon Raymounde called after Fromont.

Raymond tells Fromont that Melusine has left
the whole matter at his own dispositio, and he will therefore permit him

[Eol. 63 b.] either to go to the
abbey of Maillezais, or to
"Merk" minister, or to "Brough-
dieu;"

or, that if he wished to be a
 canon, he should be canon, of
Poitiers and also of Tours in Touraine, and of
Saint Martin’s,

FOrsoth if ye will be A Chanon,
Of peitea a Chanon certes shal ye be;
2628 Enherite ye shal As moche As thre Anon;
Toures in tourayn, posceede it shal ye,
Seint1‘Martins’ with the Graunt esglise in fe;
All shal be dôn ryght At my denysye,
2632 And therof do make dedes in best wife,

1 MS. “Seing.”
And of our lady of Chartres also. 

And of Chartres also. Or he might go to Paris if he pleased. Afterwards he should have a bishopric, or, if he liked, two,

With the Pope will be quented for A Iape, 
That nothyng shal be which me shall escape. 

After Biffhupriche if it luft to craue, 
Anot[h]er Biffhupriche Als shal ye haue, 

BE it pareys, Bewuais, or Aras.”

Fromont said, “shal I be A Chanon? 
Nay, nay, but A monke, by our lordes gras, 
Off Maillers it is myn entencion.

Other will I noght off wordly good non 
Neuer at no day, while lif may endure, 
For that place haue I choisin to me fure.”

Thys Fromont outring hys Fader vnto, 

“Then off goddis part,” to hym faid Ray- 

mounde, 

“Sin it plefith you, it shal bene ryght foo. 
And loke that For us your prayers in founte.”

Fromont Anon Anwered that flounde, 

“yff it pleafe our lord, my power do shall.”

longer parlement of it nedith noght at all, 

The habite he toke, clothed opinly, 
The monkes ther shewid great gentilnesse; 

With huge nobley clothed was to ey 
For hys fader loue, Raymounde fothleffe; 
And for Melulfne his moders noblesse. 
All ther hole couent gret ioy made ther ryght, 

And him chered in befte wife thei myght. 

By proceffe therof ful ill after came. 
Ther-for wer thei all after difherite 
By Gaffray with gret toth; After had gret grame,
2664 Which in hert was in full dolorous plite; For toherof he had A full gret dispite, Without tarying to Mallers cam he, hit brende and fett Afire by his cruelte

2668 But in the monkes, Abbot, and Abbay; A hundred monkes within brende he tho. Thys mischefe ther had in A tewiflay, For Mars was the god longing bataill to, 2672 Vail that vail might, the monkys brend fo. That don, no lenger ther wold noght fogoûn, Fro thens he comyng, fafte gan to retorn.

2676 Off this here shall leue, speking of melufine. At vavuant cite redily she was, To sonne And winde puttyng hir robys fine, Which newly were come by fortunat cas, Nener Aforn bonde to fuch feruice bas. 2680 Bi that Raymounde was comyn to þe porte, And full gladly fette ther to take disporte, Ther thay faw come forth messingers to, Which fele letters brought with brellas many. 2684 Of Anthony hys part, A pufant man tho, And of Raynold the sufisant kyng hy. To Raymounde thai tuke thes letters haftily, he thaim recceined And the wax gan breke, 2688 The letters gan rede As humble man and meke. With a feruent joy hys hert gan laugh tho, Melusine Anon forth-wîth gan to call. She hid hir right noght, Anon cam hym to, 2692 "Thys letters behald," faid he overall. "Raymound, I you thanke, my lord principall." Then unto Raymound fair Melusine faid, "Certes, this goth well at thys houred braid.
I thoroughly know all these new tidings
Full good and fair ben vnto vs this hour,
Wherof thanke our lord the king of kinges,
Which oure fones han put to fuch honour.

Thre of tham ben thorough knightly laboure
Kynges full myghty, And on A duke ful hy;
yut god be thanked, haue we here full ny

On off our fones monke in An Abbay,
Which daily for vs besechith god an hy;
At allers hath hys byding thys day,
Wher god he praith to focour vs truly,
And that so myght pray to hys plefance dayly,

That never vs haue in obliuion;
For affigned hath will our fones echon.

Thay bene well taught, inly wife and fage;
Four of tham yut ben with vs here bydyng.

Which in thys house ben mery in corage.
Our lord of hys grace so thaim be theching,
That hyly thai may in tyme be regning,
To that shall thay nought faunt no-thyng truly,

So god thaim aide and our lady mary !"}

The nouell freight Aboute emvironce
And knownen ouerall in eche place and cite;
Whereof rejoied evry man to fe,

Fiftene dais were ny in fuche delite,
Making ryght greyt ioy, biding the fame plite,
Where-for ther frendes feste wold merily;
In continuance thought do it hertly.

So it cam and fill in a faturday,
That Raymounde lofte the fair melusine,[lo:]
As at other days don had alway,
But nought enquered hou the dede gan goo;

and praises the King of kinges,
who had raised her sons to so high honour.

[fol. 55a] She rejoices also to think that one of her sons is in an abbey, and
prays God daily to be mindful of them.

Four of her sons are yet at home;
but they will want nothing, if
God and our Lady Mary aid
them.

The glad news soon spread
throughout every city and a fifteen-
days' feast is held
in celebration of it.

It befell on the Saturday, that
Raymond lost
Melusine, as he
had often done
before on that
day of the week.

1 MS. "There."
To what place she went, or what she wolde do, yf abfence but good neuer she ne thought, But all that to hys plefaunce myght be wrought.

That hys brother, which tho Erle of forefte was, For ther Fader dede long biforn being, At vavuent that day riuage gan purchas. The thyme fair, wynt wynde hye or bas, The morn[µ]g ryght fair fhuyynge, inly clere, Raymounde his brother faw com drawing nere; HE him receineu uerray brotherly; But after it cam to gret mischef prefte.  

Vnto this feste cam Barons full many, Which notable were And rgyht ful honefte, Ther welcomyng the Erle of forefte, Als of lades cam grett fufion, Whos comyng was the feste enchefon. Then hym faid the Erle of the wild forefte, "Raymounde, fair brother, now me here entend, Iete your wife appere here at thys faid feste."

Raymounde Answerd, As not wold condiffend, "To-morne fhall hir fc, chere brother And frend;" Anon conueid to fitte att the table, Thys feft plener And rgyht delectable.

After Anon As thai dined hade, And fro the table reified up tho were, The Erle of forefte Raymound by hand lad, A litill drawing fro other apart there, Thys gan he to fay ther in this manere:—

1 MS. "prifte."
"Raymounde, fair brother, said is in good feith; ye be enchaunted, As the peple feith.

And what knowen ye what she doth pat day?
Men fayn overall, so god my soule faue,
That all difording is she All-way;
That day hir body Anothir man fhall haue,
To you traytereffe, other fo to craue;
And fom other fayn she is off the fayry.

Go thys day, brother, And know it veryly;
Putteth payn to haue off it knowleching;
To go And enquere good is ye do fo;
For hide fhold noght she As fro you no-thing,
I say it yow now As my brother vnto,
Now do As ye feme befte vnto be do;
I beleue the doth you fhame And outrage."
Raymounde bluffhed, changing his corage,

So malice And wroght, wifte noght what to fay;
For wo And heuinesse full faffte fwatte he.
Anon went thens, hys fwerd fet pat day;
Full well he knew where his wife made entre;
There he faffte knakked where he had noght be;
There A dore tho perceived he certain
Off yre Aiforn hyme with hys eyes twain.
Drawing his sword from the scabbard, he drove the point against the iron door till he at last pierced it.

Looking through the hole thus made, he perceived Melusine bathing,

her upper part white as snow, and her fashion most fair, but beneath she had a serpent’s tail!

It was great and horrible, barred with blue and silver. Raymond, perceiving this, cried to God,

though he could scarcely utter a word. In order to stop the hole, he cut a little piece of cloth, and

\[1\] MS. “ther;” Fr. text, “du Fourrel.”
With wax melleth, stopted the hole Alway,
That by it myght noght man perceiue no-thyng.
Fro thens departed he tho, faste going.

Towardes hys brother thought he to repaire,
Dolorous of hert, full of wrath that ftounde.

Hys brother the erle knew at hys retrair
That he better wo in hertte had profounde,
Trowyng nerily that his wif had found.
"your wife, had fhe don gain you As men faid,
In som dishoneste place where he1 fhold no braid?"

Then Raymounde gan speke with vois full hautain,
And hym faid, "therof ye lye vntrewly,
By your fals throte And youre teeth plain!
In An ill houre here ye entred in surely;
Fro my hous ye goo with [y]our felony;
Off my lady no more2 speke ye for fhame,
Sche is pure And elene Als without diffame.

A more wurthier woman is ther non,
ye haue made me do fuch A manere thyng
Torn contrary will Again my perfyon.
A-non part here; hens, foule rebaude being,
For, by my feith, full litill is failling
That prefently here that I you not fle;
Forth depart you hens, by conceill of me.

Curfed be the hour that euer heder came,
And that tho wurdes faide were Any wife!
Neuer toward me retorn noght for fhame!"
Raymounde femede all witlefe to deuise,
All merueled that gan it aduertise,3

1 "fhe" (?) 2 MS. "nomore." 3 MS. "aduerfite," a curious inversion.
That to his brother fo spake and faide,
The Erle, Abaffhed And foule difmaide,

There thens retournyng in-to his contre,

Full often cruiling the hour and the day

That thes wordes fecapid or mouthed he,
hys brother perceued he haue fhold ne may
Neuer pees ne lufe for this gret affray ;
More neuer ne was woor at no ftounde

Then off that he hade wrethed fo Raymounde.

He ftroied And made exile the contre ;
For when Gaffray with gret toth it knew,
Ryght deliverly ther Arined he,

Sette it Afie, the Erle gan ile ther trew
Full vilously with huge shame to vew ;
After the contre yasfe of the Foreftet
To on his brother, fo gete by conqueste ;

Off the foreftet Erle madc hym entirely.

Off Gaffray with gret toth leue fhall now
prefent,
And return I fhal to Raymounde fully,
Which with heuinesse fore hym doth torment.

He wepte, he wailed, wofully lament ;
Wonder pale he waxe, wanting his colour,
For ende hade he none of this grett doloure.

"Alas! alas!" thyse ther faide Raymounde,

A more purer man in the wordle ne is
Off verray trought then I Am this ftounde!
Alas! Melusine! this day haue don Amys,
That by my diffaute you haue I lofte this!"

(For frow therof fo quaked and swat),
"Alas! fhall I you leue, lone delicat,

1 Sic in MS. 2 "he" (?)
I bewails his curiosity bitterly.

By the full dolorous fortune

2880 Now shall I lose my joyous thoughts, and cast myself into some pite. Never shall I laugh again!"

I shall, lo! cafte me in somewhat hume.

What shall I now doo, lord glorius?

I fhal, lo! cafte me in some pity liume.

What fhal I now doo, lord god glorius?

Xeuer fhal I lagh, neither my joyous rith that swete lady whom I loued fo.

She was my folas, my joy in each stede,

My plefaunce, my comfort, my delite to!"

2881 Concluding his lament, he undresses and goes to bed; but cannot sleep. He sighs, and cries.

2882 "Ha! Melusine, if I lose thee, I shall go to some desert place.

Ha! Melusine! that I should thus lose you!"

The hier off his hede tere of with gret pine,

2883 In his bede turnyng,

And efte gan return, in on eftat ne myght he noght fogourn;

2890 Ha! Melusine, my hertes Appetite,

Fair lady, my hert, my loun, my plefaunce,

That you this fhould lefe by fuch ill mischaunce!"

2900 With fift his breft fmote, heuly gan mourn,

Full ofte wailled, by-weping Melusine;

In his bede turyn,g And eftet gan mourn,

In on eftat ne myght he noght fogourn;

2904 Swetly all naked hir difpoilled fhe,

Courteisly fhe went ther the bede vpon,

The bier off his hecle terere of with gret pine,

2905 He tears the hair off his head, suits his breast, and walls. He turns from side to side on the bed.

Melusine then returns, undresses, and lies beside him. She embraces him, and finds his neck cold.

1. Sic in MS.

2. Sic in MS.
MELUSINE COMFORTS RAYMOND.

With Raymounde she lay in conclusion;
She enbraing hym, collyng amourefly,

2912 FYnding his nekke cold with all the body

A caufe that he was All uncouered tho,
And that by greuous beting And turnyng,
Full ill was he raid, plonged for in wo.

2916 In bafe wife Melusine ther hym fayng,
“Dolour or anguifh be ye ought feling?
An ouer pale colour have ye to eye;
Me fay ye the trought, befeech you hertly.

2920 Alas! Am I noght your loute eueridell?
Fro me shold ye noght hide no manner thing.
Say me how it is, hele you shal I welle,
For no wordly thyng not your-felfe hyndryng.

2924 Confesse ye me if Any il be feling,
Delyuer you shal A-non openly,
All hole shal ye be here now prefently.”

When Raymound tho wourdes with eres gan here,

2928 Rejoyed merely, thought no-thyng she knew
Off all that dede which had do entire;
yut knew she it wel, thow noght fai'd of-new,
For he discouered noght (but kepe it trew)

2932 The dede vnto no person that infauntce,
And that therof he had uerray repentance
A hundred tymes more then I can say.
Raymound hir fai'd, “gret hete haue I had

2936 In maner of continuance alway.
Now is this brennyng whereof Am Adred
Torned and changed, into coldneffe lad.”
“helth shall ye purchas,” unto hym fai'd she;

2940 “Stoned ne baffhed of no thyng be ye.”

She enbraied hym And fwtely gan kiffe,
S Where-with Raymound approched gret cafe.
GEOFFREY GOES TO FIGHT THE GIANT GUESON.

long tyme he regned in fuch state of bliffe, 2944
And fuch lif gan led, ech other gan pleafe.  
Off ther beyng here will I leue and ceafe,  
To declare and fay make we will redy,  
As of my famplere to procede plainly.

2948 Then this to my mater here retourne I.  
Gaffray with long toth governed hym fo,  
That to Guerrande1 Gaffray fafte gan to hy,  
Demaundyng the way the Geant vnto

2952 Where he myght be founde, to fight with hym  
wold go;  
The Roche perceined myghty and pufant,  
Wherto repaired thys cruel Geant,

Galled Guedon,2 that fo orgulous was,  
Gret, thikke, longe, ftronge, meruelous to fe.  
Gaffray fro his hors difcended apas,  
Armed hym A-non, lenger bode not he.  
When Armed he was, to hors lepe a-ye,
The Roche palled he, goyng vp Anon
Unto the castell, sette the mount vppon.

2076 Unto the brigge cam, with thil uols gan cry.
"Where Art thou, fals traytour, where Art
throw ?
To deth saile thou be caft by me truly.
Which in my contre And in my lande now
2080 So long were haste had: to god I A-now,
Neuer here-hens shall I deport no day
Till unenquithed or desle hauw the I may."

On A donlon hil was this huge Geaunt,
2084 In the Gaiaries being ther with-in.
The uis huld of hym noble and pufaunt,
haftily Anon vp riling gan to win;
his hede put he out, uillage large and chin,
2088 (Which was All fo gret As A bole his hede).
Gaffray with gret toth be-held hym in-deled:

Horrible gret was. A forwaxon grome.
Such Another never had he fain;
2092 Which his godlis fwere that full hym come
Sure uillwined gan hym hold certain.
When a soule man lust with hym were plain.
And into hys hous to feke hym comyng.
2096 lightly hym armed, Anon difcendoing;

A Fauchon of sfele went he unto take.
Well grounde or whet, but tendre was it
nought;
After flaelles thre of yre toke for hys fake,
3000 In hys besom put thre gret flegges wrought;
The bridge Analed, to ifowe out thought.
Ful gret and large was formed of body;
When in his being mustred unto ey,

1 MS. "ser:"
Fr. text, trope.
3004 Fiftene fote long this Geaunt was expresse:
And when Gaffray nehed hym in-deede, Strongly merueled of his huge greteffe, But yot for all that of hym noght gan drede,
3008 Neither fere had for greteffe, lenght, ne brede, But that Anon diffied hym boldely, And towarde thys Geaunt drew hym lightly.

"What art thou?" said Guedon, "truffe hens," said he.

3012 Hym he anwered, "Sir," said without blame, "Gaffray with long toth fo men callyn me; At no day ne hour neuer hid my name; Thine heed come to hane, diffende pe for shame?"

3016 "Caytiff," said Guedon, "wat cafte thou to do? The will fle Anon with o foule stroke or to;

H Ens ye now retorne, my fair fone," he faide, "Off the in my hert renneth grete pite, your yongly perfon seing at this braide, And that ye er grete habilite; Gaffray, go hens of frendlyhedede," said he, hym Anwered he, "foly. is no nay;

3024 haue thou pite non but of thi life this day,

F Or without diffante she shall ende Anon.
Fro keruing of my fwerp here now diffend the; In mortall deth dye shall here thi perfon; 3028 Escape maifte thou noght in no wyfe fro me." Thys Geaunt noght told of hym in no degre, Gaffray cam fafte contring the Geaunt then, As moche And As fafte As hys courfer myght ren.

1 MS. "Thime." 2 MS. "And." 3 MS. "She." 4 "ar of" (?)
...and overthrows the giant. The giant, astonished, rises up, and tells him his stroke shall be repaid.

[Vol. 61.]

Being wrath at having been thus struck down by a single blow, he seizes his steel falchion, and cuts the legs off Geoffrey's horse.

The horse falls, Geoffrey leaps off, and at a blow nearly severs the giant's left arm.

But Guedon, to end the fight, deals Geoffrey a blow on the helm with his flail, which almost fatal him.

Geoffrey runs and fetches his steel mace,

3032 Now god hym focour! in brefte ther hym fett, Thys cruel Geant A fers stroke yaff he; By hys wurthinesse fo gan do and bette, Without any demage he cafte don to fe.

3036 All aftoned of that aduerfite, Thys Geaunt roffe vp; "haft thou noght," he faid, "Take me fuch offering, it yild fhall be this braide."

3040 On fote hopte he up, malice and wroth was That don to grounde fo cafte in that Ile By A foule stroke of knyghtly manace. Then he in hand toke hys fauchon of ftile; As Gaffray wold torn, fogernyng no whyle, The fauchon of ftiele, the Geant in hand, Off Gaffray curfer the legges trenchand.

3048 To the giant went with raundon gret that day, The finiftre Arme fnote he vppon trew, Rght As belonged to knightly uertew. hys fauchon he made to fall the hand fro, That neuer After ned had non ther-to;

3052 For Gaffray fuch stroke fette, he failled noght; In the hanche four hurt grenously he was, But to hym Guedon Approched ny, thought So that mortall were ther hym gan purchas, his flael ther toke myghtly A-place, To Gaffray therof gaf on the helme hy, All Aftoned Almofte At ground truly.

3060 Into his faeberge the fwerde put Gaffray, To his courfer ran, his staffe ther takyng,

1 MS. "lepete;" but see l. 3079.
To thys Geant cafte A huge stroke that day,
Stager And ftomble made with hys fore striking;

On off hys [s]legges¹ Guedon² toke in hafte,
To Gaffray wightly And sharply it cafte,

With the said stroke caft of myghtly vertew

Off Gaffray the ftafe or axe gan attain,
Fro hys handes made to fle and remew.
This Giant lepte forth, the ftafe toke certain;
To Gaffray noght had twixfte hys handes twain,

But Gaffray his fwerd gan to draw Anon,
And vppon the Arme it fet of Guedon;³

A nd fo huge A stroke geuyng hym was tho,
That quite elene the arme share off throughly.

Gaffray full maedly ther Auenged fo
Off Guedon² the Giant ftrong and myghty,
Where Arme, ftafe, or Axe, done fill hym ryght ny.

Where-thorught for wo the faide Geant fuatte,

For Anguiffh And forow lefte his Arme & bede.⁴

F ull moche the Geant was Aftoned tho,
When off hys Armes on had loftre of-new;
haufed his fwerd, trowing Gaffray finitte to;

But the stroke uoided And fomwat withdraw,
A litell brenched enmyddes the medew,
Vppon his legge fmothe with fwerde wonderly,
A meruelous stroke gaffe, Ato cary⁵ hys thy.

This Giant fell, crying his goddis aide;
Gaffray A stroke gaffe tho his fculle vppon,
he offerying fo, the helme rent And foulle raide.

and with it
and shears Guedon's arm completely off. Down fall all his weapons.

The giant strikes at Geoffrey with his sword, but he slips aside, and
with a marvellous stroke cuts his foe's thigh right in two.

The giant falls. Geoffrey cleaves
his head to the teeth,

¹ MS. has "legges," a notable blunder.
² MS. "Gucedon."
³ MS. "Suedon."
⁴ Indistinct.
⁵ MS. "craf;" but see l. 3092.
GEOFFREY SHEWS THE GIANT'S CORPSE.

The helme cutte And rent till the teth Adon;  
3092 The fwerde fo cuttyng, the hede carf Anon.  
After that hys horne farish toke he,  
hysly it blowynge times to or thre.

His peple the founde full wel vnderftode,  
2096 To hym lied, taried noght certain;  
Emmyddes the medew founde where he stode,  
Thys cruell Geaunt which pet he had lain.  
When this meruelous Geant ther was fain,  
3100 Off his faccion Aftoned thay were,  
hys length, his brede was fo ouermette there.  

Geoffrey says he has but done his duty. They enter  
the castle, which is well built and fair.

Huge joy is made both by small and great, because the giant was discomfited and stone-dead.

Hug[e] joy and folas therof made and don,  
Bothe tho gret and small gret joy made therfyr,  
3120 That the Geant was by Gaffray don bore,  
So discomfite, ftandede, And all cold;  
hug[e] joy and gladneffe in centre tho hold.
Raymond's letter to Geoffrey.

Off this lande made lorde he by this uiage, Wherby manly had ended the werre tho. Ther-thens to uavuent A man fent in meffage, Which full courtois was, inly wife also; Thys said meffinger Raymounde said unto, That by Gaffray the Giant fers and bold Was decomfite and put to deth, he told.

Raymounde laughed tho, hym preifing fafte there. Melusine without othir tarying Made right good chere vnte the meffinger; When hym chered had with all maner thyng, A ryche gifte hym gaffe; Raymounde tho writyng, Paper And wexe toke to hys secretory, Anon A letter conceived haftily,!

The tenure of which was well deuyfed; By Raymounde feled were that in pat place; So forth fend by Raymounde, fo anuifed, Vnto Gaffray which in Guerrande tho wace, "hou that Fromont his uefture gan purchace At Maillers, And ther receiued gan fay, And that A monke was in that faide Abbay; Where that he wold ufe All his liffes space, And for his frendes pray to god An hy, For that it was an inly denouit place." Alas! thes letters il hour wrought truly, For thai torned to the contrary. He therthorugh lofte the fair Melusine, Whom that he loued with parfite loue fine.1

Now shall we leue at thys time the lyffe Of Raymounde the fwete And courtois only, [Fol. 62 b.]

Geoffrey is made lord of that country. A me- senger tells the newsto Raymond, who laughs; and Melusine gives the me- senger a rich gift. He next takes paper and wax to his secretary, and dictates a letter, which he seals and sends to Geoff- rey in Guerrand, telling him how Fremont had be- come a monk in the abbey of Maillesais, where he would spend his life in prayer for his friends. Alas! this letter was written in an evil hour, for thereby did Raymond lose Melusine!

1 Here follows the catchword—" Now shall we leue at his time." [Fol. 63.] I shall leave the life of Raymond and Melusine,
and speak of Geoffrey, who was now in Guerrand country, where he was royally feasted for killing the giant. While he was there, came a messenger from Norbelande to him, and having found him and presented his letters, he proceeds to tell of a giant who had brought war on all the country. He begs Geoffrey to help them speedily, as the nobles of the land have great trust in his might.

Of Melusine als hys ful noble wyfe, Which at pat hour was A woman worthy.
Of Gaffray with gret toth declare shal I;

3156 After thyss I shall you outre and say;
In Guerrande contre tho was Gaffray, A
to Gaffray presented thes letters there.
"My lord," he said, "for godlys hy mercy, That it myght you ples me vnderitande here.

3160 Gret joy ther had of peple ful many.
With that cam to hym ther A messengere, To gaffray comynge in humble manere, Fro Norbelande After Gaffray demandung

3164 Where pat he was; many hym shewing,
T
To Gaffray prefented thes letters there.
"My lord," he said, "for godlys hy mercy, That it myght you ples me vnderitande here.

3168 Unto Norbeland is comyn truly
A man more gretter then other Any, Which is A Geaunt, wonder meruelous, Ouerthwart cruel and ryght perilous;

3172 He hath brought were [on] all our contre. Wherfor I am come to feke you thys hour; Here requeryng you for all loue may be, ye of Gentillefe wold be ther focour;

3176 Tho of contre, the lordes of honore, In your perfon haue ryght gret affiaunce, Wilnyng you to come haftly thys infaunce.

3180 For you will thai yfild all the hole contre, Ther landes to hold of your eftate hy.
For sothe your letters, if opened be, ye may wel know the trouth And ueryte.

3184 Thay haue cafte ther loote certes you vpon, Off thys strong Geaunt caufe difruccion."
Geffray the letters After breke and rayd,
Fro' wurde unto wurd, And sithen hym saide,
"Meßinger, troth is, no ly on you had;
By the holy croffe fwere I you this braid,
That men cal Geffray with long toth displaid
hens wold noght remene for lande ne hauour,
But for the contre only to focour.

Or off the peple haue I gret pitte,
For the good zele haue to cristine entyre,
Wherin I haue grette affinite:
Als honour And worship to acquire.
Off me the werre the Giaunt doth desiere,
Anon shal I go hym Affail quikly."
To thys forth-progreffe Geffray made redy.

Meanwhile a messenger from his father brings him letters to tell him that his brother has become a monk, at which he is angry and sad.

He was pleased to have good news of his father and mother, but he lost his wits at the disgrace of Fromont being a monk, and he grew as red as vermilion.

Fuming like a swine with rage, he made all afraid who came near him.

Off malice And wreth had in his body
he nomed And swatte, A fwine resembling;
Neuer man non hym beheld ueryly
But of huge drede ther he were tremblyng.

1 MS. "For." Fr. text, "de mot en mot."
Ther tho ill," he sayd, "thy lechorus being,
Thes fals monkes, which full uicious be,

3220 Thay haue now, by the holy trynite,

My brother Fromont haue enchanted fure,
A monke haue hym made, certes, in ther town.
To thaim might yut come fom mifauenture :

3224 hym haue thay thorn and made to bere A crown;
In shall tham put into gret mifchef down.
Of this other erande bide Awhile will I;
Thys monkes will fe, long er that I dy.

I will go at once
and burn up all
these monks
together." He
bids the mes-
sengers from
Northumberland
await his return,
when he will go
with them as he
promised.

[Fol. 61 b.]
They promise to
Guard his house
in his absence,
and to wait till
his return. He
sends them away
without further
parley.

and summoning
his people, rides
with all speed
till he reaches
Maillezais
Abbey on a
Tuesday.

So rode that he ryued at the Abbey.
AND SETS OFF TO MAILLEZAINS IN A RAGE. 115

The monks were in their chapitre-hous; And Geoffray Anon entred ther within:
When thes monks knew thys man honorous,
To ryn him Again Alfaste gan begin,
As wel gret As small towar[d] hym gan wyn,
All the hole countent ther hym saluting,
Full gret ioy thay had As of hys comyng.

Then to the abbot, which that balled was,
hath Gaffray spokyn rude and buffetly,
As A man chaufed \(^1\) with yerfull manace.
"Ha! dan Abbot," toke hym to fay au hy,
"Abbot, forwhy haue ye made folyly
My brother A monke in thys faid Abbay
To leue chialrly, takyng your ordre Ay?"

IN good feith, full is mufed and thought,
For your mortall deth ye tho gan purchase:
ye fchal dy for your wykkydnesse wrought,
Both ye And all your countent in thys place."
Then fore he grint And strayined his teeth apace.
All tho which were the Abbey within
Thai had gret drede, feing hym fo begin.

Thes monkes wepte, And fighed ful fore there
Of the fereful drede which that time thai had.
Then dan Abbot of the hous gan anfwere,
"Sir, by me noght was it forth broght ne lad;
By hym-felfen was it, trow I shall fulfad;
he fo meued with good deuocion
As Entre into this religion.

Here Fromont may se ye, lo! perfonally,
yff it like or please you hym demaunde, lo!"
Fromont thys hym faid, "brother, verily

---

\(^1\) MS. "chamfed." Fr. text, "eschauffez."

---
out the Abbot's account, and adds that he will be nothing but a monk.

His father and mother, he says, had consented, and were glad that he should enter on this life, that they all might benefit by his prayers.

3280 By non is it wrought, but by my-selfe do:
A monke for to be, Am, And shal be to;
Wher within for you to our lord shal pray,
To other dedes attende wil no day,

3284 But only to god, to whom I am yeld.
Hit pleased my fader, to hym acceptiff,
And to Melufine, my good moder milde:
Full gladly thay wold I shold use my life

3288 here As for to pray our lord celestif
For thaim and for you in especiall,
That in paradise he vs do put all.”

Geoffrey, almost mad with rage, replied to him sadly. Then departing, shut the doors, and savagely orders fuel to be collected,

which he has piled about the Abbey, and then sets it all on fire.

The Abbey, the Abbot, and a hundred monks, are consumed.

3292 Geoffrey vnderftode Almofte in wode rage,

Thaken with A meruelous corage tho,
Moche ther recheined to hym delefull langage.
Thro-thens deperte, the dores after drew to,
All tho within clofed and shitte also,

3296 After fend to fecche, of serofite,
Straw And beeres wonder gret plente.

To all ilneffe do luft had and talent,
Thys brufhet made put in-to on hepe,

3300 What cause eche merueled, in ther entent.
Fire hath he taken and put in therto;
That in litell while fe shold not man, lo!
For the smoky fume fmarthering fo was,

3304 The Abbay it toke, fore gan it enbras.

The fire fo kindled thorouglh all certainly,
The monkes all betrapped and forfhend,
That neuer on foule3 scape outwardly.

3308 The Abbot And A hunderd monkes brend
On tewfday, by fortune, fo ther end:

1 “Taken.” Fr. text, “Esprins.”
2 “beeres” (?) Fr. “busche.”
3 MS. “foule.”
All that ther within wafted to huge grame,  
To gret forow And wo, ynto full huge fhame;

3312 And als the mofte parte of thys faid abbay  
By hym stroied, brueld and fcorched tho:  
Ther not lefte ne bode o foule man that\(^1\) day,  
Thoroughly brende it was to gret fhame and wo.  

3316 When better remembred\(^2\) hys diffaute, lo!  
With shill voce cried pot time hautaynly,  
"Alas, caitife!" faide, "doñ hafte folily,

Which thys minfter undo and fo brend."

3320 his brother ofte bement dede fo, noght in graue;  
After the Abbot And all the couent.  
Foltifh he was, For tho thaim might not haue,  
Neuer for golde ne for haunour craue.

3324 he thaim complained And waymenteed fore,  
Off pite fighed, lamenting euermore.

3328 In paynfull wo was, mufing thoughtes kepte,  
Of his brother brende fore hym gan complain;  
So god\(^3\) religious As he was certain.  
Then to hym-felfe faid; "fair god lord an hy,

What may me become or what do fhall I?  

3332 to what ende come, certes, know ne may  
Neuer man born fro Adam to thys hour  
Ne war fo well wurth to be damptned ay!  

3336 Wel shewith I am An ill fals traitour,  
I here more wurfe then Iudus the fynmour.  
Neuer fhall I fee, vifage to vifage,  
Off god our Fader femying in corage.

\(^1\) MS. "thai," \(^2\) MS. "remembred." \(^3\) "good" (?)
He prays for death. In this sorry frame he reaches Guer-
rande, and finds the messenger waiting for him.

He was pleased to see him, and goes at once, taking but ten retainer.

He was feasted by the people before he went on board. With a fair wind he sets out at once on his voyage.

The people bless them as they start, and with a fair wind and good ship they go on their way. I shall now leave Geoffrey and speak of Raymond.

He was living merrily at vousvant with his wife, Melusine.

He thought he wold noght ouer flow to be:

The marryner thaim put in-to the fe,
And at departfon thaim blessed all tho.
The winde was good, the shippe welle failled siche,

3340 MOrtall deth, now com bering me away!”
Such difcomforth had Gaffray in corage.

3344 Full malice And wroght[t] of thys huge damage
Which that tyme had don, And fore gan com-
plain.

The messlingere lefte contred hym Again:

3348 When Geoffry hym saw, in hert was full glade;

Of no creature demaund leue ne had.
he ther-thens wende towards norbelande,

3352 Which to Gaffray cam requiring hym then:
And off his maynee had he but ten.

3356 Men hym made gret feste or shippe made entre;¹
And off the contre the said messlynger,
Which condute this knight the way and manere.
The faill reised vp, the winde foste gan blow,

3360 Anon disancred the shippe in a throw;

3364 In a litill while ferre passed And goo,
A kennynq thaim was but A Jape vnto.
Ryght thus of Gaffray shal rest and still me,
And declare And speke of Raymounde the fre.

3368 RAYmounde at vauvent lad a mery² lif;
Wher hym gan to hold, As long As he myght,

¹ MS. “enthe.”    ² MS. “amery.”
With fayre Melusine hys full noble wyffe.
Thys gentill Raymone was A courtois knyght.

3372 At vauuent were both, as\textsuperscript{1}\ refon was and ryght.
Anon had thay full dolorous noyfaunce
As at diner fate, at ther own plefaunce,

\textit{A ferrom thai saw com A messlingere,}

3376 Which in humble wife thaim were faluting;
But hys colour changed foudainly there,
For thys caufe that he the dede was doubting
Of that message behofull hym doing.

3380 And Raymound to hym tho ther fai"d anon:
"Gentill messlingere, welcom to vs echon."

Off noueles Anon gan hym to enquire;
Where-hens he cam; And fro what place
pat day.

3384 (Alas! outre mofté noueles in strange manere,
Tham vnto declare wo is me alway;
For such tydinges And nouels fhall fay
Which ben full ill, ryght noght, full of yre,

3388 And ryght hiduous, Any man to hyre.

\textit{Where-thorugh Raymounde fhall lefe the company}
Off faire Melusine, fro that for all-wais,
Nener after with hys wife be truly:

3392 Where the no point had off diffame no daies.)
Then the messlinger fpake with-out delais,
"Sir, vnderftande, my wordes and entent
To fay behonith, wherof Am dolent;

3396 \textit{On of youre children take hath mortall,}"
"Which is he?" faid Raymounde: "fir,
Fromont it is."
"hou is he dede? good fir, fay me all.

\textsuperscript{1} MS. \textit{"os."}
Is noght the body bered of hys?

On his foule mercy the lord do of blis!
Entered in churche is of our lady
In Abbay off Maillers full follemply."

Thys messinger said with shill vois hautain,

"That bliffed man neuer had sepulture;
Wilbelouid sir, this you say fertain,
Aforne all will declare the Auenture,
hou Gaffray hym put to shameuous oppression,

Fired and byrnde, stroyng the Abbay
Off Maillers, for Fromont hys fake Alway,

The Abbot And monkes conventuall,
That ther o foule man escapid noght,
But scorched and brend were to Askes small;
And hou the doures made fafte As cowde be thought;
For drede non durfte fle, to-geders brende and brought,
For the gret dispite which in hert he had

Off Fromont, that in monkes wede was clad."

When Raymound it knew, bliffed with ryght hand,
In forow And wo hys hert bathed he.
yut Another tyme he gan to demand,

Commaunding hym straitly As myght be,
That he hym fay the trouth and verite.
"Se here," he said, "gret cruelte fhewyng,
Is it this? warde the that thou ly no thing!"

HE hym anfwerd, "sir, it is ryght this;
I dare wel fay this, fo god me do aid;
With my eyes to saw it, foo haue I blis!"
When Raymounde it hurd, colour changed put braid,
RAYMOND VISITS THE RUINS OF MAILLEZAIS.

3428 For ende had he non in his doulour laid.
To hors lepe he tho with-out taryng,
In hert was ryght wo And full fore mornynge.

N penif mutes hym faste befeyng,
3432 He reft noght to ryde, fo to Maillers cam.
Such A pace rode, yut ther the fray finding,
Raymounde perceiued the gret los[e] And
flame.

Ech man complayned on Gaffray by name.
3436 The Abbay faw brend And woxin defert,
Which causid gret wo hym to haue at hert.

HE beheld Aboute every part fure,
Seyng the Abbot And monkes brend were ;
3440 Als feing the meruelous auenture,
"By god died in crosse," Raymound gan fwere,
That "Gaffray fhold dye in cruell manere,
yff atwixft his handis he hym haue myght,
3444 He wold make hym ende, And fhamenous deth
dight !"

There lepte vp Again hys courfere vppon,
So inly malice, full of wrath and yre,
In fluch cAs broght, wifte not wat fay ne don ;
3448 To fogern At Maillers more wold not defire.
Fro-thens departed, tornyng hole entire
hamwarde in iournay ryght full befily.
Al day ther he rode fafte And spedfully,

3452 So the myghty strenght attained he was
Of vauent caffell, entred in and wend ;
hys courfere As the wynde forth went apace.
When within was, After gan dincend ;
3456 lenger wold he noght bide ne attend.
In-to the chambre entred he Anon,
The dores to hym drew And cloyfyd echon.

1 See l. 3608. Fr. text, "perte."
Then he begins to lament and wail, saying, "Ah! Fortune! thy dealings are too manifest, thou art not secret enough.

When I put Earl Amery to death by moonlight, thou wert the cause. Alas! he was a peerless man!

And next, thou madest me marry this infamous serpent; and one of my ten children by her, a holy monk, is dead.

and his brother slew him. Her children will do no good. I could not have believed it, had I not seen her in the bath.

When thou me madest that murther to do Off the noble Erle of peiters being,

Amery the good notable knyght tho;
I hym put to deth by the mone fhynynge.
By the, lady Fortone, thou were it causyng!
Alas! he was man in tyme full worthy!

Hys pere noght founde Athiffid Rome truly!

Aft er me made by thy will and uolente
To take this woman of the Fayry,
This here diffamed serpent vnto fe;

I am not wronged show it bewayle fully.
Then fair children haue I had hir by;
But on is dede, whereof Am I penfiffe,
Which was A monke leuyng holy life.

There now his brother hat[h] put hym deth to.
I trow thes children which that the bare
In this worle ne fhall no maner good do.
The begynnynge noght, of trouth to declare,

And, by the teres off uandofme hys fair,
hit I to beleue is but fantesy,
Ne hade I hir fain in the bath only;

I not ferre fro thens, the trouth vn-to tell,

By the litell hole of the dore gan fe
Fro the hed adon vnto the nauell

1 MS. "baste."
2 MS. "Thes."
3 "wrong" (?)
4 "Ten." Fr. text, "dix."
A full fair and gent woman there was she;
But under was a serpent of verite,
3492 A taill burled had of siluer and Afture,
Ther bete that all the water shaffhed fure,

Full grett hidnou[s]nesse to my hert made.
Neuer was ther man if hir gan to fe
3496 In the eftat that I ther saw hir clad,
But that wold Anon Away fro hir fte ;
For it was thing drefful As myght be.
God me ward and kepe fro werk diaboliclike,
3500 And ftefaffe me hold in feith catholike !

Air Melusine tho the dor gan unfhit,
Well cowde it vnloke, in gan the repaire,
Alfo to the dor the key had of it.
3504 Knyghtes, ladeis, damicelles full faire,
Squiers, yongmen, maydens debonair,
With Melusine ther entre made pat ftoonde
Into the chambre where Raymond was founde.

In the faide chambre entred thai Anon.
Raymounde faw hys wife, marred was he tho.
Ther haung no point of colour hym vpon,
There be-gan of new hys dolorous woo.
3512 Off Raymounde And of hys fair loue alfo
Ther ftrange depa[r]fon approched full ny,
Ryght As ye shal declared shortly.

Then Melusine faid to Raymond hir houfband,
3516 " hauith not your hert so marred for wo,
For pat ye may noght amend at no ftonde.
Men fhold fuch forow lightly letc slip and go.
yff Agayn our lord Gaffray haue myfdo,
3520 And pat he hath diftroid that faire place
Off Maillers by hys misdoing, percas

1 MS. "to." Fr. text, "ncust point de couleur."
RAYMOND CALLS MELUSINE—“SERPENT!”

Yet may he his pees Full wel do to make
Towards our lord by grete repentance,

3524 And for his trefpas pennaunce may he take,
Therfor suffer pain in bodyly substaunce.
For goddis marce is 1 redy ech instance,
So in hym he haue good contrecion,

3528 And after veray pure confeccion.

But Raymond was spiteful and angry, and his reason awhile departed.
Soon shall he say a word which he shall
never retrieve.

3536 Thys lady wifely And fagely gan to speke,
But Raymounde malice And full angry was;
At hys hert gret noyfaunce gan he fteke.
Refon deperted tho fro hym apas.

3540 Such A word fhal fay, repent can not Purchas;
Neuer fhall ne may, vnto pat he dy,
Conquere that he fshall And mofte leffe ther-by.

3544 Als with the behold of his eyes twain,
And when that he had A litell thought,
his foley thought spitffullly spake plain,
And afure all faid he with nois hautain,
3548 “ha! serpent! thy line in lif no good fshall
do!
Se here now A noble begynnyng, lo!

What Gaffray with long toth thy fon hath
doñ!
A hundred monkes scorched 2 and brend plain,
3552 And after fro-thens made he departfon.

1 MS. “his.”   2 Sic in MS.
Where-of on was Fromont thy fon certain, The which to cherifh euer was I fain! Alas! thes monkes flain hath thy fon Gaffray.

But thy did noght Al cold, I may fery, 1

Every of thaim fo gret An hed2 had. I haue ther be, I saw it verily, Thaim al hath he brend, Gaffray thi fone made!"

Alas! the sorow don fo difordinatly Off that wurde which he pronounced openly! For ther-in gan do gret ill and fin plain. Melufine Anon lofte, neuer faw Again.

When Melufine hurd thys faid wurde this frounde, After hir fuftain forfoth she ne myght. Zownyngly she fil wofully to grounde; The forow fo gret, the hert fro hym-felf ryght. Well ny fo half hour she lay, this fweet wight, Prostrat to the erth, ftoned, fo zownyn. For that heuy word he was ther outring.

The barons ther cam, vp gan hir redrefe

Goodly, without hurt or blecere Any. Anon A knight Approched hir mineffe, hir vifage moifted with frefh water goodly, Trowing A fiftene times or twenty.

By that refor ted hir good hert Again, Vnto Raymond faid foberly certain,

Orfoth to hym fpake full peteoufely, "Alas, alas, alas, Raymondde, this day! Ill faw I the euery times any! Ill faw I the beute of the, I fay; Ill faw I thi ful gracious Aray, Ill faw I the vppo[n] the Fontain,

Ill faw I thy vertuous demenyng playn, 3

1 "fay" (?) 2 "het" (?) Fr. text, "chault." 3 MS. "playng."

whom Fromont thy son was one. But they died not all cold,

but every one was hot enough. Geoffrey, thy mad son, burnt them! "Alas! the sorrow caused by that fatal word, which lost him Melu sine!

When Melu sine heard that word, she swooned away, and lay in that swoon a whole half-hour, prostrate and astonied.

[fol. 70 b.]
The barons raised her up, and a knight moistened her face with cold water. She revives, and ex claims,

"Alas, Raymond! Ill for me that ever I saw thee! Wo is me that ever I saw thy beauty, thy array, thy virtuous conduct.
Alas that ever I saw thy precious body, that ever I loved thee! Evil was the hour and season wherein I first saw thy treason and falseness! Thine inmeasureable language has condemned me to eternal pain.

That with the was in love Amourously! Ille saw I thy fair contenance truly, Ille saw I thy gracious body gent, Ille saw I the hour And mene season present

That the saw first, thi treton, thi falunesse! Thy fals vnrew spech, thy huge cruelte, Thy fals tonges unmeasurerable, Me put to paynes perdurabilite, That frothens neuer shall I depart me, But full moche pain fhal I suffre Alway, For pain fshall I have vnto the laste day,

That it like or pleasfe our lord foueran To come iuge And deme tho both quikke and dede! Neuer fhal ye fe my clere uifage plain, Moft fals traytour And fals forsworn in-ded, Replet with uices, full of murmured, Fals amorous, fals lesimgmonger ryght, Fals betrayr, And in-ded A fals knyght!

Full ill hafte thou, lo! my concenaunt hold, That thow me promyfed in the begynnyng; Thou hafte made us hane huge losce many-fold. yut myght I all this full wel be suffryng, Off that in the bath me so were seyng, Acaufe ye ne it faiid no creature.

The fende knew it noght, the mifauenture.

As son As made was reuelacio̓̃ there, knawen was A-none For it shalt miffall; Yf that my\(^1\) body to the Abode here,

\(^1\) MS. "by." Fr. text, "mon corps."
Thow sholdst perceiue ryght brefly with-all
All thy full fals periyur disceiue[en]! ¹
Yf truly ye had the covenaut hold,
Unto Mortall deth me to hane ye fhould,

I should have been a woman at all hours, and, at death, the King of glory would have borne away my soul.

Ryght As A woman borni here naturall,
A feminine thyng, woman at al houres,
To end of my days here terrestriall.
By me² myghtesthe haue had huge focoures.

After the kyng, full off honoures,
Wold haue born Away the foule of me,
When that Fro body departed were the,

And with gret honour entered fholde be.
Alas! my fortune now putt Away fure!
In payn, in wo, in tormentes cruelte
Till day of iugement to fe.

By thy-felsen disceiued art in all,
Thou art fro hineffe into lownesse fall.
Knowith thyss, to you fhall come grousous pine,
Neeuer goodnesse fhall refceiue certain;

All-way thy dedes fhall go to decline,
Neeuer fhall be wrought ne made again,
And thi land fhall be, After thi disceiues plain,
Parted in partes I belene fhall be,

Neuer to-geders hold in feueralte,

By A foule man neuer maintayned be;
Many of your men fhall fall, sir Raymounde,
Neuer it acquire As in certainte.

Som of thaim fhall lefe both ther land and ground.
By fin fors of werre with many A wound,
Fro ther dwellyng full fafte fhall thay fle,
Neuer fhall reforte A-gane to contre.

¹ See note. ² MS. "my"
Remember thy sous, for I shall be with thee no more!" Then she draws three barons aside, speaking to all sensibly in an under-tone.

[3648] Remembre thy fones, the befeche And pray, For I fhall neuer hold the company, To whome hane hert petenous and tender ay, I may no langer Abyde ne tary!"

3652 Thre 1 of the Barons Apart drew haftily Off mofte grettesfe, sayng in wyfe pefible As woman full fage And ryght fenfible;

"Raymounde, underfande, horrible thy fone gete

3656 Do hym for to dy, neuer be he found. Off it bonith the to entremete, Thre eyes fhal bere he vppon the grounde, yff he life, werre neuer fhall faill noftounde

3660 In all the contre off peiters to deuin, Shall neuer encreffe neithir brede ne win, All the contre he fhall waftie, vnderfand, So that no-thyng encreffe fhal ne may.

3664 And all thes places that I gan do make, Diftroy And undo, certes, is no nay; And hys bretherin to porete put alway, All tham, ofrought, and all of the lyne,

3668 Wherefor I you pray, lete hym dy with pine.

The dole that thou haste for Gaffray thy fone, That the monkes brende fo disordinaitly, knowith thyss, that it was for punicion

3672 Taken vppon tho of religion hy, For ther migouernaunce wroghten fo dayly, Off our lordeys part, for put thai do wold Many of thingys that they do ne fhold,

3676 Nought of ryght ye of refon doo.

In that place our lورد example hath fhewed. Off goddis partie is thai ben feorched fo,

1 MS. "Ther;" but French text, "Trois."
All dede, exiled, And foule diftroyde.

Many with lechery haue hym fore noyed ;
Fals monkes, synners, holdyng at no day
Ther ordre ne lif of the said Abbay.

If your son be dede with thaim outerly,
If he haue ye no routhe, ne of thaim neuer mo.
If ye know what men fain mofte, lo ! comynly,
For A synner perifh fhall An hundred, lo !
An hundered hath brend, nombred vs unto,
Without the Abbot which nombred is noght,
Which maifter is of thaim, As of refon ought,

If ther were cause, parcas he myght be.
If Gaffray tham haue fo destroed all,
It may be by hym restored, parde,
A more fairer miniftre fourge 1 and make fhall
Then that which he hath causd fo to fall.
This said Abbay full wel may he restore
With many mo monkes then were before.

Off trought fo he will in ryght good manere,
Which then fhall be good peple verily,
Prayng for the line with myght and powere ;
Which church he fhall welle redyfy ;
The place fhall be to sight more plefantly,
And more better then ever was before ;
Thys Gaffray fhall doo gret goodneffe euermore,

Ofte specially when he comyth to Age.
But A thing I fhall you declare truly,
Ar I me departe fro your compernage,
To ende that all therof haue memory
Which after An hundred yere surefy
That yut ben umbore fhall hir fpoke of me ;
Off trouth in the air thar men fhall me fee

[Fol. 72 b.]
If your son be dead with them,
pity him not.
A hundred men perish for one sinner's sake.
So here 100 died, besides the abbot.

If Geoffrey have destroyed them,
he may easily rebuild a fairer
minster, and place in it more
monks than before.

There shall they pray for our
lineage, and the
place shall be
fairer and better
than before.

But, ere I go, I
tell you one thing
more. In order
that men may
remember me,
they shall see me
in the air.

"fourgee."

1 MS.
MELUSINE’S PARTING WORDS TO RAYMOND,

About the caftell off lufignen fo,

Three dais beforne in the fame yere ryght

That the caftell s’hall change hir maiifter, lo!

yff in the air men not se me myght,

And that thay mow not perceiue me to fight,

I s’hall me Appere vppon the erth playn,

Or at the lefte besides this Fontain.

Know thys, Raymonnde, for so s’hall it be,

Aff longe As thys said caftell s’hall endure,

For with my name baptised was she,

And such As it is devisef I fure,

My goddaughter I may calle thir in vre.

Fule wel may it fay Afern peple All,

And, for Melufine men me do to call,

Luignen named, to name doth calange.

yut will I now fay without tarying,

When that of the lord s’hall come pe efchange,

Thre dais be-forne me s’hall be feyng;

Certainly I s’hall ther be appering.

But lofte is now al my folas and efe,

But if behouith me it leue and lefe;

Three days before the castle changes its lord, I shall certainly appear.

Raymond, when first we loved, we had all joy and solace; but now is our solace turned into vexation.

Now is our good fortune turned to mischance, and our surety is in doubt.

1 MS. “called.”
Our vertuous goodnes into curced chance;
In doubte is all our furete to deuife,
And our noble And blifed franchife.

Is full strangely changed into fernice,
By peruers fortune labored and founde,
Which on reifith, Anothir don brife,
But noght gain our lorde but caufyng me pis
ys only by your dedes, fir Raymounde,
Alas by your labbyng tonges iongling,
ye shal leffe your lone for your large fpeking.

Now more lenger here may I not to dwell,
Fair lone, me behouith hens As for to go.
your mifledis god perdon everydell,
Whereof Agayne me ye haue fo myfdo,
For by you shal suffer torment And woo,
vnto the dredfull day of Iugement;—
And by the I was fro1 forow ex[e]mpte,
And into yoy entred !—Alas ! wo I Am,
For now Am I cafte into dolorous woo,
Fro-whens2 that I isfewed and came !”
Such ful fory dole Melusine lad tho,
That body off humayn creature, lo !
Which hir complaint hird with huge fighes
fore,
Ne fhold withold fro weping euermore.

Raymounde heuily wrang his handes twain,
Such grenaunce toke tho, Almohte gan he dy,
So was he take with heuy wurdes plain,
That o foule wurde coude not bryng forth truly.
She hym Approched enbrasing fwtely,

Our freedom is turned to service by perverse for-
tune, and all ow-
ing to the jangling of your blabbing
tongue.

Now must I go.
God pardon you for being the cause of my suffering
torment.”

Such grief had Melusine that none that heard
her could with-
hold from weep-
ing.

Raymond was so grieved at her
words that he
could say no word
himself. The two
kiss each other
sadly.

1 MS. “for.”
2 MS. “For whens.”
MELUSINE GIVES HER LAST INSTRUCTIONS,

They both swoon away, and the barons trow they are both dead and cold.

Recovering from the swoon, they sighed and wrang their hands. All the whole rout who see them, weep.

Raymond entreats Melusine to pardon him, but she says that this cannot be.

[Fol. 74 b.]
She bids him especially think of his son Raynold, for that he should be Earl of Forest.

The Earl of Forest would soon die.

3772 To-geders kyffing thses to Amerous
In o torment ther were both dolorous.

Fvl greuous Anguifh in ther hertes loke,
That for heuniness both gan fall to grounde,

3776 zowning ther full long A maner dethis stroke,
Without takyng breth or wynde any stounde.
The Barons trowing Meluline and Raymond
That thses louers to were both deede and cold;

3780 For long spacie And tyme fuch wife gan thai hold,

And when fro zowning that thai came Agane,
And that thai myght breth, to figh be-gan fore,
To waile, to wepe, to forely complain,

3784 Ther handes wrange And strained euermore,
Non knew the forow by thaim lade and bore.
Whereof all thay wepte standing ther Aboute
With teres many, All the ful hole route.

3788 And melusine, to whome was full greuous,
Ryght piteuoufly the releued tho.
Raymound hir praid, as man generous,
Ther kneyling, that the hym pardon wolde, lo!

3792 Off hir courtefy, that he hade myfdo;
Which by gret mischefe don gain hir hath he.
Thys lady hym faide that it myght not bee,

Hit please ne wold the king celeftiall.

3796 "But, fair lone! I you here befeche and pray,
Thenke on your lone here terreftrial,
your fone Fromount in obliuy put ay,
And in Raynold loke ye thenke Alway,

3800 For of the foreste Erle fhall he be, lo!
In all goodneffe thenke, And wel fhall ye doo.

The Erle of forefte here long fhall not hyde
In this worlde here After my departfon,
AND LEAPS UP TO THE WINDOW.

3804 Alfo will thenke for Thierry to prouyde,
For yut fhall he 1 doo thynges manyon.
At norifh pappes yut is his pershon;
Fro² partenay to Rochell the lande fhall iuftice,
3808 An inly good knight fhall he be and wyfe.

A Nd all which fro hym linially iffew,
Shall be knightes good, hardy, and wurthy,
Full of gud corage and of all uertew,
3812 And his linage fhall longe endure truly.
Fair loue, know thyss well, that noble Thierry
Wurthy and hardy Alfo fhall he be.
I fhall thenke on you, fwete loue, pray for me

3816 A ll dais while lif in worle here haue ye.
Off me fhall ye haue both ayde and comfort
In all your nodes of neceffite.
Off aduerfite en-gree³ take the porte.
3820 Neuer in femine forme to.you fhall resorte,
Neuer fhall ye fe Melusine truly,
That fo was wont to hold you company !" ⁴

Innepee fhe lepte the feneftre vppon,
3824 Above beheld fhe uerdures flourifhing ;
Without taking leue Away wold not gon,
For the Barons, of whom after fhall be fpeking,
Off ladys, damyeelles, knightes beyng,
3828 Squiers, And maydens, off all leue toke fhe,
For whome every man wepte of pette.

A fterwarde fhe faid, "adieu fir Raymounde,
Whom fI fo loued with hert Fyn And plain,
3832 Neuer fhall youe fe at no day ne ftounde.
Adieu, my hert ! Adieu, my lone certain !

1 MS. "ye." Fr. "Il fera."
2 MS. " For."
3 MS. "engree."
4 At the foot of this page are the catchwords, "innepee fhe lepte the."
Adieu, creature, my ioy fouerain!
Adieu, myn entire lorne moiste gracious!

Adieu, my gentile Iewell precious!
Adieu, my sugar-sweet sovereign lord!
To God I commend you, to keep your sweet life.

Adieu, my gentle Iewell precious!
Adieu, the noblest yongling debonair!

Thus having said, she leapt out of the window, and so passed away.

She was at once changed wholly.

Adieu, the befte! Adieu, fweetefte All Aboue!
Adieu, my gracyous spouce of recorde!
Adieu, I fay, myn owne vertuous lorne!
Adieu, fucete houfbonde by lonis concord!

Adieu, lusignen, fourged fair in all;
Adieu, al that which may A lady plefe!
Adieu, the gladneffe, mirthes ioy and efe!

Adieu, the fucete found of ech Instrument!
Adieu, I fay, disportes reverent!

Adieu, wurthiefte! Adieu, with all honour!
Adieu, my fucete lone preunted in hert fal!

Our lorde the aide And be thi concellour!"
With-out more spech A lepe ther fhe made,
(Seynge the Barons all that ther were had),
Thorught A feniftre fo pasied and wend

When of hyr wurdes thys had made an ende.

Though the feniftre in fuch wife gan fle
Melusine without tariing Any.
In-to A serpent changed tho was she,
3868 Of huge grettnesse and length was verily,
Whereof all were Aftoned strongly;
With siluer and Azure ther burled was,
Thys fairy woman such tail gan purchas,

Which presently was become A serpent;
Whereof Raymond bement his hugely.
Thre tymes the caftell enuironce went;
At every turn A fflounde yaf she hyly,

Wonder meruelous caft the vp A cry
Full strange vnto hire, And ryght piteuous,
Hyr cry full heuy, wonder dolorous.

She thens forth went, vnto the air gan she.
Ther hir loft Raymond, "Alas!" lowde crying,
Ful moche complained And ther wailed he.
Hys heres faste drew, fore hir bement, parde,

Curling the houre that ever he was born,
Raymond, out fro wit for wo almooste lorni,

In hy shill uois the Barons said before,
"Adieu, my lady, with heres yowlownesse!"

Adieu, all debonerte for euermore!
Adieu, l fay you, my fair fuete maistresse!
Adieu, my joy, my grace, And my richeffe!
Adieu, my goodes and all my fuete!

Adieu commaunde, all the difporte of me.
Adieu, my iewell! Adieu, my folas!
Adieu, you fay, my lady precioufe!
Adieu, the fair whilom the prife gan purchas!

Adieu, my wife! Adieu, my trew spoufe!
Adieu, my lady verray gracious!
Adieu, I you fay, my full doucet floure!
Adieu, my lady of full gret valoure!

\[1\] MS. "heree." \[2\] MS. "Hn." \[3\] MS. "yow lownesse."
Adieu! fair rose, fair violet!

3900 Adieu, fuee throte of foundes clereneffe!
Adieu, fair Rose! Adieu, violet¹ also!
Adieu, the tree of loners feithfulnesse!
Adieu, I say my gentle lady vnto.

3904 Adieu, my glory! Adieu, my joy, lo!
Adieu, the fair that so hath loued me!
My goode days gon, fhall I neuer you fe.”

Right this Raymounde bewaled and bement
his noble wife, for whom felt dolour,
Which thorugh the Air hir flight tho hent,
Wherefor he hath A fory hert pat houre.
“Alas!” Raymound said, “wat do fhall or labour?

3912 For certes I haue forow ynow at hert,
Neuer man had at the full fo smert.

I myself made the ditch wherein I now fall; now am
I sadder than any ‘ghost’ alive.”

3916 Hit to declare good refon if I can,
For the diche haue made wheron now I fall.
Now Am I Acursed, to wo am made thrall,
Now I am dolorous And full peniffe

3920 More then Any gofte felt in his life.”

But ther had he A noble company,
Which full gentilly gan hym to comforth,
And many hym faid And fhewed hertly,

3924 That thay hym wold gladly recomforth,
That softly fhold bere that dolorous port,
Many examples to hym exort faid,
Caufying fumwhat leffe hys forow pat braid.

A baron advises him to slay Hor-

3928 A fter hym faid A fenflible Baron,“Of your fon horrible behouith, lo!

¹ MS. “violent.”
To ordain As ordained to be doñ
Melusine, when conceal you gaffe vnto.

3932 Anon þat men fhold make hym to deth go,
Or perisf he wold the contre and grounde."
"My lorde present," ther tham said Raymounde,

"Y\ou befeche And pray tary noght ne bide
As therof do ye hir commaundment,
So he be dede, I charge not how no tyde."
"To plefire, And will do all your entent ;"
Thay wold no lenger ther tary, but forth went.

3940 Raymound, which strongly wroth angry was
For thys forowfull And mischeuous cas,

Which that ceason conquered was and gett,
As A fory man thens gan he remew,

3944 Into A chambre ther made he retret,
hit unflit entring, the dore after drew,
Ther lamentacion be-gan he of-new
In this said chambre ther, all foule, aloñ ;

3948 No more of Raymound, but passe forth and goñ,

Off the Barons hy say fhall of contre.
Full fensible were, inly wyfe and fage,
Orrible toke by on Assent and gre,

3952 In A caue hym fhitte with-out othir damage,
Off moifty hay made bring to thys uiage,
The fire put with-in, so with fumy fmoke
Was the caue Anon full As myght be ftoke.

3956 Then lofte horrible both breth and power,
Stifled he was Anon with fmokey fume fure.
After thay hym put into A faire bere,
Nobly beried, hauing fepulture.

3960 The obsequie doñ And complefhed pure

\(^1\text{MS. "obsequire."} \)
They then commend him to God, depart, and return to Raymond.

Raymond again laments, saying, "It was all through my cousin that I became a forsworn man.

I was unfortunate at first, when I slew my sovereign lord; and, secondly, when I was false to my lady.

False fortune's cruel envy has brought me to this, whereby I have lost all my riches,

By whom all goodnes me cam suffsantly, By whom, vnder god, lif had and comforth. But the Fals fortune, by cruel enuy, Me hath brought to thys full sharpe & hard port,

Whereby 1 lofte hau I all my hole disport, Where like-wife lofte my mirth and gladnesse, Wherby Alfo loft my hole rycheffe ;

1 MS. "Bherby."

After the wurdes And noble doctrine, As lored and thought had good Melusine.

Entered in church, non for hym can mourri, After vnto god thay hym commaundyng. Fro-thens departed without other fogourn; Again to Raymounde were thay returnyng, Which dolorous wo At hert was feling,

With eyes fore wepte he in mornynge plite, A man can ne may his fory dole write.

Any tymes ofte, "my fwete loue," sayng, "The hane difceiued And betrayed, lo !

By the exort of vntrew man makyng, Al this me hath made my colin to doo. I Am by hym fals And als forfworne to, Ful of vice am and of Injury ;

For ill chaunce me fell unfortunatly

At my firfte gynnyng And commencement, When in the wode my fouerain lord fly. A gretter mishief neuer men gan hent,

And fithen when me fewed periury Off that I had fworri to my fayr lady, That fo loued, by whom good and honour had, By whom I was fufteyned and lord made ;

Wherby l oloffce haue I all my hole difport, Wherby Alfo loft my hole rycheffe ;
W
herby lofte haue I joy of eternite;

That is, Melusine the faire fucte wyght,
Whom I loued wel, As myself, parde,
She allwais loued me with hert parfight,
And the dede thereof shewid sh to ryght.

In time togeders we haue be ensemble,
Where-of of pete my hert doth trimble;

When I bethenke the trouth and verite,
Therof shold I well haue gret pite,
And fo shall I haue all the lif of me,
Of whom holdeth he to non end shall go.
I luf better to dy for euermo
Then for to sufuer fo grieved A pain
vntill fo be that ende shall attain.

Full cruell pain I haue, but yut shall not end,
Ne yut shall not ende Al myn ille truly
Till I diffynid be, and fro 1 the worle wend.

Time is for I may no lenger fructefy
As in thys worle, neither edefy
Thyng but that it goth vnto decline,
Rather or later to an endly fine.

For Melusine, whom god do warde and kepe,
Me ther said full well at hir departfon,
Which cauith my forow in hert part and lepe."
Parcelly, As the heres of eyes don,

With teres makyng fprances manyon,
Ryght fo is Raymound tormented full fore,
Sore wepyng, teres making euermore;

For Melusine, the woman off Fary,
Which thar-after cam full many A nyght

1 MS. "for."
Into the chambre right full secrely
Wher norifhed was Terry suetly to ryght,
That she Full ofte hym raid and dight,

4024 Chaufed, milked, And rechaufed Again.
Ther many tymes by the norifh fain,

But thay durfte noght in no wise vp-rife,
Neither o foule wurde to outre or fay,
4028 But vnto ther lord told the maner wife,
Wherof Raymond had full huge ioy alway.
In hys hert faid with fofte vois that day,
“That yut Melufine hope and truft to haue ;”

4032 Full ill in hys brefte fuch thoughtes gan craue.

Anifhede is fhe fro hys fyght for ay,
Remedy non, gold, siluer, ne honour.

Thierry cherifhed Amendid Alway,
4036 (Men merneled gretly off it that hour),
In a moneth more then other in four.
Hys swet moder on hym fuch wyfe thought,
Norifhed with hir milke And forth full wel brought.

4040 In his fader chambyr she was ;
To norifh no pappe like moders neuer-mo,
As beforfn is faid, ho many it purchas.
here ceffe I and leue now, ferther will not goo
4044 Off wofull Raymounde And hys fones two,
here thys time not fay vnto your prefence,
But vnto declare will do my diligens

4048 Off Gaffray with long toth you outre And fay.
Where I ly or no, god knowith An-hy ;
I lerned it noght certes at no day ;
A lier to be founde shame were outerly.

1 MS. “secrely.”
Gaffray went noght over tarynly,
Thorough the fe went, over pase rowing,
By fors of people fo forth ther failling.

HE tho arriued And taried noght
In norbelande, fesing both land and ground,
Where this Geant were procured and wrought.
And when Gaffray discoended was put fround,
The Baroń's bode noght, gain hym went hole &
found,
Gretteft and wurthiefte of the said contre,
Comyng to hym, with-out excused to be.

The gret, the meene, the litell, foth to tell,
Approched And cam to hym, gret and
small.
A gret Baron then, witty, were, and fell,
Ther hym reherfing the Geant dedes All,
Ther liberte lofte, ther contre made thrall
With that fers Geant huge and comerous,
Horrible, myghty, ftrong, And orgulous.

In a iournay, to certeify you all,
An hundered knightes of this faid contre
Diftroed and flain, put to deth mortall.
So orgulous fette, full of cruelte,
Gret vengeance gan do to the comynte ;
As curfedly fly A thoufand As on,
The ft[r]engeft mortal eschew wold hys perfon.

Affray Anſwered, "then is he a Fend,"
A dreadful deuill full of cruelte.
But noght-for-that fro hym me will diffende,
By me fonly diftroed shall he be.
hys byding place fhweth unto me,

1 MS. "affend."
for non othir caufe comyn Am this houre,  
But only to fynde this faid foudiour,

Which fo goth Aboute, you fore diftruffand.  
This knoith uerily, ill shall he betide

Or wekes feuyn ben paffed to comaunde.  
Do me vnto take here fom maner gide,  
To this place and ftede me conuey to ride,  
So I may hym fe for to difcomfight.”

As he deſired, like gan to hym dight,

A gide hym taken, knowing the contre,  
With all the places where-to gan repair,

Where this Geant was wont dwellyng to be,  
hys habitacion And mancion fair.

Such A gide hym toke which was debonare,  
After hym commaunde to our lorde grace.  
Gaffray went thens, departing fro pat place.

HE And hys gide Apace forth riding,

Till that on full hy thai gan well Auife,  
Both of tham fatte ther courfers fporing.  
Then ny approched, Aboute gan denife.

Vnder A tre fate this Geant in ftrange wife;  
On a marbre ftone at that ceafon fatte;  
The Gide for gret drede trembled and fwatte.

HE fore Abaffhed, changing his colour.

Gaffray it faw, and gan to laugh fad ;  
After in laughter faide to hys Gidour,  
As for ryght noght drede and fere he¹ hade,  
For thought fhould not mistrifte god to be mislad.

“Good be in pees,” faid to Gaffray the gide,  
“Behofull is me to uoide and go wide.

¹ MS. “ the.”
TO SHOW HIM WHERE THE GIANT LIVES.

For all riches and gold worly being,
More nerre wold approche noght this faid
mountain,

4112 Ne lenger with you be here fogernyng,
Sin to you haue I shewed here certain
Grimold the Geant moft meruelous plain.
Sir Gaffray," he faid, "here this is no iape,
4116 To god you commaunde, me will hen faft
scape."

Gaffray laughed fafte, after to hym faid,
For all lones defired and befought,
A litell while bide hertly hym praid,
4120 That he wold behold what wife that thai
fought.
"For in litell fpace knowlich fhould be wrought
As ho of us to the better fhould haue,
And at this iournay ho hym beft can faue."

4124 This gide anfwered, "no charge of your bataill,
you gided haue to point, lenger will noght bide;
yff ye win, no part wil ne to myn auaill.
Fro1 you will depart, Again wil I ride."

4128 Gaffray therof laughed fuety that tide,
Then to the gide faid, "now vnderftande me,
In thys place abide vnto that ye fee

Ho bering hym beft and ho better haue;
4132 That fain And don, torn my men vnto.
Without Any doubtes yut may ye go faue,
Our Army dedes declare, all we doo,
And al my gouernaunce telling thaim alfo."

4136 Then hym faid the gide, "do fhall your entent,
My lord, I am at your commaundement.

1 MS. "For."
but declares he is in great dread, and that if Geoffrey knew the giant as well as he did, he would think twice about it.

But Geoffrey promises that the giant shall die. Now our Lord aid him.

Grimold had, singly, slain a thousand or more men. Never was there a worse man seen.

Then Gaffray hafted, A horfebacke ryding,

4152 Which swerd gan bere or garde with Any. For A thoufande or mo of contro Grimold the Geant flain had he fowly. Where-for peple had wonderly to fe huge heunifffe And gret iniquite. Neuer wurfe man fain, truly to rehers, For meruelous was in dedes diuers.

4160 The montain gan take, leuing the ualay, Which that vppon was A fantain walling, leuing the medew And the playnes ay. Als the gide lefte ther in that place alway ;

4164 God wold not put ill Grimold fhold hym doo, Which fo was to doubte in every ftour tho.

1 "werly" is repeated after "and." 2 MS. "Fo."
GRIMOLD SEIZES HIS GIANT'S STAFF.

That O foule man greithed hym to attain,
As to that place come hym For to assail,
Sayng hym wold hate without any faill.
But when in musing A litell had be,
he said, "this worthy man cometh to me
Here, As I beleue, for to trete A pees."
The path went he up wonder buftelty.
"Off fine fors," thought he, "mofte fpeke, not
tonge lefe,
Such on entreth vp, don [shall] haftily."
A huge leuer toke in handes plainly,
To fight femyng noght no body humain.
hym with for to aide, this leuer froke plain

In fuch maner wife As man A ftaf wold,
Or A lytell body of fixe or fef yere age,
And better then, I fay, fef f tymes fold
As a proper ftaf to walk in viage.
For the which after his ftrenght & corage,
Ryght noght is to fyght with-fay again,
But that the ftafe was more then Any fain,
Which lightly ne wold to bow ne aply.
yut it behoneth that A ftaf ply finhold
To the pley of fuch at fom tyme truly,
When in his handes this ftafe gan to hold.
Seing that Gaffray towarde hym come wold,
In shill hautain uois toke hym lowde to cry,
"how comest thou now me As to diffy?
"What art thou, fay me, what goft thou to
feke?
Off deth no warrant neuer thalt thou hane."
Gaffray anon An anfwere oute gan breke,
Look that thou save thyself; I shall smite off thy head."

Grimold, hearing this, began to laugh, and ironically asks Geoffrey to spare his life. But Geoffrey sternly replies,

That he trusts to rend his head to the teeth. Geoffrey braces on his shield, and shakes his spear, being no coward.

Riding straight at the giant, he deals him such a blow that only his steel hauberk saved him.

Grimold fell on the ground,

GRIMOLD THE GIANT IS OVERTHROWN,

"Therof shall the werə; Rebaude, loke the faue;
For to fcomfite the fouly I the craue.
Off thi hed shall smite; dy shalt thou by me

Mortally Anon, now here diffynde the,

To the unto warrant, certes, thou ne may."

Grymold, this hiring, to[ke] hym to laugh tho.

Ther hym said Grimold, "you befeche and pray,

Fair sir, faue my life, lete me on-lif go,
Taking this peple to ranfon also!"

Geffray vnderftode, "cherle!" said haftily,

"Scorneft thou with me? certes thou shalt dy!

Ere lo! shalt thou dy; I limite thi place,
Neuer Ranfon take shall I to thy charge;
But don to the teeth the shall rent by grace."

Ther had was A place, inly gret And large.

Gaffray that tyme, embrasing fchild and targe,
By malice And wret his spere Fafte he froke,
his courfere spored, no fentife on hym toke,

Or noble loes And proweffe to acquire.

With the Forhed plain gain hym went, & smote
Enmyddes the breft under the pappe with yre.
Such A stroke hym dalt ther vppon lys cote,
Ne had the hauberke smal mail be, god wote,

Als lys breft of fitile, ille hym hade come fure;
For Grimold ther was at ille aventure.

Oght-for-that yut vppon the hard ground
Tombled Grimold emmeddes the mountain,

1 Fr. text, "si prent a vire."
hys legges reised up an-hy that stound,
Wher-with Grimold was strongly greued plain.
Full wightely tho releued hym certein,
In hys hert gan fele full dolorous woe.

That Gaffray this faw, ther discended tho

That hys hors fhold noght myfcheuouly fle,
As vnder hym to mortall deth noght caft.
Grimold the Geant, lenger bode noght he,

But vp hym Reifed, Gaffray beheld fafte;¹
So but litell faw hym don to thraste,
Als in fo litell body fuch uertew,
Ther hym demaunding, "what art thou? say trew,

He says he never threw his limbs up like that before, yet he is ashamed to revenge himself, and again asks his name.

And yut, fo I am; but yut, say thou me,
What thou art me fay, I the here require;
No gentill knyght art but graunt my defire."

Gaffray Answered to [t]hys baclere,²
"My name wil not hide by ryght non engine,
Gaffray with the gret toth named am awhere,
In many contres know the name of myne;
For I Am Gaffray, fone to Melusine,

Off lusignen borne of pat good lady,
And of lusignen, know thou wel, am I."

The giant says that he knows him now, for that

When thys had spoken vnto hym Gaffray,
The Geant hym said, "I know the full well;

Full moch haue I hurd spokyn of the aday,
And of thy gret prowesse everidell.

¹ MS. "faсте."    ² MS. "baiulere."
The giant thought he was speaking truth, but he was nearer lying. Geoffrey tells him that desire of revenge will increase his hurt.

Gaffray said, "trowyng this instance, Such supposse to uenge ther huge flame per-fehance, Which ofte credith hurt, men may wel it fe, In fondry places conceyued may be."

Thys cruell Geant ne myght hym withhold When fo hym faw scorn, his leuer haufed hy, Gaffray to smite trowyng tho he fhold. Apart Gaffray uoided full warly,

Somewhat blent, the stroke fo forth paffyng by, With hym noght mette; the leuer doñ to ground With-in the Roche made A grett depe trowe pat ftounce ;

For it thrown was wonder buftefly, And with such rudeffe gan it to discend, That A plain fote large the roche tare strangely. Gaffray hys fwerd drew hym for to diffend, On the elbow↑↑↑↑ the Geant smote at end,

Such a stroke hym lent, to full huge manuell, That of the hauberke brek many a maill;

Wilk littell fauted, fouled had noght be. The vermail blode doñ ryn wonderly,

The herbes Aboute becam↑↑↑↑ red to fe. This fers Geant tho to Gaffray cam wightly, With full malice yre And cruell enuy

↑↑↑↑ MS. "ellow."  " MS. "becan."
The grete luer reised vp and hy brought;
4284 Full heuy was, but it gruyd hym noght;

**G** Affray thought fmite, but he noyled place.
Ther the fstroke fill don thre foote in-to grounde,
So in harde roche fmothe he ther apace;
4288 Whereof the Geant was full wroth that ffounde.
With that fstroke his arme Aftoned tho founde,
And thys faid luer to-rent thorughly,
And Amward broken outerly;

4292 **W** herof Gaffray thankes to godd yilding.
Ther Gaffray hym fmoth with hys fwerd full fafte,
Hys grett ftrenght And fors ther manly fhewing,
An-hy hym fmoth fppon the feul in fafte,
4296 The Geant with that fstroke Almofte doû cafte;
To whome þat fstripe was grousous manyfold.

For forow And wo An-hy hys hand gan hold,

**G** Affray forthwith fmothe fppon the hed an-hy;
4300 Off that grousous fstroke Gaffray greued fore.
The Geant his futte lete to fle ftrongly;
Gaffray with his fwerd fmothe hym euermore,
To whom belonged fight in knightly lore,
4304 Vppon hys fhuldre A fstroke gaffe of meruell
That he rent and brak both hauberke & maill.

Plain pawme of hande the fwerde made entre;
The fanguine blode doû ran the belay,
4308 Anon all made purpurat rede to fe.
Thys Geant, of whom we declare and fay,
hys goddys¹ corfed, hys goddys gan renay,
Enleffe thei² wold giff hym Aid³ or focour,
4312 Both Margot, polin, Bernagant that houre,

¹ MS. “goodys.” ² MS. “ther.” ³ MS. “And.”
GEoffrey and the GIAnt wrestle TOgther.

But his great wailing was useless. Geoffrey will conquer at last, but will have much trouble first.

M Aabout, Jupiter, And als other mo; hym-fellen bement forily expresse.

But for ryght noght was his gret waling tho;

4316 But Gaffray at end his wil shal redresse,
Noght only anon but er pat he cesse.

But yut shall he haue I-now anguiffe grete,
Er the victory be conquere[d] and gette.¹

The giant leaps at Geoffrey, and grips him fast by the reins, and they wrestle togeth

4320 The Geant faw come towarde hym Gaffray, Adrad, afferd of hym was gretly. Anon forth lepte, enbrae ung hym alway, Teryng, drawynge here and there besily, 4324 As he which was takyn curfidly. Gaffray gripte he there fass by the raynes, Ech of thaim both fusfryng there hug paynes

4328 Strongly went Aboute, so fafte hurteling; Il to-geders went As were egally, Such wyfe hurteling, beting, and drawyng That fro other fondred ecaping.

4332 Atwixfte thaim yeven many strokis tho, And Gaffray hym smote vpmon the hanche fo

W Wyth A costile which in hys flees gan hold, that his Ieferon failed and breke to,

4336 Thorewly paffyng the costile-yre cold; Haftily the blode lepte out and ran tho. The Geant bakwarde lepyng Gaffray fro, Ther-thens spedfuly takyng the montain.

4340 Gaffray hafted after, hym to attain,

T O take leue of hym, but fafte he gan fle; In litell time and space ferre was he thens. In A chine of the Roch made he entry,

¹ See line 3192.
For gret doubte had of Gaffrayes uiolens.
Gaffray fory that uoided was ther-hens,
Thys cruell Geant whom he fo had lofte,
To hys courfere cam, lepte vp, made no bofte,

TO hys gide went, declaryng hym and told,
Fro worde to worde, All thar werke indele,
like As thay had don ; And how this Geant bold
Thens into a cave\(^1\) fled for fere and drede,

Within the quike roche for all hys manlyhed.
The gide vnto hym approched full ny,
Which there wondred and merueled strongly,

How that Gaffray had such hug hardinesse.
Hys\(^2\) helme wafted fore, rent And broken all,
And hys hauberke disma[i]lled all expresse,
In many places holes gret And smal.
The gide said, "fo god me aid eternall,

COMYNG thay faw of peple gret fution,
Many nobles with other of contre,

As fone As the dode vnderstode Anon,
Demauldyng fuely of Gaffray the fre
Wat was his name? and thaim declared he.
And after thay had demaundedy hys name,

Then whens he was, off wat renon & fame,

And that to tham wold the verray trouth fay,
(For fain wold thay know, And he all tham told),
On of the Barons then said, "lord, you pray,

\(^1\) MS. "came," altered to "cauee."
\(^2\) MS. "hyis."
and tells him the giant will not return to fight him for any worldly wealth.

for that he knows he is predestined to die by Geoffrey’s hand. Geoffrey declares he will never depart till he finds him.

One of the barons tells him that the mountain is enchanted, and that the noble Helmas, king of Albany, was enclosed therein with his three daughters,

because he had wilfully beheld their mother in child-bed, after distinctly promising he would not do so.

She had at that time three fair daughters. This fair lady’s name was Presine, and

4372 here vnderstandeth what you fhall vnfold; Be ye in certain, for all worly gold Thys cruel Geant, (that god hym confound !) Again you will noght return at no ftoind, 

4376 Wel knowen is hym he shuld nought escape Fro your handes twain, yf he were in hold; That his mortall deth labour wold and fhape, For fo is hym prediftinat 1 of old.”

4380 “By the Trynite,” said Gaffray the bold, “Fro contre fhall I neuer, lo ! departe Till that I hym finde by fom maner art.”

“My lorde,” said on of thaim, “beth noght in doute; 

4384 This montain wheron this Geant is truly Full of the fairy is it all aboute. The noble helmas, king of Albany, With hys doughtres thre ther was verily 

4388 Enclosed with-in, nowhere myght iflew, By fuch werkes wroughten incongrew,

For that there moder, the lady prefine, lying in gefian wilfully had fain;

4392 Which hym diffended that by non engine, Vpon this diffence that fhe hym made plain. Noght-withftandyng went to fe hir dedes folain, Which therof with hir made had couenaunt 

4396 Goyng ne comyng to hir wold noght haunt,

As toward hyr whyle in gefian lay; Wher if fo gan do, at end mischef fhold. With doughtres fair in lay fhe that day, 

4400 Thys iloly lady, prefine, to behold, Doughtres thre had childed and vnfold. 

1 MS. “perdefinat.”
helmas forsworn, periured, and comerd to,
The couenaunt hold with prefine made tho

4404 For-foth he failled; wherthoroughe he loft
Prefine hys lady, As after shall hyre;
hyt declare And1 tell shall my wersfom goft.
With thes doughters thre he clofed entire,
4408 For ther moder loft, the foth to acquire.
In this hy montain fhitte up were thay tho,
Neuer was knowen to what place were goo.

4412 Ther were thay fhitte vp fro pat heder-to.
But in this montain, without any doute,
hath euerm more fithen that helmas our king

B'it that this Geant put to deth mortall;
So was he myghty and meruelous ftronge.
4420. This contre hath he put to mischief all,
Our kyng which we hild mofte chefe vs Among
litell hath fro hym defendedor our wrong.
To grimold vs hath of Fors made yielding,
4424 Euermore fithen that helmas our king

I nto fuch fellowship was put and cafte.
Thys Grymold is the fifte Geant found,
The ficte, or the fifth of thaim hath be last,
4428 Wafting thys contre both the lande and ground,
To All men making weerre full habound
Vnto the time of your blessed comying,
The which ben welcome to vs here beyng.”
When Geoffrey heard the news, he took an oath that he would die as a recreant or else discomfit the giant.

When that Gaffray hurd thes new nouels told, Full good and fair bene thes tydinges truly. Ther A gret oth made As man inly bold, Aforne thaim present to all openly,

That he wold be dede ful recreantly Or discomfite wold this cruell Geant; He doubted no-thyng, the man fo pufant.

The night passed, the fair day apperings, Aforne thes Barons full twenty and mo Gaffray wightly on hys coursere leping, The Geant neuer doubted for no wo. leue toke, after went vp the montain tho;

Full gret pain he had to go vp an-hy; Hys coursere fporing that ceafon wightly,

That to the Roche cam, fo fpored and fmote. Tournyng enuyron, the hole perceyuinge,

Anised and knew, well gan it to note That thys huge Geant ther had made entring. Fro hys coursere doñ Anon ther leping, A-foote descended, in-warde gan behold. But to fee within ne myght nought be¹ told;

No thyng he faw more then in a Owen he. Gaffray tho said, “Aftoned am in all Wherby the Geant now here passed be,

Sin pat gret thikke is, wonder corporall, Moche more then I am fouerged perfonall. I know well that here or there entre made, Noght that way, but this, ran he full fad.

SE here now the place where he made entre, Se here now the cave, without Any doute, Where thys Geant entred in to fe;

¹ MS. “he.”
AND RESOLUTELY VENTURES INSIDE IT.

Thys is the gret Roche openly all-out, 105
Where grene graffe hath no growing there
Aboute.
The cave is hewn within large and brode
So As he myght ren without any bode.

For he was full huge, moche gretter then I
ame.

But, fo iheseu crift me warde fro noifance,
Whatsoever approch me of grame,
Me wil not withhold by no gouernaunce
But hym here within will feke pis infaunce."

Entre made he tho ther in-to the grounde,
For-soth ther within thought feke hym that
frome.

ff that he be there, truly fhall hym fynd.
The spere lete doûn, ren the hed, be-forn lete
goû ;

After ny fewed, derkly, As man blynd.
Put hys feet before, noght drad, in went tho,
Shittynge vp hys mouth within hys teeth alfo.
Adon the spere lowe aualed he,

Till he cam vnto the botme and entre.

When at the botme was, hee gan take hys
spere ;
Off An herd wode was, breke1 wold not foth-
leffe ;

Man better timbre neuer faw nowhere,

For broken wold, ne had be good expresse ;
Inly good it was, to no breche gan dreffe.
Ny the hed the spere gan he take full preft,
And forth went apas, lenger wold not reft.

1 MS. "bbeke."
After, Aferrome saw he hug clernesse,
When a littell while forth ther he had go.
The fpere euernore Aforne hym gan dreffe
In taftyng the way, vntill that he tho

4488

4492

Ariued and cam A fair place vnto,
Where A chambre founde full fair wroght &
well,
There fourged and made was it of nouell.1

She2 All betan was with fine pureyd gold
Full of riche perrey, made3 to gret mafftry.

4504

Enmyddes A tombe of this chambre told.
Thys tombe fette vppon fixe pilours hy
Off fyne maffe gold, with perles many,
A man fhold not finde nawere more fine;
4508 Precyous rich were, of huge medicine.

Above was had A knightly armed kyng,
Off cassedony will formed and made.
Vppon this faid tombe was he ther ligging,

4512

Replendifing fair in this chambre fprad.
Ioynant ny ther-to A fair lady had,
Being in estat (who beheld with ey)
Off Alabafyre was this noble lady.

1 Here follows the catchword—"she myght in no wife."
2 MS. "Sfhe."
3 MS. "perreymade."
THE CONTENTS OF THE TABLET ON THE TOMB.

4516 To constantinoble fro-thens is no faill,
    Ne myght ymage finde with it to compare.
Off this full strange fight Gaffray gan meruell,
An huge tablet this fair lady bar
4520 In hir handes twain all this to declare,
    Refembling to be fourged all of-new.
In this tablet wrete As here fhall enfew.

"H' er' light fir helmas, the full noble king,
4524 Which me hath loft by hys gret deray
    Wherof I was And had huge eftonyng.
Thys noble kyng was full Amerous ay ;
    Couenaunt me had, er fpoufed were Alway,
4528 That neuer day, whiles he gan endure,
The time that I in Gefian ly fure,

H'E fhuld nogth enquire by no maner way
    Off my dedes, neithr no wife me fe,
4532 Towardes me nogth come ne go no day,
    Till ceason And time I reifed fhold be.
Tho it fel and cam, of my belay thre
    Full faire doughtres had in this fame yere,
4536 Which right gracyous And full hable were.

H' Elmas fo gan do that he me gan fe
    In fuch wife As I in my childbed lay.
Anon ther fro hym I uanished me,
4540 Such wife departed and thens fly my way ;
    Neuer knew what part went I my journay ;
And my doughtres thre forth with me lad,
    Al thaim norished vnto gret age had,

4544 F'Vll well amended And right well gan growe.
    With my mylke tham fed, and milked all thre ;
After thaim told, when fifteene yeres gan owe,

1 MS. "Ilher."
had lost their father. The eldest, Melusine, was very vexed about it.

The manner how I loft their fader fre.

In Auoblon the fairy contre,

The eldest of birth, married she was,
Melusine called in every place.

[With her two sisters, as was right, 't]
they talked over every circumstance,
and told me, who was their mother,
they wished to avenge me on their father.
The three daughters agreed
to bring a fate upon their father,
to avenge me of the great misdeed
that he had foolishly done against me.
To this they all assented,
and enclosed within the mountain
Helmas, who was their father,
and who had broken his promise.
When he died, I buried him
beneath this tomb, and enclosed him there,
and caused this tomb to be thus made,
thus sculptured and painted.
Thereon I caused my likeness to be put
that there might be remembrance of it
in him who should read the tablet.
For never should man enter here
except he were of the lineage
(in Avalon and the fairy-country)
of my three daughters, of whom
you may hear tell when you will.
I bade the giants to watch,
from the hour I set them there,
that none should enter by this passage
except he were sprung of our line.
I provided gifts for my daughters,
Qui gentes furent & abilles;
A melusine la maifnee,
Qui moult efoit faige & fenee,
Le luy donne don a fa vie,
Depar lordre de faerie,
Tant que le fiecle dureroit,
Le temoiedi ferpent feroit;
Et qui la vouldroit efpofer,
Delle ne deuoit addreffer.
Ce lour, mais foy garder moult bien,
Quelle part quel fuft, fur toute Rien;
Que en cil efoit ne la veift,
Ne qua muluy ne le dift.
Et qui celle Regle fuiroit,
Mellusine toudis vinroit
Ainfî comme femme mortelle,
Et pourfe f emme naturelle;
Puis mouroit naturelment,
Comme les autres proprement.
Melior, la fille moyenne,
Qui tant fut belle creftienze,
Vng don lui donne de faerie,
Bien eft Raison que le vous die.
En vng chafteau fort & maffis,
Qui en armenye eft affis,
Voire, en grant la armenye,
Le luy ordonnay que fa vie
Tendroit leuus vng efpriuer;

who were beautiful and fair:
to Melusine, the eldest,
who was very wise and prudent,
I give her a gift for life
(according to the order of fairies),
that, as long as her life lasted,
she should be a serpent every Saturday;
and, whoever would marry her,
must not approach her
on that day, but take good heed,
wherever he was, and in every thing.
He must not see what she then was,
nor tell anybody of it.
And, whoever followed this rule,
to him would Melusine always come
just like a mortal woman,
as women naturally do,
Then should she die naturally,
and as others usually do.
To Melior, the second daughter,
who was so fair a creature,
I give a fai ry-gift,
and 'tis well that I should tell you what.
In a castle strong and massive,
which is situate in Armenia,
in great Armenia, verily,
I bade her that, during her life,
she should keep a sparrow-hawk there;

Where it shall behoue nightes to wacche thre
As ho which off hir demaunde A yiftc
wold,
And what he desire I-graunted shall be;
The firfte demaunde demaundith ther haue
shold.
But not hir body desire haue ne holde;
Off it Melior loke he noght require,
Neither by no meene hir not desire.
But if he yield to somnolency, he shall be her prisoner for ever. Such is the gift I give her.

Palestine, the youngest, shall have this destiny: she shall dwell in a very high mountain, where men's hearts fail them.

Thrice the treasured hoard of her dear father, till a knight of our lineage comes and takes it by force, and afterwards conquers Palestine, the land of promise.

This mountain is situated in Aragon. Thus Presine avenged herself on her three daughters.

[1] The A being indistinct, it looks like "Prillatine;" see 1. 5049.


[3] In the margin—Palestine yn a castell yn aragon.

And Palestine the youngest.

No knight wake ne thold but of hye birth were;
And ho-fo do flepe in tho nightes thre
4616 (Wher lytell or moche) in fampnolesence there,
Alway perpetuall there abide shall he
In the paleis with melior the fre
As prifonere in prifon alway:
4620 Such gifte I hir gifte As this tyme dyfplay.

Patine the yongeste fisther tho was,
So named and called was at that day;
To whom I destine to purchas
4624 Such A maner gyfte As I you shall fay:
That in coings the hy montain ay,
Where failled hert haue men full many,
Enfusfering full ofte ryght gret misery,
4628 Ther to warde and kepe hir faders tresoure;
Enduryng hir life, in that place to be,
Till som approche and come, of linage our,
To that hy montain by fors and strenght he
4632 To ascende an-hye Aboue the hill to fee,
The tresoure cafte oute, and after shall conquere
The lande of promission by hys powere.

Tho was the monte of whom we speke and fay
4636 Sette in Arrigon of trouth verily,
Which that is a thing knowen well be may.
This presine to hyr doughters thrre surely,
Which were fulliable and ryght faire to ey,
4640 On thaim the moder auenged that brayd,
By the maner that Aboue is faide,
For ther fader helmas king of renon,  
That thay enclofyd by ther wrong derain

4544 With-in the montain ther of Avalon;
For by my faith I loued pat fourcain,  
how-be-it pat he mifdede me Again;
Off feith and of tronth I loued hym hertly

4648 With all the fprites of my body.”

Ryght thus was And went the scripture faing;  
And when Gaffray, uaillant man and wurthy,

Hud ralde thys tablet, he moch meruelling;

4652 But yut he knew noght uerray certainly,  
But fantred and doubted uerryly
Wher on was or no of this faide linage.

Fro-thens went Gaffray with full fers corage,

4656 Iuly fafte cerching als both low and hy,  
Where that Grimold in Any place finde myght;
So thens departed pa flyng ouer lightly.
Al the wais toke and fought thys huge wight,

4660 Grimold myght not fynde ne of hym haue fyght.

Straight Afrom hym A fair feld gan behold,
Ther perceuyung A square tour, A strong hold.

The gate faw open, the barreres1 undo;

4664 Into the hous Gaffray went Anon,  
.. Stilly And bigly his spere holding tho.
In a gret latife be-held manyon,
Al prisoneres where in warde thai echon.

4668 Of hym wondred And merued strongly,
And on of thaim faid, “go hens ful quikly!

IConcell you,” faid, “depart hens Anon  
That this huge Geant in no wife you fe;

1 MS. “barrores.”
GEOFFREY PERCEIVES GRIMOLD, PURSUES HIM,

him. But he
laughs, and asks
where the giant
can be found,

for he is come to
fight him. One of
the prisoners
again warns him
to go, but Geoff-
rey tells him not
to fear,

as he can fight the
giant alone. Just
then the giant
came up, and,
perceiving Geoff-
rey, fled into a
chamber hastily,

[Fol. 80 b.]
and drew the
door after him.
But Geoffrey fol-
lows, and bursts
the door open
with a kick, and
enters.

The giant smites
Geoffrey with a
mallet, and would
have slain him

4672 Or in-to fom hole go, uowyng his perfon,
Or with the Geant diftroed shall ye be!"
Gaffray laughed; after demaunded he,
Which on his necke bare A spere full grete,

4676 If that the Geant he myght funde or gette,

With hym thought to fight, hys purpos
uerily.
On of thaim hym said, "fe hym shall Anon,
And I beleue ye will it fore aby

4680 if he you fe, for strong is of perfon ;
To deth will you put forfothe er ye gon."
Gaffray to hym said, "my ryght full fuete
frende,
haue ye no drede but of your felfe at end ;

4684 A lone shall I bere the strokes And deedes,
For Alone I haue take this entreprife."
yn the fame moment, places, and ftede
Gaffray with long toth the Geant gan auife,

4688 That iuged was to deth, wel gan aduertife.
he strongly ther fled As he myght goodly,
A chambr e perceiued, in went rabbifhly,

4692 After fped Apace, yroufly being;
Smiting haftyli, the dore gan vp fle,
With pat stroke the dorn1 Anon unbarring;
Withe the fol e of fote was he tho smiting.

4696 Into chambr e floure the doure made fle lightly ;
For all barred was, entred he wightly.

4700 With that stroke he was stoned manyfold;
Ne had hys helmet2 be full strong and myghty,

1 "dore" (?) 2 MS. "helyet." Fr. text, heaulme.
Gaffray had be slain, so caused to dy.
And yit not-for-that Gaffray tumbled there,
4704 Anon releuing in wighty manere,

Then hym faide Gaffray, “of the haue full fair,
But Anon I shal yilde it unto the,
With my fwerde the teere, not will make retrain.”
Gaffray drew his fwerd, harde well ground to fe,
With the bakke went, so harde the Geant
Gaffray his good fwerd so put thorough hym tho,
Thorough the brefte the croffe was it unto;

Fro part in-to part hym perced over all.
The Geant to grounded our-torned tho,
Which so ofte had made many men full thrall.
Xo-thyng was he warth, right noght myght
he do,
Where cursedly had don with his maillet foo.
A meruelous cry vp he caft pat stound,
All the toure founed when he fill to ground.

Hys Geant tho fall to mortal deth colde
With that mighty stroke Gaffray hym yeung.
Gaffray drew his fwerde ther oute fro Grimold,
Into his scabeage Again hym puttyng.
Ther ryght no lenger wold he be byding,
To the prisoners fro-thens Anon went,
And to demaunde thaim was full diligent

F of Norbelande thei were As was told,
And what maner thyng gain hym hade mifdo,
4728 And wherfor in prefon he tham gan hold.
Anon on said, “for trewage was it tho
That the gret Geant yeuen had vnto;
The which, sir, is noght yut hym paid no wyfe, 4732 Wherfor this now bide All his tirandife."

Gaffray Answered, "joyous And glad be, Now Full merily demene you Amonge, For of his paupires strike oute plain be ye! 4736 Here hym haue I flain And put to dethe ftronge; Neuer shal he you At no day do wrong, Of trouth mortall deth haue I put hym to, your trewage haue I now here aquitte fo."

When thes nouels hurde, joyous therof were; Gaffray thay befought thaim deliner oute. He Answered said, "do shal my powere." Tho cerewed, enquired, And went Aboute, 4744 Till the keys Founde with-out any doute. And when he thaim had resorted Again, Where too hundert were And mo in certain,

The lateis unshitted where-in prisoned were, 4748 Prefently thaim al gaf he leue to go. Fro-thens ifued thay with gladfom chere, That nouvelles pleafed and greed well to That escape fhold thys painfull prifon fro. 4752 Into the chambre Gaffray tho thaim lade To fe this Geant dede and cold ther had.

Every man hym blifled of Gaffray, 4756 Hym to haue in fuch herdineffe Alway To affail fuch A hiduous creature Off fo wonderfull unfittyng ftature, Thys gret monstre, huge, large, and cruell, 4760 Which fo meruelous was, felenous and fell.

They all said they had never seen such a man 4761 Euery man bliflid, euery man faid That neuer fuch a man ther dais gan fe.
And gives them the giant’s treasure.

To thaim faing Gaffray, “hie me now pis braide,
Here now ye Barons acquitail haue by me;
Vnto this Geant no more owe fhall ye.
Full moch good hath w/th/in thys dongon;
Barons, you it yeue into your bandone,

And all that is here you it gyffe frely,
Both gold and hanour here, all that his wace.
hit reiows and take, for noght haue will I;
here you will commaunde to our lorde’s grace,

Take all pat here is in this tour and place.
To tary or byde certes will noght here,
To labour will go in place ellyfwhere;

Enger will noght bide, dwelle, ne tary.”
“your mercy and grace,” thai to hym gan fay,
“So it myght you pleafe off your courteffy,
Enery of us you befeke and pray
Wherby ye come in to fay us your way,

Where for the Geant non durfte make entre,
That dede and recreant here lith now may fee.”

There Gaffray thaim declared all and told.
When thay had hym hurde, on said hym vnto,
“Neuer fro this Roche iffued man fo bold
Excepte this Geant ligging ded here, lo!
And his cruell anteeceffoures alfo,
By whom to greuous torment put we be;

Exiled and wafted haue thai our contre,
Oth tho gret and small haue thai had in hate;
Diftroed alfo all that thai finde might,

in all their days.
Geoffrey tells them they now owe the giant nothing,
but that they may carry away all the treasures they can find, for he would have nothing for himself.

[Fol. 22.]
They thank him greatly, and ask him how he came there, where no one dared come for the giant.

Geoffrey tells them, and they all say that no man so bold ever issued from that rock, except the giant and his antecessors,

who had slain 400 knights. They said too that they
would accompany him till he found his own people.

4792 Now our forow ye haue vnto an ende dight,
And Als put to end the fary work ryght.
With you shall return, going vpon way,
Till that your peple approche and fynde may.”

Then they set the giant’s body up upon a cart, to which it was fast bound and attached.

4796 Thes Barouns thaim made tho full redy
To put this Geant ther a carte uppon;
An-hy hym dreffen As for to cary,
Neuer faw man to fightes uision

4800 So gret As was this Geant enuiron,
Eueru man blessed that hym gan fe;
Well bounde and tacked to that carte was he.

Thorugh the contre went, hym carying;
[For 92 b.]
Whereouer thai rode and passid full faste.
Of this faid monstre al nien meruelling,
Wherof the peple Abaffhed and agaft.
Forsoth euery man blilfed thaim in faste

4808 The hour that Gaffray arriued at pat coste,
That thaim deliuerd of this cursed gofte.

They would gladly have made Geoffrey their king, but he wouid in no wise longer sojourn there.

4812 And full humbly gan do hym ther honour,
So As for ther lorde thai hym holding,
For passid And dede was their noble king.
But he wold no wife lenger ther fogourn,

4816 But to lusignen wold he tho retourii.

Affray conuued to his peple that houre,
huge honour and gold hym ther presenting;

4820 Vpon his courfere anon lepte lightly
As he which was both doubty and wurthy.

\(^1\) MS. “noman.”
“Adieu,” tho he said, “Adieu you command, ye noble Barons present of Norbeland,

and bade the barons adieu.

Then he and his people galloped fast till they came to the sea. There he took ship, desiring to see his father and Melusine.

The wind was good and he soon came to port. Then he disembarked and arrived at Lusignan that same night.

All the world came to meet him, and Raymond with the rest. Geoffrey salutes him humbly, embraces and kisses him.

Then they entered a chamber and talked together. Geoffrey told his father many tales, and next he is told how he had caused the loss of his mother.

To you leue the warde of this contre.”

Fro-thens departed, femyng ther to longe,

Then he and his people galloped fast till they came to the sea. There he took ship, desiring to see his father and Melusine.

The wind was good and he soon came to port. Then he disembarked and arrived at Lusignan that same night.

All the world came to meet him, and Raymond with the rest. Geoffrey salutes him humbly, embraces and kisses him.

The Barons fested this hy fouerain,

The Barons feasted this by fair feast, and when Gaffray had hauyn ueryly,

Anon A-land he descended ryght,

Anon A-land he descended right, and ther arrived certes pat fame night.

Men, wemen, children, of ech side moiste

Men, women, children, of each side most and left;

and lefte;

and left;

Hys fader Raymounde vnto hym cam prestie.

Hys father Raymond went to him came first;

Gaffray hym salute As man moiste vmblefte,

Gaffray salutes him most humbly,

Wightly Anon hym Gaffray gan enbrace,

With great joy he embraced him,

Neuer at more cæfe of hert he ne wace;

Never at more cafe of heart he knew;

His uifage and mouth ther gan he to kiffe.

His face and mouth there he to kiss.

Into a chambre both thai made entre,

Into a chamber both they made entre,

Wherof many thinges spake thai, I-wiffe,

Whereof many things spoke they, I know,

Many tales told ther Gaffray the fre,

Many tales told there Gaffray the free,

And Raymound to hym that in mynde wold be

And Raymond to him that in mynd would be

hou hys moder loft he had and lete.

hous his mother lost he had and left.

With malicious wreth Gaffray gan fucte;

With malicious wrath Gaffray went;
Geoffrey recalls his visit to Avalon.

He knew it was for his sin in burning the abbey of Maillezais. Then he remembers the tablet he saw in the mountain of Avalon.

Fro wurde to wurde al thoroughly in hert be1 rad

When he knew that Raymond had been tempted by the earl of Forest, he swore an oath that he would go and kill him.

Away he goes with ten chosen knights, who were worth twenty others, and the result was this:

1 "he" (?)  2 MS. "thai."  3 MS. "brother;" Fr. text, pere.
GEOFFREY SEeks OUT HIS UNCLE FROMOUNT.

4880 SO on way faste sped, fo forth low and hy, That he approached the erledome unto Off the forest, where was this Erle worthy, Which in a castell abiding 1 was tho.

4884 Gaffray to that parte drew hym faft to goo Where the Erle shold have ill handell anon, In-to thyss faid ftrenght entred his perfon,

Within he entred vnware foldenly,

4888 Off no creature perceived at all.

Within he entred vnware foldenly,

With full yrous wretch Gaffray meued hy, He salute non, ne spake to gret ne small, But discended doë A-forn the gret hall,

4892 The grees Ascended, many to accointe, hys uncle the Erle ther, named Fromonote, 2

Enmyddes his peple hym ther gan find, Which were full noble And ryght gentile to,

4896 Wice, fage, And wele taught As any to mynde. Gaffray As wode man drawing his fwerd tho, Ther crying, “traitor, thy lif loft And goo! By thy neclygens my moder haue lofte!”

4900 Thys Erle it hurde, his blode gon almofte,

His mortall deth faw; being in fuch fray, Gaffray he doubted in hert that inftaunce, Knowyng well by hym tho wurdes gan fay

4904 Wherof Gaffray had to hert fuch noyfaunce. Fro-thens he fly with huge comeraunce, Neuer-før-neuer stode he in fuch drede, The tour entred, the dore founde ope in dede,

4908 The grees Ascended ryght fo As he myght; But fo gan noght do As his hert tho wold; For After hafted Gaffray As man wight, and ascended the steps. But Geoffrey hastened after

1 MS. “obiding.”

2 In the margin—geffre kyld hys r[nkult] erle of foreste.
him, pursuing him so fast that the earl had to flee alone;

Which purfued hym, chaufing to that hold,

Strongly hym fewed And sharply manyfold,

Openly after other gan to fle;

With hym had the Erle non of hys mayne

A f man that fo was gentile ne fo goode

Which with hym fro-thens in no wyfe wold go;

The greez defcended, fered as were woode,

Eche hym-felfe to faue in left wife cowd tho,

Ther liffes to faue Gaffray criing vnto.

For fere of taking full fafte thay fle,

Thay fore doubted left taking fhold be.

Affray fly After thys Erle haftily,

Sweryng that he fhould dy ther with greet flame.

The Erle Ascended into this tour quickly,

As fone As he myght to hiefte stage came.

Gaffray fwere his oth, for linage ne fame,

Wold spare hym to flay, lif take fro his goft,

Syn his moder good by hym fo hath lofte.

Or drede the Erle fwatte And fore trembled tho

When that he faw, brefly vnto fay,

That by no men myght ferther pafle ne go.

At A fenestre lepte in that affray

Vppon the hedde, failling foote that day;

Fro that place glint pat full hy tho was,

Don vppon the Roch A fall gan purchas.

In that point was he mis[c]henofly dede

With dolorous wo And full heuy flame,

Thys Erle of forefte in faid place and ftede.

Alas! by hys owne greet folay it came,
RAYMOND DETERMINES TO SEEK THE POPE.

4940 hys peple hauyng hug forow and grame.
The body Gaffray made vnto entere;
After do made cryes in eeh ftede awhere,

4944 As vnto the Erle beforne had thay do,
To Raymounde his brother in like wife
homage,
All enhiritors of the contre tho.
And As thaim had said Gaffray the fage,
Enery accorded vnto his langage.
4948 Ther Gaffray wold noght lenger to fogourn,
To-ward lusignen faste gan he returnn,

In shorte and bref tyme parted fro that place.
Vnto lusignen entred, fast ridyng,
4952 Where his gud fader tho dolorous was,
Which full heuily was ther waymenting
For that noght unkno, (full for lamenting),
How hys brother distroyed was pat day;
4956 Raymound said, “of it gret dolour haue may,

An my wife haue loft, exile my contre,
By my cruell sin And my wicked vice;
Ihesu crift my foull warde and kepe to the,
4960 Fro2 thys worle me will put by good auice,
Neuer feke no-thyng to conquere franchife.
To confesse my fyn wandre shall and goo,
With good hert shall fay the hole Pofftell to

4964 Off Rome, that Lyon men do name and call,
After, fo god will, chefe shall my dwellyng,
Recluse and shit vp in strange contre shall,
In which ftede will not be know for no thyng.
4968 In that place shall I my life be using
In denneute prayers And in orifon,
All vnto acquire my fanacion.”

1 MS. “pepll.” 2 MS. “For.”

his body to be buried, and proclaimed
[Fol. 951]
his own brother Raymond the lord of Forest.
This done, he returned to Lusignan, and soon
came to his father who was sore
lamenting the earl’s death.
Raymond ex-
claims,
“All is due to my
sin and vice: I
will quit the
world and its
fame, and make a
pilgrimage to the
holy apostle at
Rome,

whom men call
Leo. I will then
become a recluse
in a strange
country and
spend my life in
prayer.”
Raymond's Advice to Geoffrey.

Right As Raymond de hym fore complayned,
[lo !]

4972 In plaintes, wepinges, he bathed was;
And when that Gaffray was descendid tho,
At the perron longe bode not in put place,
At castell finding hys fader by grace.

4976 But hys moder noght founde, ne faw with ey,
Wherefor to hys fader cried mercy,
With hert fore contrite therof repenting
Off that he had don fo moche wickednesse.

4980 On knees mercy ther hym faffe crying,
Raymonde fore wepte with eyes bitternesse:
" Hyt nedith noght," said, " more haue penifin
neffe,"
I know well that ye by no mene this day

4984 your moder recover certes ye ne may.
I can noght," he said, "werke ne labour foo
As tho mortall ded ther lif to furrend.
The Abbay and mynftre fourge and make moft, lo!

4988 Which fair place ye haue diftroid and fhend.
An hundred monkes with-in alfo brend
By your meruelous And wondre corage,
As by your folay and full gret outrage."

4992 Affray Answerd, "fire, I shal it doo
Within right bref tyme, fo our lord pleafe
may."
Then Raymond hym hild in hert content tho;
" More fairer shal be then Afern was ay,"

4996 Raymond hym said, "appere will it alway
That which ye will do men full well shall fe,
Perceyued to ey, knownen well will bee.

5000 Ere will you leve, to good ende come may.
A litell way me mofte go in pilgrimage,
RAYMOND SETS OUT FOR ROME.

Which promysed haue god afores this day,
Put ther-to haue both hert, wyll, and corage,
My contre you shal leue, warde it as the fage.

Non other will I of it haue the garde,
your yongest brother wyll loke but ye warde,

Artrenay hym gif with thes caftelles echon
Off vauuent, Ayglon, And also Mervent,
He thaim to hold in hiss fubieccion
In pees without contradiccion heunt;
Anon to Rochel my wife wold so went.
For gretly of hym she gan speke and say,

That contre he fhold iustice allay.

Hym make my proper enheritour,
For yut shal he be wurthy terrenly.”
Gaffray Answered, “I grant to will your,
Alway your plefur shal I do fully,
Full well shal I warde my brother Thierry;
In that doubte ye noght, in no maner point,
Sin ye me commaunde, gree to such a joynyt.”

Raymond, all being made ready for his journey, sets off. He takes leave of his people and goes to Rome.

Affray and Thierry suettly on the way
long space and tyme thare fader conueing;
In ther forth-progreffe told and said Gaffray, hou that good helmas the full noble kyng

"Rachel."
Geoffrey relates how he found good king Helmas within the rock.

Within the Roch founde, wher non durft be commyng
5032 Enleffe he were strong, wurthy, wyfe, and fage,
And that issued oute of hys linage;

Toode where the tombe was pight and fette truly
Vppon thes riche and gret pilours of gold;
5036 Of presine told he alfo veryly,
Hou the portraed was in being, told;
At foote of helmas tombe hir figure vnfold
Of Alebaftre compassed and made;
5040 And of the tablet that she hild and had;

Raymond rejoiced to hear Melusine was of such high descent, and seemed in his joy a foot taller. Afterwards Geoffrey tells about Presine's gifts.

And then all that hurde Aboue haue ye.
Raymond reioyed hys wife daughter was Off fyre helmas, king which Gaffray gan fe,
5044 And of presine, the courtois, full of grace;
For gladnes A foote' in hithe gan purchace.
After declaryng went by witty engine
All the gyfftes that ther gaf presine
5048 Unto Melior and to Melufine,
And to palatine, wemen of fayree; 2
And, As men Affermeth by scriture fine,
That Aboue all helmas louid hyly
5052 Presine, aboue wrote verryr perfecty.
When that Gaffray had All thes thynges said,
Raymondde hertly glade reioyng that braide,

That Gaffray gan hire voluntarily.
5056 After thes fones too hym conueyng,
With hym vppon way went full merily.
At nyght when thai cam vnto ther loging,
Hys fones of hym the morën leue taking,

1 MS. "Afoote." 2 MS. "fayrer."
To-geders kissed at the parting leue,  
And fo the monnyng departed in breue.

Raymounde ther Fader sped hym on hys way;  
Ther no creature but watry teeres fhad;

The Fader wepte, the fones Als that day,  
Every of thaim in misery had,  
Raymound thens went; Gaffray Terry with hym lad,  
Thay returned to Approche ther home,  
And the Fader went ftreight forth vnto Rome.

Ryght thys departed ther waies thes thre,  
Ther-thenz to lusignuen went Gaffray.  
To partenay went Terry that contre,  
yonge, lufty, ioly, inly frefh And gay,  
Hardy, myghty, fers, entrepreignant ay,  
To ladies fwete was amyable,  
huge of body, wel formed As man able.

Any were ther noght with hym to compare,  
For he was An in beutenious fair knyght;  
Strong, myghty, wourthy, And light to declare,  
And off All pepple douted was he ryght;  
Neuer put A-bake, manly was of myght;  
A notable man was he of corage,  
A good werriour, fubtile, wife, And fage.

Oubted of all, wher by fors, were, or wit,  
Every man obbeid hym lowly  
In all hys marches, where wrong or ryght were it.  
In noble Bretain gan he to mary;  
Affyed and fured to A grete lady,  
Which diffended was of ryght hy lynage,  
And als the hauyng full huge heritage.

1 In the margin—geffrey lord of lusygnen & terry lord of [partenay.]  
2 M.S. "wherby."  
3 In the margin—terre maryd a lady of bretayn.
GEOFFREY REBUILDS THE ABBEY OF MAILLEZAIS.

From Thierry descended the line of Parthenay, a line which is still distinguished for virtue.

Geoffrey sent everywhere for masons, who rebuilt the abbey of Maillezais which he had burnt.

It was rebuilt so as to be fairer than before: so that men marvelled, and said that Geoffrey had become a monk after all!

I return to Raymond, who confessed all his sins.

Terry feignored A full large contre,
    Hattyd of no man; of hym gan iffew
5092 Of pertenay the lyne of verite,
As in this history doth to enfew,
Which hyly regneth yut in huge vertew;
God wold fuch heires of tham fhold come
5096 That the line noght faill to the day of dome!

Ryght As declared And sayd Melufine
That the faid line fhold haue long endur-ance,
And that thay fhold do good dedes and fine;
5100 And fo haue thay done wel to rememberaunce
In many placis, wherof refte I this inftaunce;
Ouer long wold be to declare and tell,
Ther wurthy dedes vnto fay or fpell.

Affray tho made Aboute for to fende,
Mafons of iche fíd come with-out delay;
Herought noght what theron fhold difpend,
For in thought wold restore the Abbay
5108 Off Maillers, that was brend pat oder day.
Off euery part mafons ther comyng,
Ther wages well paid, content pain holding.

Ourged and made was in A fomer tide
5112 More fairer then euery it was before,
Off whom men fpeken, talking large and wide,
Hym ofte mocking And faing euermore,
"Gaffrey is become A monke for all hys lore,
5116 Neuer trowed man for to fe that houre
    A wolfe to become An heredly paftour!"

Leue fhall Gaffray; of hys fader fay,
      Which to Rome to the holy fader came
5120 Hys confefion to declare alway;
In conclusion spared for no shame,
Neuer no-thyng hid, but all gan proclaim.
The holy fader wondred on that he told,
5124 Off tho merueles that ther gan vnfold.¹

Wherefor shold I hold long tale this instaunce?
For his synnes gaff penance full sharpenly.
Raymond ther it toke to right gret pleaunce,
5128 Promityng he wold do it full gladly
Or he entre wold in peyters fuerly.
To hys holy fader fald with all his hert,
And that thens wold go in-to fom desert,

5132 So in wild exile all hys lif using
For fair Melusine his loue, wife, and fponce,
In many somers And winters being,
Which that he hath loft by dedes shamneous,
5136 And serpent become wondre hiduous;
Sayng, neuer wold hir put in oblyuy
Ne in that contre neuer entre fuerily,

N-Euer-For-neuer in hys life no day,
5140 Where hys fuete loue loft by hys owne fperche;
Which in oblyuy with hym be ne may.
This holy fader gan pray and befperche
That of his illes he wold be hys leche.
5144 The pope, that time named and called lyon,
Said to hym, “where is your deuocion

For to go and do ioyned penance?”
Raymond Answered as man deboner,
5148 “At Montfarrant bide is my hole pleafance,
Ther become hermite with-out any retrayr,
To goddis honour And seruice repair.

¹ MS. “vnfuld.”

[177]
Raymond becomes a hermit at Montserrat.

For elleswhere can I noght me hold,

5152 Full fair fegernyng ther is, me is tolde.

There is A denoute solitary place."

"Go 1 where plefe may our sacred lord an-

5156 That your fanacion ye may purchase,"

That your fanacion ye may purchase,

In brente Raymond parted them truly,

So strongly he rode, paffyng forth the way,

That within Thouloufe cam without delay.

Full moche peple Again hym tho went ;

5160 He ther yeuyng leue to hys mayne plain,

Ech fated with goodes sufficient ;

With hym A preft had, An honest chaplain,

5164 A yeman alfo for hys owne demain.

More had ne toke at that entendall,

Ther unto our lord commaunded hys men all ;

5168 In Aryan toke hys logge and repair.

At the Mont-farrat manfon gan to take,

yielding hym hermyte As man debonair,

God to serue with orifons and 3 praiers fair ;

5172 Properly to take for hys heritage

his bydying in this wild montain fanage.

With hym hys yeman And full noble preft

5176 In this hermitage toke habitacion,

With full greabill heritis in ther breste,

Ther being in fore huge afflication

long time and space with good deuocyon.

1 MS. "So." Fr. text, Alcz y done.

2 At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Hermites Robes full."

3 MS. "and and."
The worle all forsoke at that houred stound,
And full devoutly lived ther Raymond

Till ende approched, to mortall deth went.
But dais thre aforne full well perceuyng
Aboute lusignen to vew the serpent,
Where lande and rent Aforne was renonfing;
Whom moch peple ofte haue be feing;
To knowliche nombred mo then twenty
That of Melusine will hurde fay truly—

The time and ceason departing thaim fro—
That when the caftell change ther lordes hold,
Aforne wold fhe appere to fight, lo!
Thre days aboute thys faid caftell wold
Off fair lusignen, full beuteuous hold.
Wherefor many fain in ther willd reuell,
"After appArens, fhall haue A lord nouell."

Affray tho lorde of this faid caftell,
Which fo fair was, and lord of contre ;
That hy honour and feignory full well
Pefibilly in pce it hold gan he.
Tho fro Thouloufe made baronage & mayne
That Raymond with hym lad when to Rome went;
Excepte yeman and prest all home he fent.

Thai vnto Gaffray declared and told,
The trouth and verite faid thay outerly,
hou his fader an hermite was and hold,
And hou fro tham departed wilfully,
And hou his goodes parted gentilly.
Gaffray vnderftode, hys brother after fend,
All contre to hym gan he recommend.

world, and lived there devoutly

till his death.
Three days before his death, the serpent was seen going round
Lusignan; so that more than 20, who had well heard
Melusine say

that she would thus appear, know
that they are soon to have a
new lord.

Geoffrey was then lord of the castle,
and held it in peace. Then came
to him the barons whom Raymond
had dismissed,

and told him how
his father was now
a hermit and had
sent them home.
Geoffrey sends for
his brother, and,
leaving Lusignan
in his charge,
GEOFFREY IS ASSOILED BY THE POPE.

He departed for Rome, to accomplish all he had to do. It were long to tell all.

He confessed to the pope, and was very penitent for the wickedness he had done in his youth.

The pope assailed him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120, and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. Geoffrey promises to do this,

and says it is begun already. The

The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, and fill it with monks to the number of 120,
“yut the churche ye haue fтроed wickedly;
5240 Agan it to make ye mofte be diligent.”
“Sir, carpenters, mafons, yiftes shalh heut,
Ther fтate shalh remitte to our lordes grace;
More fairer shalh be then euer it wace.”

5244 “Hys refon," saide the holy fader at ende,
"For your brother foule ye be in danger
That ye cru-fedly1 bruled fo and brende
When thys mynstre and fchurch deftroed there.

5248 And yf ye of your fader lufe enquere,
At mont-farrat finde shall put man of fame,
Which noght long Agon toward vs he came,

HErmit is become, holy lif leding.”
5252 Gaffray vnderstode, with eyes wepte fore;
Off pope2 lene toke, to monte-farrat going,
Strongly rode apeace beily euermore,
Till the regiat way founde hym before,
5256 But Anon As he app[r]oched the montain,
Vp went he an-hy, finding Raymond plain,

HIs blisfed fayder which hurde hym Anon.
When hys fone he faw, grety reioying.
5260 After Raymondde wold have departfon,
But gaffray no wife wold be depterfing,
But said, ther wold bide the worle enduryng,
And that go wold quite fro the heritage
5264 And fro All hys barons homage.

GAffray was ther foure or fiffe dais tho,
his fader myght noght hym do torn no
wife,
But ther wold dwell hys life vsing alfo ;

1 Sic in MS. 2 This word is struck out by mistake.

The pope tells him he is in danger for his brother's soul, because he burnt him; and that he would find his father at Montserrat.

[Fol. 100 b.] Geoffrey sets off for Montserrat, and soon finds the highway to it. He then ascends the mountain, and finds Ray-mond. Raymond is glad to see him, but bids him go home again. Geoffrey refuses to return, and insists on staying four or five days; but at
last consents to return, and takes leave of his father.

Returning to Lusignan he calls his barons together, who humbly do him homage as their lord.

[5268] But when his father will gan aduertife,1 Thens to lusignen drew by good anife When of fader had leue take full lowly, No lenger fogern ther wold noght truly.

5272 When of lusignen the faire Cite hent, After the Barons fend he full wyghtly, Which cam Anon at hys commaundement, As fone As thay thes wurdes hurde truly, homage gan thay do to hym full humbly, holdyng hym ther lord moste fouerain pat houre To full huge ioy and ryght grett honour.

5280 The faid Abbay,2 beforon gan vndo. Ther fex fcore monkes aftabled certain, Ennobling the place ryght wonderly tho, huge lande and rycheffe endowing therto; Wher night and day monkes pray for his lord, For Meluline and Raymound of recorde.

5288 Within proffesse uifete hys fader anon, And gentilly hym quite at pat affemble. Raymounde leuyng longe; when to ende nyhed he, That the foule moste yelde being spirituall, (As well lordes gret as tho being small), R Aymounde to our lorde his foule ther yilding, Gaffray no lenger tary wold ne bide. For when his fader dede was ther faing,

1 MS. "aduerfite." 2 MS. "Ablay."
Vnto mont-farrat made progresse pat tide, 
hys fadres sepulture for to prouyde; 
Entered in Abbay of the monte-Serrat, 
That place augmented paffingly pat dat,

A and rentid gretly to the houfe encreffe. 
he was he, (you fay verray certainly), 
That euer ther was mofte chef of goodnesse; 
hit is thing pat man may know full lyghty;

5304 Ryght well his deuor Gaffray gan do fully. 
That doen, returned the mont-Serrat fro, 
le[n]ger wold noght bide, to lusignen went tho.

5306 Eedes regned in the marches tho; 
Sagilly hym ruled to intelligens; 
5316 In hys tyme full grett goodnesse gan he doo. 
In Cipres regned noble vriens, 
The Sarifins werred by huge uiolens, 
(Ny neybours were) put thaim to distrucc/0n,

5320 And off thaim made full gret occi/0n.

Vppon Sarrifins which misbelieued be 
Vntill pat thay were recreant to fce. 
Ther had no farifin but full fore pam dread,
So theim chaftifing ther will noght ne had.
Raynold was king of Brehaigne (Bohemia). His heirs reigned after him. Anthony was duke of Luxemburg.

5328 And Raynold also, off Brehaigne king, hys leyning regned ryght full pufantly. After hys hoires semblably wekyng, Regnyng after hym As men full myghty, 5332 And welle ther contre gonerned dayly. Anthony, the Duke of Luembrough tho, Many townes toke And Bourghes also;

5336 And tho which of tham descended liniall
In ther tyme full fair deedes gan to do, As well tho grette As tho litell and small. Raymond full cherisly was hold also,
The full nobill Erle of the Forette tho. 5340 Thes moche conquered of fondry regyons, And thay were of gret posseffyons.

Off thes brethren after ther hoires were
In many places of grett wurthinesse, 5344 And all thes brotherin full well gan tham bere, Huge contre conqueryng by ther myghtinesse, Excepte horrible, distroed was expresse,
And Fromont which brennyng gan purchas, 5348 Which welle wold haue do, but distroed was.

Off Raymounde issued All tho Aboue 1 faide;
Ther issue cries make, and ther armes bere;
And yut the Cipriens at ech houre d braid
5352 Alwais crying “lusignen!” awhere, And will whiles the worle will endure here. Thay were good knightes, waillant & worthy, Entrepreignant and affaillyng many.

5356 The full noble Erle of thaim gan descend, Off panebought in Englande enheritour, Which gret contre and lande hym fende.

1 MS. “Aboute.”
In Arrigon, tho of cambrere honour

5360 Off the firfte line were descended that houre,
And they cam and issued veryly;
Off helmas hoires off Albany

Issued thys line, Melusine tham bare.

5364 Fromount ther brother at mailers brend was,
And ther beried, the trouth to declare.
Gaffray the gentill lith in that place
In a tombe of stone portrayed thys space.

5368 Off noble Gaffray refte me now here sall,
And fay of hermyne the kynge roiall.

A Fair castell is hade in hermyne,
Which tho off Fairy both fourged & made.

5372 In hermyne the gret is it uerily,
As in this history told is and hade.
The Sperhauke caftell named is and rad,
Where it behounith to wacche nightes thre

5376 Without Any fompnolent slepe to be.

And ho accomplish in bat place it may,
A yifte may demaunde and it haue he sall
Such As hym lusfe to demaunde all-way,

5380 So demaunde noght hir body corporall
Which dwellith within, thys lady roiall.
Aufe hym ryght wele hir no wife desire,
For it Aualith noght hyr for to require.

5384 And in fompnolence be founde thyng any,
Ther finabily For euer ther sall dwell,
With thys fair lady ther fortake neryly,
Which gret loos and prys hath the foth to tell;

5388 That Melior was called fair and welle,
Doughter to Presine of the fairy lande,
As thys hyftory doth vs vnderstannde.

1 In the margin—erle of penbrok.
There was then a mighty king in Armenia, a fair knight, who undertook to watch three nights at Sparrow-hawk Castle. Intending afterwards to demand a boon. So lie did, but afterwards repented of his rashness. He therefore departed, and as for to wake ther behonyd he Which the yiff[t] 1 conquere of uarray fors fhold, Ther he said A wold wacche full nightes thre And after A yifte ther demaunde he wold; So gane 2 he do, repenting his hert bold. Anon mad his way Full preft and redy, Fro-thens departed with-out ref Any, declaring that if he found the lady Melior fair, he would ask for nothing but herself. Such was his foolish resolve. Thus came he thither on St John's day, and having remembered to bring his tent, pitched it there in the meadow. 

1 Fr. text, *le dan.*  
2 MS. “gain,” altered to “gane.”
In hys hand halding A pce of flefh dight, 
Wherwith t he sperhauke thought to feed full wele.
In this caftell faw on go, foth to tel l,
5424 A man clothed white, femyng of vifage
That he was to fight full ferre ron in age ;

Ther hym demandung wat thyng pat he fought.
he hym Answered, "thys here demaunde I,
5428 The couftome of this noble place wrought."
he said, "come ye, of goddes part an-hy !
In the way of it then fhall you put furely
Where ye fhall finde this folain aventure,
5432 Full strang vnto fight of ech creature."

Thys good man before, after went this king,
Ascending vp hy ther the grees all,
Fro the hall went more hyer in going.
5436 Full moch merueled thys hy kyng roiall
Off the grete richeffe apperyng in hall,
And of the nobleffe that in ftedes founde,
Gretly commaundid the fightes pat ftound.

5440 Th e Sperhauke at perche to fight difplaid,
Which beutenuous, fair, huge, and gentile was.
Thys full wurthy man Aform ther hym faid,
"kyng, vnderftand me here a litel fpace,
5444 Without flepe ye moft here wak in this place
Thys sperhauke thre days & nyghtes thre;
And ye mow noght, Alway here byde mofte ye.

Iff that terme ye wake and pat ye flepe noght,
5448 What-fo ye demaunde, of trouth haue fhal ye,
Off erthly things but not celeft wrought,
Excepte the body of thys lady fre ;

holding a piece of fleth to feed the sparrow-hawk. There saw he an old man, cloathed in white,
any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

[Fol. 104 b.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion. The

any earthly thing save lady Melior's body."

The king said he would watch, but he took ill counsel with himself. Then the old man departed.

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk. Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

he took a repast of what pleased him. Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,
HE EXAMINES THE PAINTED CHAMBER.

5480 Figured knights were enuironce,
With ther Armes peynted as thai shold be

To that resembling thes figures were.
Vnder ther names wrote with letters blake,

5484 Where the scripture faid right in thys manere;
In fuch A yere fuch on here gan to wake,
But he flepte and in fompnolence was take;
here of-fors he moste byding take and dwell

5488 As vs to honour and for to ferue well;

Where-hens thay shull noght depart veryly
Fro thes vnto the day of Iugement.
Thre places ther were appering to ey

5492 In thys chambre, had ful comuenient,
(Wherto every man myght his fight hent),
A certain Armes, And fuch a scripture
Vnder writen was fresly, be ye fure,

5496 Where this scripture faid full meruelously,
(In thys caftell here wrote with letters blake),
In fuch yere fuch on, the which his god hy
Caufed and made well plainly for to wake

5500 Our noble Sperhauke without fompnolence take;
Hys gift therfor had by full gret prudence,
And by hys good notable diligence.

Allfo thys chambre well depeynted was

5504 Ffro foote of wallure the ouife vnto,
Which deuided nacions hy and bas
And thes estrange regions all[-so].
Full uaillant and wurthy were thys men tho,

5508 Which noght ne went to fompnolent sleping,
But myghtyly And pufantly were waking,

1 MS. "Fort." 2 A mis-translation; see Note.
The king mused on these things till he almost slept; then fearing lest he should do so, retreated.

The third night he also watched; and on the fourth morn came the lady, clothed all in green.

And the gifts all therof bare Away.

Thys king in mufes ther was full strongly

5512 In the nobleffe of this catstell alway,
The almost he slepte, but not A-slepe fully,
For Alway waked he full belely.
The vnto demifie Anon toke the use

5516 hou he myght well ouermoche to mufe;

The king salutes the lady, who praises him and asks him what he will have, for she will only refuse him one thing.

[5520 Thys lady clothed with grene enuiron,
With lufty fresh colour after the ceafon;
For moft cheeffeft time was of somertide
That ther hys wacche gan fo to prouide.

Thys night worthily wacched hys perfon.
To hym amorn Appered full erly

5524 Full fuetly the kyng hir falute And gret,
Which was herty glad of hir good comyng.
She said hym goodly, "non myght ther no bett,
you will haue a-quitte As in your waking.

5528 rewarde and behold what gift will be hauyng;
Vnto you with-fay neuer shall hire me,
Sauyng And excepte only o gift be,

5532 Now demaunde and afke at your owne plefaunce."
"Graunt mercy, lady," the king hir gan say,
"Certes, fine fwete hert, non will this inftaunce
But your body;" then the, full of noisance,

5536 Hys gift plainly gan refuse And deny,
Sayng, "mufarde, folke, me shal not hae
fully,

5536 othyr yifte demaunde, afke, or craue; 2
For ye my body certes haue ne may;

1 In the margin—to say and vne-say is the propertie of a woman.
2 In the margin—mark what is be-twene truthe and vn-truthe.
For gold ne filuer it shall ye not haue."
he saide, "I will non other gift ye this day
Then your body, in guerdon to my pay.
I you here promise if it haue ne shall,
Other gift I will non demaunde at all."

She is very angry,
and tells him that,
if he persists, he
will find that
great mischief will
befall him,
for that he shall
lose his kingdom,
and his heirs shall
be disinherited.
He again says he
will have nothing
else.

"Fool," says she,
"thou hast lost all;
your trickery deceives thee,
and moves thee to
folly.

Thine ancestor, by
his folly, lost his
spouse. His name
was Raymond,
and he espoused
Melusine.

In the margin—true the, though ye was ento his payne and
into his heer endoynge.
The ring on finger fetyng of recorde,
5572 Which she had fo made nowhere gretter lorde.

The kinge Guy, of whom thou diiescended ert,
5573 Was my neucw, vnderftande thys cas.
Suftres the we be, y ly you noght at hert,
5576 Which for sinne and crime of the kyng helmas,
Our fader, pat we clofed hy and bas
With-in the gret Roche which he hym-felfe made;
Oth to our moder and pat broken had,

5580 Whych tho cawled was the lady presine,
In Gesian¹ no wife hold hir behold;
hir defire to kepe wold by no couyne,
And ther he hir faw ryght as I haue told;
5584 For that of hir and vs loft hath the hold.
And when enclofed with-in was fully,
In the Roche, As well As thought vs only,

5588 Our moder thersfor was wroth and malice.
Ther shee me made, by werkes of fairy,
This fperhauke to kepe in this maner wife,
And without euer to uoide hens truly.
But the For-takyng left to me only;
5592 That was the gifte that shee gat to me
In hir malice, wreth, and ill cruelté.²

A nd after shee gaff vnto Melusine,
My futter, which was A madyn ful fare,
5596 A gift to endur, neuer determine,
Whilis the worlde lafte neuer make retrair ;
The fetterday vnto A ferpent repair.
Off trough it is fo, like As I you fay ;
5600 Raymound breke his othe and loft hir for ay.

¹ MS. "Scian."
² In the margin— the losee off a Fayre lady.
MELIOR FORETells THE KING'S MISFORTUNES.

For his fholde not fe the fetterday nowyfe,
Folily tho faw, loft hir company;
Wherfor diftrefsed strangely, to denife,
he And hys line fille; never creffed hy;
Thys toke thay a fall yut to fght of ey.
Paleſtine my fuftre, youngeft to fnde;
Neuer creffed hy;
Thys toke thay a fall yut to fght of ey.

Gerys wordle hath endurance,
Fro thys hy montain neuer put Away.
Ther fhall warde and kepe the trefour in sub-
ftaunce
Off kyng helmas, our fader that day.

Thyf our moder ordained without delay.
But thys to conquere may non by engine,
But difcended be of kyng helmas line.

Ow knowith thys then, difcended ye be.
Yff that my wurdes underftande well do,
Meue ne ffore fhold no fuch aduerfite
As of my body hauyng wif you to.
That which your is noght ye will hold fo,

By pat you may come full huge ill and pine,
To you and to all youre of your line;

I doubte me ryght noght thai fhall gett a fall.
For tho fhall succede, after you command,
Holdyng your Rewme by fors of werre, and fhall
Enfecling the Rewme and alfo the lande.
And he which lafte fhall leue it, underftand,
Of A bexte the name fhall he be bering,

Which off all other is the brutall king.

Ryght thyf fhall it be, beleue it full well,
For certes off this I ly you no-thyng;

Her husband was never to see her that day, but he broke his oath. Palestine, my youngest sister, is in a mountain in Arragon.

There she keeps watch over King Helmas' treasure, which none but one of our lineage may win.

You ought not then to wish to have me to wife. Owing to this, you shall suffer great misfortune, and your successors shall lose their kingdom. The last of them shall bear the name of the king of beasts.

Thus shall it be. But for your folly, you might have
THE KING IS "ANointed" BY UNSEEN HANDS.

For, sir, ne had be thi foule corage fell,
And thy grett folay with thine outraging,
your unthristinelfe and curfed leuyng,
lo! ye fhold haue had benediccioun;
And now ye fhall [haue] malediccioun.

Then Melior vanished away;
and great mischance happened
to this king.

Part to you here, where that ye fhall haue
Such thing that ye percas fele now fhall.”
The kyng vnderftode fuch happe myght not faue;
But the noided thens er that it gan fall,
And unanifhed Away fro ther fghtes all.
I-now fhall he haue of fhamfull noifaunce,
Anon it happned to hym gret miscaunce.

Here fmeten was hanches and fides vppon,
Als vppon legges, armes, and hede.
To herd faft tho cam in concluifion;
his opinion 'right noght went in-ded,
Well felt the strokes on the chineffe bred.
All the fkyn tho was torn and to-ren,
Many strokes had ryght full violent.

"A las!" he said, "for goddis loue, mercy!
leue off me now, or truly am dede!"
Then thay put hym hout, the kyng Away fly,
Which fo well was Anoynted indede,
That no fleue ne pane had he hole of brede.
The kyng went hys way, hym-felfe auaunfing,
In the fair medew his peple fynding.

Ther hym demaunding hou pott he had do,
(For off his dedes ne knew thai no-thing);
Hou he had sped, And were wel wacched to
Without fompnolence or any flepyng,
MISFORTUNES CAME UPON HIM AND ALL HIS RACE.

Beforne this gentill Sperhauke being,
The kyng anfwerd without misfled fure,
"For foth," said he, "to my ille Auenture!"

TO disloge tham made quikly and lightly,
To fe cam anon, ryding A strong pas.
Into A fair barge the kyng went lightly,
he and hys peple ; no taryng was.

To vnarme hym the kyng made in pat place.
Wonderfull fortune had he in the fe,
But not-withstanding strongly rowede hee,

That in fhort bref time at port gan Arieue
At hauyn of Crius, into hermeny.
The kyng issued fro his nauee bluie.
long wold it be Al to rehers only,
But unto decline went he forth dayly.

Many tymes after cursed the day
That in Melior had put his loue ay.

Ereued it was by hys owne defert,
Saw he and his land fhold be differite,
Exile and deminate by his dedes smar. When fro the worlde cam in-to ending plite,
A kyng after hym regned in pat fite,
Which be half\(^1\) was wurfe in hys gouernaunce,
And nyne hoires after like wise in subftaunce.

Thay loft ther lande and all ther hauour,
Inclinyng and comying vnto mischaunce.
On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce pat houre,
So fro hermeny chaced in-to Fraunce,
Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sutfinace ;
At Parys died As happned the cas,
At the celeftines entered he was.

Hys dedes non enquire will take,
hys men clothed white,(As of this kyng fre),

1 MS. "behalf." Fr. text, la moitié.

They at last lost all. One of them came to France, died at Paris, and was buried in the Celestiu convent.

His men wore white at the
funeral; not black as men do in France. This is no jape, but true.

Which in fraunce were wont use clothes blake, It is no jape, it is trouthe to fee.

Clothes blake comyn thing vfed [be], As well an hundred perchones As on, Ther clerly perceived may it be Anon.

At hys enterment for hym fo was doo,

Wherof moche peple ther abafhed were; For that never before fain was to do fo; Wherfor it gan do certes wote I nere. Off Sperhauke castell the maner bene I here,

And begyn to speke of this damycell, The fair Palestine, somewhat of hyr speell.

Ow will I declare of fair Palestine, The swette, the curteys, gentile mayden fre;

In Conqs is slitte by carthy 1 engine Within Arragon, that noble contre, Where that hir faders trefour warded she At hir moder heft and commaundement.

ho it may conquere, take, other hent,

The lande of promission shal conquere. But pat trefour conquered shal not be, But of hyr line discended and born were.

A litell shal fay of Palestine 2 fre, Brefly and shortlly passe forth here will me; For the Cronike doth tretheth 3 this brefly, More farther wold go, mater finde might I.

Here fay and declare after pat hane founde. Of nouel things to our discipole

No-thing I fynd at no tydy ftounde.

Retorn shal Again to fair Palestine,

Which to that place deffented by Prefine;

1 Sic in MS. 2 MS. "Palestine." 3 Sic in MS.
In the hy montain Aboue-faid pe site,
Where many A cruell ferpent enhabite.

A Man may not into that montain go,
That men fhall not finde to whome for to
fpeke.
Many A knyght hath passed it into,
In fomer, winter, both ftourne men & meke.
But non retourned, ne myght thens to-breke,

SO As in scripture I may fynden right,
Off worthy knyghtes full many ther were,

Myghty, ftrong, fers, And men beyng light,
Thys faid gret trefour went for to conquer ;
But no-thyng myght thai no wife acquire there ;
In An ill hour vnto pat place went,

For neuer after Again retourn hent.

IN Engelande A knight, mighty and pufant,
Which of knyghtly were moche knew to
anauill,
A gentile knyght, was worthy and uaillant,

Which in knightly werke neuer gan to faill,
Army dedes gan do in plate and maill ;
A full goodly knyght, manly, debonair,
With wurthy knyghtes taught was he full fare

IN the hy court of noble king Arthure,
Where knyghtes were taught uertu perfectly.
Off Triftram-is line was his engendrure,
Which pat whilom had full gret feignory.

Aboute Arthure was yeres full thirty,
Off that Am not I untrew ne lefingour ;
He hurde fpeke and talke of this huge trefoure.
DESCRIPTION OF THE SERPENT IN ARRAGON.

Promeść ther he made to that montain go,
Which by manly strenght many things wold don;
This full riche trefour thought he conquer tho.
After he went into pat region,
And into the lande of promifion;

Thought vnto conquer all the hole contre,
With strenght of fwerde therto apointed he.

This knight was full good, manly, and hardly;
Ther-thens departed on A tewfday,
Into Arragon riding merily.
With hym was but a litill page on way,
No more felawfhip had hym to conuay,
So he went and rode hys iourne anon
That he arined into Arragon.

He Monte demaunded, men hym fhewed tho,
Where within had was A monstre hydious,
Merucloufly fers and orgulous to,
Aboue all other wormes moft perilous;
hys panche As A pipe hug and comerous;
Fro A caue noght meued by no gouernail,
Off hir unmete hugenesse is gret meruaill.

But on ere hath noght this monftrous geft,
Ne noftrelles non appering in hed.
Thys wonderfull and meruelous beft
Ne but on ey hath middes the forehed,
Which thre fote ny hath, wat in length & bred.
hir breth by the ere hath ther iffew outhe,
Wherof all the wordle ² founmeth all Aboute.

¹ MS. "pronifion."
² MS. "wordle." The translator was thinking of monde; but read "mount;" Fr. text, mont.
PALESTINE'S TREASURE, HOW GUARDED.

ALway in flepe this curfed cruell fend.

When that he rowted, thing litell or grett
In this said cane is felonely tende,
Where the ryght won was of Palesine fett,
Warding thys trefour by kyng helmas get,

By Jugement of hyr moder said.

The dore to the cane myghty strong was had,

With yren bondes at entre of pis cane,
Where this riche trefour hitte & made faft was ;

Which neuer was unhitte entre to haue,
For the warde had this monftrre in pat place.
To entre therby non durft for hir manace,
But ifued be of helmas linage,

Which aforne haue fai'd in my rude langage.

Thys lady prefine orandead alfo,
When to hir doughtres thes gyftes gif had,
Thys cane enmyydes thys fai'd montain tho,
Wher moche peple were to perifhing lad.
Of canes and ditches vnnder I-now made,
Full of serpentes, inly perhilous,
And with other places full meruelous.

Then ho wold it go, of-fors moft paffe by.
But neuer man pat place ne finde wert
That fogerne wold ther for thyng any,
But pat men thaim faw anon to retorn bent.

Thys mont had but a fory path to hent,
ful litell and firatte was it vnto fe,
To gon vp an hy ther had miles thre ;

Which behould go withete-out rest any,

For where man to fitte A place fhold not fe,
1 MS. "lone;" but Fr. text, la propre demeure.  
2 "fai" (?)
for there was no place to sit down except one sat upon serpents.

Enleffe vpon serpentes fate truly!
And Infinite was of thaim suche plente.
For dreed of that fende unhabite þe contre;

5816 Off thys strange monstre, declared & faiid,
Thys haue it founde in writing displaid.

N Ow shal come Again to þat worthy knight,
Which ther cam ryding A courfire vpon;

5820 Alone his uiage, fauyng A page ryght,
Thys good knight wythout reproche of perſon;
When thys montain approched ny to gon,
A good man be¹ fund enmeddis the way,

5824 Which to this montain hym gan he connay.

S O when that he was A mile of certeın,
Then vnto hym faid, “no nere will I go;
Sir, be-hold yande that lidious montain,

5828 lefe will I ne wyn ; fre knyght, go ther-to.”
The path hym fthewed wherby moft go tho,
Fro-when ² neuer cam Again here no wight
For foth at no day vnto mannys fght ;

5832 And yut hath ther be men mo then twenty.
hys gidour ne wold lenger fogren ³ plain,
Fro-then ⁴ deperted, retornyng wightily.
Thys knyght fo rode, he cam to that montain.

5836 Fro courfer lepte doû, hys page toke þe rain.
Firmely commaundynge hym fhold there abide,
Noght Fro horfbakke go till he cam, no tide.⁵

But, certes, for noght there Abide fhold he,

5840 Full well myght he lete hys hora to paſture ;
For neuer his maifter Again fhold fe.

¹ “he” (?) ² MS. “For whens.”
³ MS. “sogren.” ⁴ MS. “For thenes.”
⁵ At the bottom of this page is the catchword ;—
   “But certes for noght there Abide.”
This knight departed to this aventure,  
To god commaunding, blisshing hys figure ;

5844 Entring within this narew path pot stounde,  
That dais of lif neuer fuch on f[o]und.

Ryght will armed was thys noble knight,  
A good fwerd of stile in his hand holdyng ;

5848 Thys mont toke, narew and stikell to fight.  
An horrible serpentine he comyng,  
Towardes this knight, vpon hym rennyng;  
Trowyng hym deuour that houred inftaunce,

5852 With a yanyng throte gain hym gan¹ Auaunce.

That fine good cuftell that in hand gan hold  
Brandes the good knyght, uaillant and wurthy.

Hym to assail the serpentine full bold,  

5856 He As man fers Approched hir ryght ny ;  
With o foule fstroke the necke cute ato fhwifly ;  
The serpine fell don dede for all hyr ftrenght,  
Which worme was ny ryght ten hole feete of lenght.

5860 When the serpentine faw ther ded mortally,  
The montain gan take; vpwarde ftiety there,  
As man quicke and wight with all the body.  
Gayn him comyng faw A-pace A huge bere,

5864 Hym vnto assaille cam² with all power ;  
But of hym thought he to faill in no wife,  
With gret raundon cam to hym in his gife.

Fro hys fhethe thys knight drew hys good fwerd hard,

5868 As A mighty man, wurthy and hardy ;  
Shewing inly well he was no coward.

¹ MS. “gain.”  ² MS. “can.” Fr. text, vint.
The bear gripped his shield, and clutched at his shoulder, tearing his hauberk;

but he smote the bear in the groin, giving him a wound a foot long, and cutting off his snout, so that he could not bite.

The bear was very chapfallen at this, yet raised his paw against him again; but the knight leaps lightly aside.

With a back stroke of his sword he cuts off the bear’s paw. But it reared up, and clutched him with the other paw. Both fell together.

[ Fol. 112.]

Then the knight with his dagger cut the bear’s throat, so that it quitted its hold.

THE KNIGHT CUTS THE BEAR’S SNOUT OFF.

Vpon the child hym grypte thys bere tho ferely, On hys fhulder als hapned verily;

5872 Hys mailled hauberke broken and to-tore, Hys child vnto grounde drew hym before.

12080 By hys eyes twain of was it flering.

O hys good fwerd tho had mifter and nede, The beres gret groin tho finote he vponn;

5876 With hys fwerd fo gripte of fine manly-hede, Ther all finowe and groin finote he of Anon, More then A large fote, of recorde fo doin. Tho durft he noght charge As of his bityng,

5880 By hys eyes twain of was it flering.

THys beftly bere was paffyng old and fstrong, Natheles tho was heuly chernat; But not-for-that haufed hys pawe Alonge,

5884 Trowyng to hapne hym to rafe pat dat. But full wyght and light was this knight algat, Ther tho made A lepe wyghtly in traurers Fro this bere, which was fers, bold, and diuers.

5888 A bakwarde finote he with hys fwerde of stile, O paw of the bere of was there keruyng; On hys hynder feet reifed up that while, And to this said knight full ny approching,

5892 That with that other paw hym was cracing. All hys Armure he to-breke and tere, So both on an hepe fill, both knyght and bere.

B ut thys bere myght noght in no wife bite; 5896 Then at his gerdell Anon toke this knight A dagger full good, fourged of profite, Thorugh hys throte yaf A stroke with all his myght So that gretly hurt was this in foule wyght.
Then the knight cut off its other paw.

At last the knight smites it through the belly up to the cross-hilt of his sword. On went he slaying many serpents.

At last he reached the top, and drew near the iron door of the cave, which the monster guarded.

But he entered the cave in an evil hour; for he soon perceived the monster with its eye a yard broad,

which at once attacked him. The knight saw it come, but would not retreat, but determined to face it at all risks.

Then the knight cut off its other paw.

At last the knight smites it through the belly up to the cross-hilt of his sword. On went he slaying many serpents.

At last he reached the top, and drew near the iron door of the cave, which the monster guarded.

But he entered the cave in an evil hour; for he soon perceived the monster with its eye a yard broad,

which at once attacked him. The knight saw it come, but would not retreat, but determined to face it at all risks.
His fwerd fro fheth drew, this monftr e yafe fstroke gret e, 
But no-thyng was wurth the fstroke hir gan take; 
Wher with the bake or with fwerd egge gette, 
To this monftr e might no ght do hurt ne wrake 
With yer, ftile, ne tre, hon-so it gan make. 
Thys monftr e with teeth the fwerd ther taking, 
In moitees to Forthwith it breking,

Thys knight seem-ed no more in its mouth than a pasty in an oven. 
Thus died he, and it was a great pity. 

Thys knight fwolewed, in throte no ght pering 
More then doth A paftay in ouen truly! 
With full gret dolour in thys wife deing, 
Gret demage and hurt was it urely. 
For in hym was had huge hardeffe furely, 
For moche had doii of manly dedes fair, 
But nomore fhall do thys knyght debonair.

Thus was this good English knight devoured by this monster, 
and it was a great pity. 

Thys englith good knight was without focour, 
Which this faid trefour trowed to conquere, 
That whilom by days had gret honour; 
With thys monftr e was this denoured there; 
Gret damage it was of thys baiulere; 
For in hym was had full gret wurthinesse, 
Socour was ther non, but to deth moste dreffe.

1 In the margin—death of a noble knyghte [y]at was of sir [T]ristrams . . . . 
2 MS. “baiulere.” See Glossarial Index.
His page relates his sad fate.

No one ever got so high up the mountain as he did. His daring should be remembered, not lost in oblivion. No man ever went higher.

As wilfully gan do thys full good knight.
Too days hys page ther fogernyng fure
At the hill fote; after retornyyng ryght
Into Engelande ftreight; wher thys aventure
Declared to many a creature,
Which caufed to write therof thys history,
To ende that it shold be now in memory.

And thys ther he knew by A good deuyñ,
Which fomtyme was clerke Merlyn vnto,
Which ther dwelled, to life gan determyñ.
Vnto thys faid clerke ran all the worle tho,
For ther neceffite vnto hym gan go,
Wherof he wold fay trouth and verite,
For entirely all ryght full well knew he,

Like As hade be ther in propur perfon,
And had comyn ftreight Fro the faide mont-
tain.
This deuyñ was of good cognicion,
And a fcooler was of Tholoufe certain,
As witneffeith litterall fcripture plain.
Verily moche more then yeres twenty
Neuer ther cam man vnto hym truly,

But hym declared the trouth and uerite
Off all maner thing that man demaunde wolde.

[Note: The text is a transcription of the original Middle English text, with some modern punctuation and spelling for clarity.]
and learnt from him all the truth just as I have now told it you.

There was also a man of noble birth in Hungary, who came to this mountain; but he was not there long.

being very soon devoured by serpents; but he went not up so high as that other. Pity the English knight was not of the right lineage.

[Fol. 114.] He was descended from Tristram, and had assuredly won the treasure, had he been of the right lineage.

Then came a messenger to Lusignan, where Geoffrey was enjoying himself with all honesty.

A MESSENGER COMES TO GEOFFREY,

5988 For that the page with hym thought wolde be, Which subtile and fage was he manyfold; All truth and verite by hym was vnfold Of that I haue told, declared, and Fayd;

5992 By this notable clerke was it displaide.

Ther was on hade in lande of hungery, Which descended was of A noble line. Thys trefour to conquere thought he manly,

5996 But by hym may noght be it to termyne. To this montain cam this noble knight fine, The monte clymbed up ten or twenty pas, And ther taried noght no whiles ne space.

6000 Ther with ferpentes he denoured was, Nawher ny went vp As other gan doo. Many devoured hath be in that place, Non fhall that trefour conquere hym vnto

6004 But of the lynage be descended fro. Full heuy it was that this goodly knyght Off Englannde had noght be off that line ryght.

HE descended was off full by parage,

6008 Off Tristram hys line cam of natiuite, As the hiftory reherfith hys linage. Forfoth that trefour conquerd then had he, So of that linage above-faid had be,

6012 Full chiuahrous was certes at put day, Ferre and ny as any of thaim to Fay.

Tho it cam and fill in that ceason there, That A messinger passed forth tho by,

6016 Wher Gaffray with gret toth was in his manere At ioyous disport ryght full merily At Lusignen caftell with strangers many;
AND TELLS HIM ABOUT THE TREASURE.

To which egall fporte non the yere fhold fce,
6020 In gentile maner with all honeste.

With hym ladyes and damycelles fair,
Connyng, gracyous, humble, and benigne;
Gentile, womanly, and in debonair,
6024 In a fair herber to fport gan in-cline.
A meffinger cam; faw well by hys fyne.
Streith to Gaffray went, hym fair falutinge;
"Sir, ye be welcome," Gaffray hym fayng.

This meffinger connyng and gentile was,
Off hys mouth iffued fugred fwete langage;
Nouels demaunded Gaffray in pat place.
Aford ladys and damicelles fage.

He hym fette and told all the huge outrage
(Like As this boke reherfith here before)
All the dedes told off thys knyghtes lore;

Arnd whereto thys fers monstre doth repayre,
6036 Which peple hath diftroide fo many,
Myghty, fstrong, fers, bold, gentile, debonair,
And hou the trefour wardeth myghtyly
Off helmas, which was fo ryche and fo worthy;
6040 Neuer percieued non like off auail.
Gaffray full moche therof gan mernaill,

Off thys faid monstre werof he gan fpke.
Thys monstre to deftroyd faid he wold go,
6044 With-all the trefour conquere and oute breke.
Hys men made redy qwikly, no refte made tho,
Forthwith fend he hys brother Thierry vnto
To hym come, and cam; after hym fayng,
6048 The contre gouerne to hys retornyng.

Or thys Gaffray was of fers harde corage;
Neuer hys days wold he noght mary,

With him were ladys and damselfs
in a fair arboar,
Geoffrey tells the messenger he is
welcome,

and asks him the news. Then the
messenger relates
the adventure I
have just told you,

[Fol. 114 b.]
and tells where the
monster was who
guarded the trea-
sure of Helmas.
At this Geoffrey
greatly marvels,

and says he will
go and destroy the
monster. He
made ready, and
sent to his brother
Thierry to come
and govern his
realm.

This Geoffrey was
of a fierce courage,
208

and would never marry. Then he made over his land to Thierry, saying he should depart.

But he was prevented by sickness and age. Alas! had he lived, he would have had the treasure,

But when that he shold haue taken hyss way,
Gret sikneffe hym toke and age gan repair;
On his bed don with full grett feknes
Thys gentill knyght, stronge, fers, & debonair,
Which fo many gud dedys hath don.

And the lande haue hade off promission;
Iff god wold haue fend hym good liffe and long,
Conquered shold that holy regyon.
But deth sparth noght tho feble ne stronge,
With Gaffray hath take were other Among,
And to hym comyng A grett paffe with-all,
Ther making hym were dedly and mortall.

So unquiffled was by dethes gouernall,
Agayn hir noman hath fors ne pufaunce
Be he not fo stronge or of ryche auail,
Als well tho feble As strong in substance;
Non hath power gain dethis gouernance,
Be he Baron, Markeis, Erle, Duke, Prince, or kyng;
With hys cruell dart Gaffray fore fulming,
Full freight the stroke went ther vnto hys hert,
Where-of ther was had inly gret dolor;

1 MS. "wery;" Fr. text, guerre.
GEOFFREY IS BURIED IN MAILLEZAIS ABBEY.

For in peiters fhold haue be well expert,
6080 I-now good dedys don wold by labor,
Er that yere paffed any tyme or hour,
Churches make and found, which deuifed were;
Bothe landes, rentes, thought he morteis there,

6084 T O found and make noble churches gret.
Alas ! full dolorous to bildyng fhal it bide !
Neuer fhall thay be fourged, made, and get,
Where-of is pite in many A fide ;
6088 GRET heuinesse will it caufe full wide,
And ne had the will and the plefire be
Off our hy lorde, fittyng in trenite.

6092 Affray lith don ſike, ille touches feling,
Wyn ne vitaill reſcexeine may for fekneffe ;
Anon After the preſt weere fending,
Hys confessor come, hym gan to confesse,
And ther beforn hym made to fay a meffe.
6096 After ordained making teſtament
Spiritually, after hys entent,

When deuifed hade hys lay thynges all.
Then entered was at Mài더s abbay,
6100 Where a fair repair had he full roiall.
For of-new again made, it is no nay,
ryght As he had difтроed it all-way.
So by hym was made and furged again
6104 Of Maillers the church, with frefh werke folain.

Ther ligh[t], ther hys thombe put is and fett ;
The frenſh maker feith it faw he with ey.
Hys teſtament made, it myght be no bett,
6108 And what lefte ouer, to pore made pay truly.
So after paffyng to goddes mercy,
All were paid in hys owne prefence,
What-fo hym femed As in conſcience.
THIERRY SUCCEEDS GEOFFREY AT PARTHENAY.

6112 To god yild his foule, hym do mercy and grace, And of hys fynnys A generall perdon, For moch goodnese gan do in many place As fone As in hym was put refon, 6116 If lenger leued, more wold he haue don; He is now dede, what shall we then fay? That god hym pardon hys myfides ay.

THIERRY was tho A full noble knyght; 6120 Gaffray ther hym made hys enheritour Off all the contre which he hild hym dyght And that to hym pertained any hour. Thierry it hild, A noble gouernour, 6124 So he regned there, & in pertenay; Regned and gouerned pufantly.

But after thys by hys mariage, geuyng to on here, to Anoder there, 6128 So Alienyng part of hys heritage. yut noght-with-standyng god of hys power Causith the line regne yut without danger, At noble pertenay ther of sir Thierry 6132 Off trouth thai regne yut ryght worshipfully, 6136 Fro-thens till now durith the line alway In chinalrous knighthode vnto thys day; Noble good knightes, gentile, curtis, fre, Among all other hauyng habilite, 6140 Off whom a litill we shall be declaring, After thys boke finisf fhall and end. Goddes knightes haue be, ther trouth neuer falling
MEDITATIONS UPON DEATH.

For king, Duke, Erle, Markeis, Baron, or frend. mentioned that worthy knight, who caused this book to be begun.

hit wil Appered by that good knight hend
That thys boke began, of Partenay lord, Grett honour had in life of recorde;

HE that this boke made and gret parte gan do,
This knight died, in life had gret honour;
For noght man may do gain mortal deth, lo! The feble and strong takith the each hour;
Non hir escapith As by no labour,

Be it king, or pope, or lordes of landes,
All most nedis passe truly by hir handes,

That is the trewage of bodies humayn.
Al most by that path of fine fors to passe;

And that way compassith each foueran,
hou moche fro tham to hir haue, by or baffe.
Over-light she is euermore, alaffe!
Alas! she comyth wonderfull lyghtly,

Man feith not the hour ne hou he shall dy.

When she oppressith any creature,
More swetter¹ she goth then arew any,
Smittung man without wunderes faing fure.

When on hir thenke, my hert fogheth heuely,
And so here fhold do ech humain body;
Every man fhold doubt hir cruel hand,
For over-gret stroke yeuith with hir wand;

Firmely and stedfaftly redoubted fhold be.
Ho well on hir thenke, all disport will lene,
Thenking, musing hys foules fanete,
As will man as woman, to say in breue;

Ho wel on it thenke, fro ill will remewe.
In such wife gan do, I trow it, all-way
Thys fore-faid lorde of roiall partenay.

¹ "fwyfter." (?)
14 *
THE DATE OF A CERTAIN LORD’S DEATH.

One William was then Archbishop, and he well knew how good a man this lord of Parthenay was.

He died on the Tuesday before Pentecost, May 17, A.D. 1407, and was buried at Parthenay. [This date is wrong; it should be 1401.]

He lies in the church of the Holy Cross. He was very solemnly and honourably interred, be ye sure.

The day of his death was the very day on which the head of the blessed Saint Louis, king of France, was translated to Paris.

I do not mean that my lord died in

ON William was the archbishop hope tho,
Where of the name tho of Bifhope was wurthy;
At end knew full well wat thy lord had done.
He feing this lord good man was and holy,
And well governed the lande here worly
Till to finall ende he gan forth strike;
Which end was full good and ryght autentike.

The tewisday passed Aforme penticcoft,
The yere A thousand four hundred & feuyn wend;
Thys full goodly knyght yild tho vp his gofte,
No lenger ne might hym fro deth def fend;
To god behoud his foule yilde and rend
On the xvii day of the moneth of may,
And in erth lith at noble partenay.

IN church of faint crosse lith this courteis knight;
Ryght full wurthyly made hys sepulture,
And full nobly don As it ought of ryght;
Sollemplly was entered, be ye fure,
And honourabily all thing fourged pure
As it belonged lord and gouernour,
Both on lif And dede shold haue gret honour.

The heuy day of his mortall passing
Was the fame day, (to be faid properly),
That the sacred hed of the gloryous king,
halowed feint lowes, prince of frunce moft hy,
That terrestriall leued bleffidly,
(Which of men is faid feint in paradis),
Ther at that day tranflat to Paris.

But I say it noght As it to recorde
That in that proper day was noght don
CONCERNING JOHN, LORD OF PARTHENAY.

When to mortall deth went my noble lord;
For made and done was the translacion
In the yere of the incarnacion

6208 Off hed and of the glorious body;
And he long fith dede, dais full many;

B ut that day this feft firft honoured was,
Euary yere after, pe moneth of may;

6212 Sith on of tho dais deth gan he purchas,
As fernant fhold few, fo fewed his lord ay,
Such lord gift myght deferue hym to ferue alway,
An-hy in heuyns to his lord ascend.

6216 This of my good lord here now make an end.

O ff his noble fone, Iohan of pertenay,
Off whome declare fhall, his dener gan do.
By hym the obsequy well don that day,

6220 Enriched with light pertayning ther-to;
All-be-it had heuineffe also,
Wisdom behounith to lete go and paffe
Which that men mow noght amend in no cas.

6224 I Hold it no gret wifdlome ne fagesse
To ouermoche sufere forew and paine;
Who with dolour and wo the hert ouer-preffe,
Naturall fole is fuch heuineffe fuftain,

6228 When that he may noght it restore Againe;
Neuer wepe ne cry, neither fuch dole hold,
Forfoth doth noght well ne As the fage fhold.

A s to our purpos here will I repair,

6232 Touching our nouvel new enheritour,
Off noble pertenay Iohan the lorde hair,
Off whom spokyng haue here in langage our.
A worthy man was and of gret honour,
The fouerain lord of Mathefelon,
Which that is not cruelous ne felon,
But curtois, debonair, and vertuous;
Hyt apperred well by hys workes eche braide.
For he was gentile, fuete, and gracious,
Non ille wold he do, but fain wold all aid;
He is more fuetter then is any maide.
Off that he drawith after that laydy
Ffro whom he is discended uerily.

A more fuetter, humble, and amyable,
Gentile, debonair, fage, wife, and connyng,
Curtois, piteuous, and charitable,
Sche vnto the pore ful grete good doing;
So gentile, fuete, fre in hert was being;
For she was of tho moste blessed uerily.
Thai ben piteuous Among peple surely
as of tho which had grete necessite,
Both mistre and ned vnto fom goodnesse.
Full many therof raised vp hath she,
Fro pouertę enhaufed to rycheffe,
The which proceded of full hug nobleffe,
Off ryght grete franchise and hert piteuous
To focour nedy and tho famylous,
What-fomeuer doo, besemith hir goodly.
Mi lord therof hath fair begynnyng;
Alfo belongith, lo! properly
To tho of roiall lineage being,
And therof is he, I doubt me no-thing;
For of tho moste blissid issued and wend
Noght long Ago, and therof gan discend.
He cosyn vnto the hy king of fraunce,
By the which branche honour is hauyng.
Off kyngis is most noblest and pufaunt,  
Off All the worldle moste fouerain kyng.  
All rounde the compass though man be fekyng,  
In all the wordle fo noble king is noght.

As the kyng of Fraunce, certes, to be thought.

His cofyn is, in hys moder parte, truly ;  
And in faider parte ny kin, to deuyne,  
To kyng of Cipreffe and off hermeny,

And by the descent of thys noble line  
That beforne haue told of fair Melusine.  
Ny kyn he is to king off norway,^  
For of Melusine descended all thay.

Off tho knyghtes ben yut, lo ! in Norway,  
Wurthi and doubty, and ladies many ;  
Within this linage comprifed be thay,  
And knowyn overall ryght openly

That thay descended be of pat line hy  
Off lusignen, which is notable grett,  
Which fo issu'd, into yrlande gett,

And vnto many Another contre,  
As beforne is say'd by our gouernaill.  
Neuer line of told with them egall be,  
Neither to hur^2 such an^3 hug meruaill,  
Ne hys dais fhall neuer, without faill,

As ye haue hurde of lusignen children, lo !  
Deme ye in no wife that lefing fay you to ;

Trowe it ne suppofe dreme to be any ;  
Off uerray trouth it is a tru dreme ryght.

And ho fanye noght fain this faid hiftory,  
Vnnenethes will beleue this to be parfithe.

^ In the margin—norway kynge.  
^2 Read "hire" = hear; Fr. text, Ne oyt dire autel nouvelle.  
^3 MS. "and,"

He is cousin to the king on his mother's side; and, through his father, allied to the King of Cyprus, and also to the King of Norway.

For knights of Melusine's line still live in Norway, and it is well known that they belong to the Lusignau family.

A family was ever equal to this; nor can any man hear such marvels elsewhere as are told of Melusine's sons.

Think not I dream; or, at least, it is a true dream. Whose hath not seen
More Praises of John of Parthenay.

For foth thys history plainly shewith to fyght like As I haue declared you and said,
6300 ho-fo luft it rede, may fe itt displaid.

OFF Mathefelon the lord fourain,
To whom our lord gif gret ioy and honour,
Which of that manfion lord is certain,
6304 And of partenay, (refon is eche hour),
Among all other A gentile henheritour ;
In hys rule shewith A fuete creature,
Which that is of full noble nature,
6308 In he will not leue the boke he began,
Hys god fader, to whom god gif pardon !
By hym of it gret laud and preising wan,
For at this day, fo me aid god our patron,
6312 Meñ fhall noght fynd nawher fuchon.
I beleue that non this good perfon hate, lo !
I pray to our lord that he may wel doo,
6316 And he fhold be in fynne and crime by ryght,
Which that hym wold ille be purchaseyng.
To cherf unh every man laborith þis knyght ;
Iff he fe that he be good man parfith,
6320 No-thyng will hym wern þot he luft proclame.
Hym haue I fo hurd renomed of fame,

That Allexandre full wel name hym may ;
6324 By my feith, ner I fiupposed All-way
That men wold perhaps say I flatery,
For that in lif is he perfonally,
And thenke men fhold not preiffe other in
6328 For tham fhold preife \(^1\) ther werkys diligence

\(^1\) MS. "preife;" Fr. text, louent.
That thai haue done in time paffid euer,  
And speking, reherfing the dedes and fet  
Off tho which ben gon that no more may do neuer;  
6332 Certes men may well of tham speke and tret,  
here tell And declare all ther dedes gret.  
And when god will, men may of my lorde,  
In time to come, thynge off recorde.

Yut I hire moche speke off hys roiall estate,  
Off his nobleffe, gentilleffe, and off hys dede,  
Off his contenaunce and mayntenaunce algat,  
The which I hold of hys noblehed.  
6340 And full noble hold is off manlihed;  
For descended is fro so hy A place,  
Off kynges, Dukes, Markois full of grace.

When conquered ¹ haue and encherfed well,  
6344 For folth is A man of full hy parage.  
hys engendrure to declare and tell,  
Comyn is he off full noble linage.  
Among other hys wif gracious and fage,  
6348 humble, curteis, gentile, debonair,  
And ne mufith noght but all good and fair.

Ecery man feith, “well (As femeth me)  
To-geders assembled inly well be thai;  
6352 Entrelouing non better may be.  
In that aftat our lord tham hold alway.”  
Thys lady is of perregort, is no nay,  
Doughter to the Erle which pat is dede.  
6356 That mariage no mahyme to his kinred,

Or noble line is off Auncionte,  
6360 When charlemain had conquered truly  
¹ Rather read, “enquered;” Fr. text, quis.

and we ought rather to praise the dead; yet men will praise my lord in time to come.

I hear many speke of his gentleness, contenance, and demeanour; for he is descended from kings, dukes, and marquises.

[Fr. text, quis.

so that they are well met.  
This lady is of Perigord, daughtter to the late earl. His marriaghe is no disgrace to his kindred;

for she too is of a noble line. For when Charle- 

When charlemain had conquered all Guiene.
The hole erldome and contre by werre myghty,  
And all Gian, the contre enniron,  
That noble erldome old and auncion,

he gave it to one  
of his nigh kins-  
men, one of his  
cousins-german,  
who resided there  
till he diet.

[Vol. 120 b.]  
His inheritance  
gayed to his heirs  
maile. There is a  
place called Peri-  
gord (Perigueux),  
whence this lady  
comes.

She lacks nothing  
that is lady-like,  
but is gentle and  
sage. A very fair  
marriage was  
made between  
them.4

I pray they may  
have good issue;  
some heir to main-  
tain the noble  
line of Melusine.

1 MS. "wend."
THE AUTHOR THINKS OF ENDING.

6392 Of thy goodly house Als of partenay; 1
Off whom no more 2 longer will I speke,
Ne off Melusine whens she cam all-way,
Ne more of hyr line he will noght out breke,
6396 Ther-off my speche doñ and my wurdes eke,
Off that I haue ther-off founden in scripture.
And of hyr longer wold I haue spoke fure,

Iff more of writyng therof founde myght be.
6400 But more can not find in litterall scripture
Off thes creatures wrote of uerite,
Off whom haue spoke and told the Auenture ;
No more then haue put in my tale fure.
6404 And fin more ther-of I can noght propofe,
Of-fors mos'te I here take rest and repofe.

Now me behouith my shipppe vnto rest,
Sailles, cordes, And bonet put don.
6408 God be thanked, at port riuied in pe befte,
The fees dangere haue passed and gone,
The waves of fee ouer ron echon
By my iornaes fo thorought-out the fee ;
6412 Therof preife and thanke the hy Trinite,

By whom thy dite fouredg haue and made.
Thanking therof be to our lorde again,
By whom Romans and boke is to end lad.
6416 And yf Any man demaunde hou certain,
What me shal call thy Romans fouerain,
hit name the Romans As of partenay,
And fo fom it call certes at this day ;
6420 Or the romans of lusignen ; now chefe,
By you electe be which pat take ye will.
Name ye it fo As it may you plefe,
Here Anon Couldrette pese hym thal & stille ;

1 MS. "apartenay."  2 MS. "nomore."
his peace, saving
that he will here
make his orison,

(Fol. 121 b.)
putting it into the
form of a litany;
and when this
litany is done, the
book shall end,
and Couldrette
shall hold his
peace.

O Glorious
Trinity, Three
Persons in One,
One Essence,
Sovereign Ma-
jesty, that hast
made summer,
winter, and
all things,

Thou knowest all
our thoughts, and
the consciences
of men. Man
oweth Thee due
obedience, and
diligence in Thy
service.

Here humbly I
pray thee to have
mercy and pity
on this lord and
lady; and to suc-
cour them in ad-
versity.

6424 Os of this mater no more fay you till,
Sauyng for to make here hys orison
Now here prestently, As is good refon,

Puttyng it forth in fourme of letany,

6428 For all the noble line of partenay
Afore named; and when she truly
Shall be ended that haue comprised ay,
After thys prayer to take end al-way,

6432 Then all the hole werke is fourg'd & made,
And couldrette then in pes fhall be had.

6436 Threfold perfones knitte in vnite,
And on effence 2 etern, permanable,
Souverain magefte moste honourable,
Which fomer, wynter made by hys excellence,

6440 All thatt is and hath be by hys huge prudence,

6444 Off verray trouth knoweft ther confcience.
Man owith to the dew obedience,
Owith diligent be the to commende,
To thy seruice take As thaim to diffende.

6448 By good frendlyhed of thy deite,
here in humbly wife pray thy excellence
Off tham to haue mercy, grace, and pite,
Without tham shewing any violence.

6452 here in my dite haue put to thy prefence.
In aduerfite socur thaim alway,
That full noble feed of faide pertenay.

1 The Cambridge copy of the French Romance ends here.

2 MS. "enffence;" but see l. 6485.
INVOCATION OF MANY SAINTS.

Glorious virgin, Mayden, moder off god,
The fone of god with thy brestes brod,
Wurthily hym bare with-out werke carnall;
Which theophillus conforted principall;
Comfort this line pat noble is all-way,
Besides Rochell As of Partenay.

Saint Mychaell, Angell, and the Archangell,
To thaim be not strange, I you here require.
Cafte thaim oute fro all fendes of hell,
And tham condute to the heuinly empire.
Off god conueying maifter be entire,
lyn, wolte to usefte hane thay without faill.

The befech not strange be thaim to confail.

Saint Iohan, with finger shwdest I beleue
The deuyne lambe which was full precyous.
All glorius patriarkes in breue,
Tham ne me for-yete noght, ye glorious.
If I thaim for-gatte I were malerous.
Now if it you pleafe, me with thaim making
To Accorde vnto the mofte fouerain kyng.

St Peter, St Paul, and St Andrew,
All postelles of god, for your curtefy,
In obluy be noght this isfew
Fro-when such noblesse cometh vnto ey,
Sparcled into landes and places many;
That conquered haue many a noble place
By ther noblesse and chualrous purchace.

And ye, Saynt Clement, with-all feint
Denife,
Which all frendes bene to goddes hy effence,
your bodies haue offered by grett auiffe

Saint John the Baptist, that didst show men the Lamb, and all ye glorious patriarchs, forget them not.

St Peter, St Paul, and St Andrew, and all apostles, let not this noble line be forgotten that hath spread so far.

Saint Stephen, St Vincent, St Lawrence, St Clement,
DEFEND US ALL FROM THE FELL FIENDS,

St Dionysius, and all ye holy martyrs.

To greuous torment with huge tirandiffe,
6488 And all martirified, like or semblable,
Which in heuyns regne in joy perdurable,

IN the hy paradysce celestiall,
6492 Make that we be comprised eternall
Finably without any ende me to,
Where regneth the fader and the fone, lo!
And the holy gost in heuyns full hy,
6496 And shal for euer perdurabillly.

Saynt Silvestre, feint Augustin, your grace;
Saynt Martin, feint More, faynt Seuerine,
Saynt Cuthbert, feint Germain, feint Nicholas,
6500 And all confessours by rew to deuine,
Befech, in obliuy putt not thys line,
Off whomse treted haue in my tale and lay;
But out of bandes, good feintes, alway

6504 Thaim warde, put, and caft fro the fendes fell,
Which that comyth at thirde hour or midday,
(And more ofter then can fay or tell),
Fro hymnse to louneffe us to put alway.
6508 Make vs to haue pat folas euere and ay
Off the celestiall heuynly spere,
After wrecchyd lif worsy beyng here.

Saynt Mary Magdalen, humble and demure,
6512 I you here require with hautain noys fine,
With penfiff mufes of hert clene And pure;
Seint Agnes, feint Edith, feint katherine,
That it you pleafe to take the paine & pine
6516 To befske our lord, vs comuey and bring
Aboue unto the joy eueralfting.

1 MS. "to me to."
All ye friends of God, put away our sins. that we feel not hell-pain, but dwell with the saints in heaven.

Lord Jesu, grant that nothing may turn to their harm. Guard them from our adversary, and save us all.

Sweet Lord God, our Father, guard us from the fiend; grant that we offend Thee not, but may gain everlasting bliss.

Jesu, that shalt judge all, teach us the way of salvation, that we may praise Thee hereafter for ever.
AN APPEAL TO THE READER’S CLEMENCY.

I yield thanks, after this prayer, to God, the Virgin, saints, martyrs, and confessors, that I have now translated this.

I have done it in order, as closely as I could, almost line by line, saving that I have often had to change the order of words, as when men write Latin verse.

Whoever translates in metre, must do this, whether in ballad, verse, rime, or metrical prose.

Yet have I preserved, I trust, the matter unhurt, without excess or diminution, making it intelligible in our mother tongue.

Perchance I may have made an oversight, but

6548 To criftes moder, the Virgin mary, Seint Mihell, feint Iohan, apostellis that be, Martires, confessours, ech in ther deg[r]e, Virgins, seintes al, that this haue tranflat
6552 Fro1 frenf'h till englifh at this present dat.

As ny as metre can conclude seintence, Cereatly by rew in it haue I go. Nerehande ftafe by ftaf, by gret diligence,
6556 Sauyng pat I moft metre apply to ; The wourdes mene, and fett here & ther fo, like As of latin ho-fo will fourge uers ; Wourdes 2 moft he change fondry & diuerfe.

6560 Whilom pat be-fore put, And fette behynd, And oft that at end gretth 3 beft before ; So oft tranversing the langage me fhall fynd, Be it latyn, frenf'h, or our tonge to-bore.
6564 ho it metre will, fo do mofte evermore, Be it in balede, uers, Rime, or profe, He moft torn and wend, metrely to close.

6568 Preserving, I truft, mater and sentence Unwmned,4 vnhurt, for any excess, Or by menusing don by violence. Warded and kepte haue to intelligens,
6572 That will vnderstande And knowin may 5 be In our moder tonge, spoken in contre.

Perhaps by lacheffe, or by necligence, Our-sight myght caufe obliuion,
6576 Or parauenture do caufe and offence. Grety is it noght, hurtynge no reso,

By no menes of imperfection.
I trust to conferue mater and substance
6580 Greable vnto the reders plesaunce.

Also the French lines have fewer syllables than the English, so that two lines may be put into one; and I have sometimes done so.

I wold that both books could be seen at once, that if any man wants to count the lines, he might see how closely they are alike.

Sin at your request and commandement
This warke on me toke, it to fourge and make;
6604 And fo haue I don, after myne entent,
With litterall carectes for your fake;
Tham conveying in fable lines blake
CONCLUSION.

Directly along thys haue I to end,

6608 After my simpleffe so forth passe and wende.

Now all ye that read this, remember my simplicity; though this book is not painted (for I cannot flourish), yet excuse all faults that you may see.

Now ye all that shall thys behold or rede,

6612 As other han don by ther discretness.

Thought rethoriouly peinted be not in-dede,

Sin florifh can noght, yut, of your gentilleness,

6615 yut excusith me, befeech you hertly.

Explicit.
NOTES TO THE PROLOGUE.

Page 1, l. 1. The lines numbered 1—77 are, apparently, the original composition of the English translator. The passage is incomplete at the commencement. (See Preface.)

4. Iff aught here might fourge, If I might here accomplish. The omission of the personal pronouns occurs continually throughout the poem, and the reader's attention is here drawn to the fact, once for all, that he may readily perceive the construction of other passages. Thus, in l. 11, myght is written for I myght; and so again in l. 21, where aunter wyl me = I will adventure myself.

5. fauting connynghede, lacking skill.

8. Here we find the omission, not of the pronoun, but of the auxiliary verb; I not aqueynted of birth naturall = I am not acquainted, by natural birth.

9. MS. "frefhe," an obvious error.

16. president, precedent; i.e. the original French Romance.

20. The only attempt at ornament in the MS. is that the initial letter of each stanza is rather larger than others, and painted red.

21. aunter, shortened from aventure, adventure. The still more contracted form anterus (for adventurous) occurs in Lancelot of the Laik, l. 2618.

P. 2, l. 25. eche houverd brayd, each particular time. See the Glossary, under Houred and Brayd.

31. In consulting the very brief "proëm" to the "notable book" of Valerius Maximus, the reader will not find what our author here says he will; but some such passage may have been added in some copy by a commentator. The only passage in that author which at all agrees with the text is the following, addressed to Tiberius, which is certainly "notable":—"Te igitur huic cœpto, penes quem hominum deorumque consensus
maris ac terrae regimen esse noluit, certissima salus patriae, Cæsar, inuoco, cuibus caelesti prouidentia uirtutes, de quibus dicturus sum, benignissime founetur, uitia seuerissime uindicantur. Nam si prisci oratores ab Ioue optimo maximo bene orsi sunt, si excellentissimi uates a numine aliquo principia traxerunt, mea paruitas eo iustius ad fauorem tuum decucurrerit, quo cetera diunitas opinione colligitur, tua prsesenti fide paterno auitoque sideri paruidetur, quorum eximio fulgore multum cserimoniis nostris inclitse alacritatis accessit. Eeliquos enim deos accepi-mus, Cæsares dedimus. Et quoniam initium a cultu deorum petere in animo est, de condicione eius summamim disseram.” — Valerius Maximus; ed. Kempfius, p. 1.

The concluding words are just such as would tempt a commentator to add to his author.

36—42. What this stanza belongs to is not clear. It certainly seems out of place.

45. fantesied, fancied, imagined.
46. malique gostes, evil spirits.
50. valoure, efficacy.

P. 3, l. 52. miscreantes, unbelievers.

78. Here our author ceases to be original, and becomes a translator, ll. 78—210 being a close rendering of the Prologue to the French Romance. In order to give the reader a clear idea of the manner in which the translation is executed, the whole of the French "proëm" is given below. (See p. 229.) The philosopher alluded to in l. 78 is Aristotle, the first sentence of his "Metaphysics" being—Πάντες ἄνθρωποι τοῦ εἰδέναι ὑπερνοη-ται φύσει. All men by nature are actuated by the desire of knowledge.

P. 4, l. 84. The sentence, as here, is often left incomplete at the end of a stanza.
96. loos, praise. The French has los.
97. perceuale; see Tyrwhitt, Note to v. 13844 of the Cant. Tales.

98. lo! The reader will soon be accustomed to the continual introduction of this and other expletive words and phrases.

P. 5, l. 118. scripture, writing.

126. vurn, refuse to do; Fr. escondiroie (=shun).
135. lesigne; the final n seems to be accidentally omitted. It is generally spelt lesignen or lusignen in other places.
139. “I” seems required before “faid,” to complete the line.
141. iornay, toil; lit. a day’s work.
142. faire in the MS. should be fairie; see l. 148.

P. 6, l. 157. lose wil non hent, I desire to receive no praise. See l. 96.
162. "Since it (i.e. a rimed French copy) hath already been constructed and composed."

164. to fade, to set in order, dispose, arrange.

174. preuyd at dewiſe, executed or fashioned with exactness.

The Fr. has approyntez, from the Lat. approximatus.

178. saſz and Barry, a periphrasis for Salisbury. See pref. P. 7, l. 181. "He always spake, in all his words, to the same effect as the above-said books relate. (And I say) that book is compiled from three others (so say men who speak about it); and, indeed, as to its origin I know of no doubt, as I have formerly myself seen the substance of it." Such seems to be the general meaning of this vague and ill-constructed sentence, the like of which are only too abundant throughout the poem. Compare the original French (given at p. 233) which seems more intelligible.

191. "Here shall ye hear this history's labour;" historie is in the genitive case, the case being merely marked by its position; so also, in l. 192, we have castell strength = castle's strength; ye hore corresponds with the French vous orez.

200. "Clear well or true pillar;" Fr. la clere fontaine ou puise. Well answers to fontaine, but puise should have been translated well or spring. The translator was thinking of apui or pui, a support.

201. We should probably read The maker, of whom all liff doth enfew; but, even then, the translation is incorrect.

204. Require, pray.

The French proem alluded to at p. 228 is here subjoined.

---

[Adapted from the original text]
Et fi fait len de Lancelots
Ou quel Il y ot tant de los ;
De partenay,1 et de gauuain,
24 Qui neurent oncques le cuer vain
Pour acquerir honneur et pris ;
Ilz firencc bien aprins.
Qui voudroit fauoir et enquerre,
28 Et par la mer et par la terre,
les merueilleuses auentures
Qui aduiennent aux creatures,
Sauoir eft excellente chose.
32 Car tout ainsii comme la Rose
Sur toutes fleurs eft la plus fine,
Auffi eft francs2 la plus digne ;
Qui Riens ne feet .) Il ne vault Rien.
36 Si affiert a tous hommes de bien
Denquerre moult fort des hystroyes,
Qui font de longtaines memoires ;
Et tant eft plus de hault degre,
40 Doit Il, [de] degre en degre,
Sauoir dont Il eft deffendus.
Soit Roy (. ) Baron, Conte, ou Ducs,
Sy que memoire longue en foit.
44 Tout grant feigneur faire le doit.
Et en faire ecritre hystorye,
Affin quen telle foit memoire.
Pour tant len dit que vng grant feigneur
48 De poitou, (a cui dieu croiffe honneur !)
Nomme fire de partenay,
Auquel tout droit lay aßenay,
Me commanda, na pas granment,
52 Et de fon propre affentenient.3
Commandement anoit Il bien ;
Si ne lescondiroie de Rien ;
Car chacun fcet et peut veoir,
56 Quon doit a grant feigneur obeyr ;
Qui ne le fait, Il neft pas faige.
Sy me dit eu fon doux langsage,
Que le prynisse lexemplaire
60 Du fien liuret quauoit fait faire ;
Et, de fait, Il le me bailla,
pour en fauoir moult qui en tailla
Lusignen le chaffet nobile ;
64 Auffi qui fift faire la ville ;

1 parceal (?)
2 Sic in MS. Mis-written for "science."
3 MS. affentenement.
Car ceft vng trefmerveilleux fort.
Lors Respondy, "Ie my accord,
Monfeigneur, a vostre plaifir."

"faictes" dit Il, "tout a lofir,
Car toute eft vostre La Iournée.
Le chafteau eft fait dune face,
Sycomme eft par tout Retrait,

De laquelle Ie fuis extraict,
Et moy, et toute ma lignie
De partenay ; nen doubtez mye.
Mellusine fut appellee

La face, que vous ay nommee ;
Dequoy les armes nous portons,
Parquoy fouuent nous deportons ;
Et affin qu'il en foit memoire,

Vous mectray en Ryme hyftoire ;

Car Ie vueil quelle foit plus
Renommée.”

"Las dit, monfeigneur ; Ie loctroye ;
Toujours vostre plaifir feroye,
Se faifoit a ma voulente ;
Ne Ia nul Iour Ie ny fauldray.
Ie le feray a mon pouoir,

Mais pas nen vueil le loz auoir,
Se loz y a ; car autrefoiz
Elle a efté mife en franchois,
Et Rymee, ficomme on compte ;

Pourquoy ce me feroit grant honte
De moy vanter de ceftui fait,
Mais a mon pouoir Ie feray
Tant, fe dieu plaift, que le mectray

Dautre forme, fe la y lofir,
Qui mieulx vous vendra au plaifir,
Quant lautre pas bien ne vous haitie ;
Et que vous plaift que Ie le mecte

Selon les liures quon trouua,
Dont liftoire on approuua,
Et affin que on labregon.
Dedens la tour de manbregeon

Deux beaulx liures furent trouuez,
En latin, et tous approimtez,
Quon fift translater en francois
Et puis, apres cinq ou fix mois,

Comme celle hyftoire Amery,

1 mectrez (?)
Le Conte de falebry,
Dun liure quauoit du chaftel
Qui tant par eft et fort et bel ;

Car Il parloit en tous fes dis,
De tous les fais que Ie vous dis.
‘De trouez fut vostre liure extraict,’
Ainsi le dit Il et Retraict,

‘Et fe querez comme le fceu,
Ceft par ce quautrefoiz lay veu.’
Sy mectray toute ma puifance
De le mectre en bonne ordonance,

Au plaisir du doulx Theucrif.”

Monfeigneur refpont,1 “ceft bien dift.”
Lors prins congie de monfeigneur,
A qui dieu doint loye et honneur !

Et men vins tout droit au chaftau
De lufignen, qui tant eft beau,
Dont vous orez briefment lyftoire,
Mais quil plaife au Roy de gloire

De men donner le fentement,
Sans lequel on ne fait nyent,
Soit en francois ou en ebreu ;
Tout fciency vient de dieu ;

Ceft la clere fontaine ou puife,
Tout faifeur le fait quil audeffe.
Se 2 luy vient tout le bien quon pence,
Nul na de dieu fi non feiency.

Se 2 luy Requirers de ceur entier
Qua cest befoing me vueille aident.
Et la trefglorieufe mere
Vueille conduire cefte matiere,

Afin que Ie puiffe acheuer
Cefte euure que Ie veuI Reucler,
Au bon plaifir de monfeigneur,
A cui dieu doint ennuyt bon Iour,

Et en fa fin la Ioye fine !
Ainfi nostre prologue fine.

1 MS. “Refent,” with “refpont” written above it.
2 De (?)
NOTES TO THE POEM.

P. 8, l. 4. Here, as in l. 523, we find in the MS. "hie and has." But other passages show that it should be "hie and bas," i.e. high and low.

6. *astronomie* here answers to what we now call *astrology*, which is also its meaning in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 432.


8. *right Canoun*, canon law; as explained by the Fr. *droit canon*.

10. *I-now*, enough.


P. 9, l. 31. *machon*. The Fr. has *machonnee*.

34. *columbere*. The Fr. has *coulombiers*, a proper name.

36. According to De la Mure, this "earl of Forest" was Guy, first of that name, Count of Lyon and Forez, who, by marriage with Sibille de Beaujeu, had several children (see l. 37), among whom were three sons; viz. his successor, Guy II., Guillaume, who became a monk, and Raymondin. Raymondin is the hero of the present romance, and was named after Raymond de Viennois, his grandfather. De la Mure, p. 489. For a long discussion of the names "Forez" and "Beaujeu," see p. 8 of the same work. The arms of the earls of Forest were gules, a dolphin, or; a drawing of them is given at p. 152 of De la Mure.

45. "Who heard this news at that time;" lit. *interval*.

49. That "traying" is an error for "tarying" is proved by the French, which has "atargier," one of the forms of "atarder."

51. *sayn*, seen.

52. *he send*, he sent to.

P. 10, l. 77. "For such learning I shall instruct him in and teach."

80. *on your plesire*, at your pleasure.

P. 11, l. 98. *thaught*, taught; Fr. *enseigne*. Probably mis-written. See l. 76.

114. "Raymond after this, against his (own) will, did slay him; cast stone-dead to earth, he must incline to death." The French has,

"Car Raymondin si le tua,  
Et mort a terre le Rua."
P. 12, l. 137. *sewing,* following.
140. "Where there came to him then great mischief and terror."

144. *thaim to,* them two.
P. 13, l. 152. The speaker is the earl. The French has, "Lors dit a Raymon, venez ca." See l. 158.

163. *an hie,* on high.
P. 14, l. 178. *thought,* though. So in l. 6611.
189. *an hie,* on high; Fr. *en hault.* See l. 163.

192. *profile.* The Fr. has *peril;* but the English gives the better sense.

197. *sothlese,* truly. It might seem that the earl is expressing a wish that the "strange adventures" were "untrue;" but other passages go to prove that the writer actually commits the mistake of making *sothlese* mean *truly.*

203. *for ille doing,* i.e. in return for ill-doing.
P. 15, l. 207. "I shall declare to thee."
217. *and shall,* and shall come to pass.
219. *a foote,* on foot.

220. MS. "a." Perhaps "at" should have been written; for the spelling *a* may be due to the French, in which *a* here occurs. See l. 223.

228. *in that other party,* on the other side; or, for his part. Fr. *dautre part.*
P. 16, l. 244. "And when that came to pass, the sword went adown;" i.e. glanced aside. See l. 249.

247. One of the "*hym*'s is redundant; viz. the first.

251. The translator has here made several mistakes, and considerably injured the story. He makes the earl die by the boar's tusks, and so all Raymond's subsequent self-reproaches are out of place. The French version is that Raymond's sword glances off the boar's back and cuts Aymery's body open, so that ll. 255—258 refer to Aymery, not to the boar. After this he "withdraws his sword," and again striking at the boar, succeeds in killing it at once. The German version is much better. According to this, Aymery aims at the boar with his spear as it is rushing at him, and slightly wounds it, but is himself thrown down. Raymond, coming to the rescue, seizes the earl's spear, and thrusts at the boar; but the spear, glancing aside, pierces the earl's body. Raymond immediately withdraws the spear, and with a second thrust kills the boar; and then, turning to the earl, finds him already dead. See Tieck, Schriften; 13 ter band, s. 75; and the "Volksbuch" version.

Perhaps, however, the English *prose* romance tells the story best of all, viz. as follows.

"[1]N this part Recounteth thy story that whan Raymondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe hym that he should not
hurte his lord, the bore anoone hurted 1 to hym and ranne fast
toward the Erle, whiche seeyng the wyld bore comme, lefte his
sward and toke a short spere and strayght held it downward
before hym. And the Erle that knew & wyst moche of the chasse
broched the bore througe the brest, but the Erie felle doun on
his knees. And thanne Raymondyn holdyng hys swerde in his
hand came toward the bore, and wold haue smytte hym betwene
the four legges, For he leye vpson, the bely vpward; and
suche a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore that the blade of hys
swerde brake so that the poynte of it sprang aynst the Erlis
stomak & wounded hym sore in so inuche that he deyed ther-
of."—fol. 12 b.

266. As any on this side of Rome. The Fr. text has de cy a
Rome, a proverbial phrase for everywhere. Compare "hethen in-
to grece;" Allit. Poems; ed. Morris; l. 231 of "The Pearl."

P. 17, l. 274. The Fr. text has, Tu nas compere ne commere,
which is not very clear.

279. Apparently this means, "In thee (is) no will (to) strain
to help greatest or least." The French simply says,

En toy na Ryme ne Raison.

291. rewardyd, regarded.
P. 18, l. 304. The sense is, "But cursed be the hour when I
was born, or (the fact) that I, living, so long keep (my) wretched
life." Worly stands for worldly; i.e. born into the
world.

323. Fr. La fontaine de soif Iolye.
324. The MS. reading canne is an obvious blunder for came;
Fr. text,

Quon dit qui vient de faerie.

P. 19, l. 343. goodlokest; lit. goodliest; see Glossary.
345. gayn night, towards night; Fr. "au foir." Where =
whether.
354. say, essay.
359. fantesie; the Fr. has "fantofme."
359. where, whether; as above; so again in l. 384.
P. 20, l. 386. his; read thys, i.e. thus, as in l. 297.
P. 21, l. 393. astate, estate. Fr. eftat.
403. that instance, then; an expletive expression, metri gratiâ.
405. Ameruelled; Fr. efmerueillies.
407. The MS. has simply You named but. The translator's
copy may have been at fault here, and hence even this half line
may have been written by guess-work. The French is clear, the
passage running thus,

1 Sic in MS. We should have expected to find hasted; but see hearter, to dash,
in Cotgrave.
Et, par ma foy, Ie ne congnois mye
Vostre nom, ne vostre philosomye,
Ou Iaparcoy fi grant beaute.

The word "philosomye," in which the l is written over a long "f" lying beneath it, is obviously intended for phisonomye, i.e. physiognomy, spelt visnomie by Spenser, and fisnomie in the Promptorium Parvulorum. I have no doubt that l. 407 should end with this word, but it is difficult to connect it with You named but.

411. recouer; Fr. reconouer.

P. 22, l. 425. reioyng, rejoicing, i.e. rejoicing. There are other instances of similar strange spelling in the poem, and it must not be altered to reioyng.

427. How she might know his name.

442. tarie is an error, the Fr. not having tarie, but taire. So too, in the next line, me is an error for ne; the sense being, "I may no-wise keep silence, so as not to ask you the truth."

Mais Ie ne me pourroye taire,
Que ne vous demandaffe voir.

449. you counsel, I counsel you.

P. 23, l. 452. of wordly (= worldly) goods; Fr. des biens.

453. light, lieth.

459. And do not fear that I am not on God's part, (and that) I believe not in His miracles.

472. I firmly believe.

479. unto devise, a mere expletive phrase. It is not in the French, yet is imitated from the Fr. à devise = so to speak.

482. withsaing; cf. gaynsaying in l. 485.

P. 24, l. 487. That the MS. betaking is an error for be taking is shown by the French,

Que me prendrez a mariaige.

488. leuing, life. Fr. vie.

P. 25, l. 520. werne, refuse.

522. aplas, in place.

523. The MS. has is a blunder for bas; cf. l. 540, "hie and lowe;" and l. 2735.

528. that honred tyde, that time; a mere expletive, like that stounde in l. 532.

P. 26, l. 548. rescueyned, received. Wherever this word occurs, it is written so as to look like "refteyned," owing to the practice of the scribe in making "fc" resemble "ft," and "u" resemble "n." But the French decides the word in all cases, as it employs the verb receuoir.
552. *the Erle last post*; i.e. the late earl; Fr. *derrain tres-
passez (sc. de la vie)* = lately deceased.

557. Make deeds thereof, (and let) the cause be thereon, (that men) may see the reason of the lord’s gift.

There should have been a comma after the word *mak*.

574. And afterward betake you to your return; a periphrasis for, afterwards return again; cf. l. 563. The French has,

Et puis vous mettez en Repaire.

P. 27, l. 579. MS. “finde” is an obvious error for “finde.” Fr. *trouerez*.

584. *do it to remayn*; here *remayn* is an Anglicized form of the Fr. *ramener*, and the phrase means, extend it, drag it along towards the valley, along the stream which issues from the fountain. See l. 725, note.

Ame du fort ne laccusa,

i.e. No soul accused him of the event, i.e. of the deed.

616. The Fr. text has *bacheler*.

618. *hym*, like *his* in the next line, refers to the late earl.

625. *he*, sc. the late earl; see next line.

In the MS. *myght* is mis-written, being copied from the line above. It should be *nyght*; as the Fr. has *la nuyt*.


P. 30, l. 671. *lady lore*, lady’s teaching; so again in l. 705.

691. *lete make*, cause to be made; a common expression.

P. 31, l. 694. Fr. *seel*, which justifies the correction.


720. The MS. has either *pam*, or *pain* with the *i* undotted; at l.
724 the word is pane. In both cases a better reading would be pale, for the Fr. has in both places pel, which = Lat. palus, a pale, a stake. Tieck also has "einen Pfahl."

P. 32, l. 725. The English version has missed the sense.

Puis lont emporte contre val,
Car Il tenoit trop au pal;
Tont du long vng Rousseau fourdit,
Dont chafeun forment fel bahit.

Then they bare it towards the valley, for it kept too close to the stake. All along beside it a rill welled up, whereat every one was much astounded.

728. stoned, astonied.
P. 33, l. 755. The insertion of I seems necessary to the metre and sense. Fr. "Car vrayement Ie le vouldroie."

759. Raymond answered to the count; thus the Fr. text, and this explains ll. 761, 762; but in l. 760 the translator has forgot-ten who is speaking.

762. if your lord wyll, if the Lord will; Fr. se dieu plaist.
765. thrust, (sic) thirst.
768. wel thauht, well taught. Fr. senez, which means sage, prudent.

778. The Fr. is less obscure.

Il ne sift peu
Quil nait demande au corps gent
De la dame, dont tant de gent
Comme il veoit, pouoient venir;
"La ne vous en fault efbahir,"
Dift la dame, "tous font a vous."
A donc leur commanda a tous
Que comme feigneur le Reeoinent,
Et si font Ilz ainsif quilz doient.

784. Here again, as in l. 548, "refceiu" is written so as to resemble "refteine."
P. 31, l. 788. demurly in audience, in a low tone. Fr. dit tout bas, bien coyement.
791. resoned, copied from the Fr.

A donc la dame la Raisonne.

796. Fr. text,

Raymon dit, "Je suis prest fans faille."
La dame dit, "Il fault quil aille,
Raymondin mon frere, aitement;
Nous le ferons honnefement.
NOTES TO THE POEM.

P. 35, l. 829. *ryght doubted and shereful*, much dreaded and dear; Fr. Ma chiere dame Redoubtee.

P. 36, l. 850. The MS. has here a curious mistake, viz. "fo" instead of "of;" Fr. *de due*. The word "of" has first been inverted so as to become "fo," and then mis-written "fo." Another instance of similar inversion occurs at l. 1007, where *beded* is written for *bedde*. So again, l. 946, *for for fro*; l. 949, *presone for persone*, &c. See Preface. Such errors might easily occur in printing, but in a MS. they are very remarkable.

P. 37, l. 879. *ryn*. Fr. *Bain = Bord d'un bois, extrémité (Roquesfort).

881. And in their kitchens saw they great smoke too.

896. Fr. text,

Le Conte leur salut Rendit
A chascon, pas ny actendit,
Felon qua luy appartenoit
Et du lieu de quoy Il venoit,
Aux grans plus, & aux petis moindre,
Bien fet a chacun salut Rendre.

Thus l. 898 means, according as appertained to the man saluted, on account of the place whence he came.

P. 38, l. 929. What would ye that I should say? Fr. Que voulez vous que je vous compté?

P. 39, l. 943. *messe*, mass.

946. *for*; we should certainly read *fro*. See notes to ll. 266 and 850.

949. *persone*, Fr. *personne*; the MS. error is due to the word *present* following.

955. On the other side of her, a prince of the country, &c. Fr. *Et vng prince de la contree.*

965. *brouth*, an error for *brought*; Fr. *Les mes portent les escuier.*

968. The French text somewhat varies here from the translation. It runs thus,

Vings damyon & vings de Rocelle,
Qui font eschauffer la euruelle;
Vins de tornais, et vins de bea[un]ne
Qui nauoit pas la couleur Iaufue,
Clare Romain et ypocras
Y Courut par haut et par bas; 1
Vins de fainct Iehan dangely,
On tenoit grant compte de luy;
Vins estables, vins de viart,

1 read "eschauffer."

2 The Cambridge copy of the Fr. text has here lost two lines, judging by the English version.
NOTES TO THE POEM.

Thus, for Angoy (Anjou?) the Fr. has amyon (Amiens). Bewme = Beaune, near Dijon; Tourinmz = Tours; digou = Dijon; Auxerre = Auxerre; Seint Johan of Angely = S. Jean d'Angely, in Poitou; estables may mean a village of that name, lying on the W. side of the Chaine du Vivarais. With regard to the Clarre Romain, it may be noticed that Romanée, in Bourgogne, is celebrated for its wine. Seint pursain = St Pourcain-sur-Allier, in the department Allier.

We should compare with this the passage from the "Squire of low degree," where a list is given of the amusements prepared for his daughter by the king of Hungary. See Warton; Hist. of Eng. Poetry, vol. 2. p. 10.

P. 40, l. 992, went to glad, went to glade? i.e. set? Fr. text,

Les Iouxtes Iusquau Iour durerent,

which must mean, the justing lasted as long as the day did; for they next "went to even-song."

P. 41, l. 1002, of whom, i.e. of which; this is worth notice.
1005, streight, was laid straight.
1006, bedde; the MS. has beded; cf. note on l. 850.
1010, body; this is certainly a blunder for bedde, since the Fr. text has Le lit; besides, the custom was to bless the bed. See Chaucer; Merchant's Tale.

1024, outred, uttered.
1030, But (you) must hold that oath which (the) first day (you) made (to) me.

P. 42, l. 1035, Be, read He; in the next line of linage = of what lineage. We might read, "And of wat linage," with improvement both of sense and metre.
1045, pannes, pains. So in Lancelot of the Laik, l. 1273,

Now leif we hir In-to hir newest pan.

1050. Before the next line Fol. 25 b is prefixed, whereas the last fol. was numbered Fol. 24. This is because two leaves have here been pasted together, Fol. 24 b and Fol. 25 being thus hidden. By holding the book up to the light many words can be seen, which prove clearly that on fol. 24 b and fol. 25 is written

1 The Cambridge copy of the Fr. text has here again lost two lines, judging by the English version.
NOTES TO THE POEM. 241

by mistake a passage which should have come later in the poem, and which is re-written in its proper place on fol. 41 b and fol. 42. There is therefore nothing here lost, and the narrative is continuous, as the Fr. text also proves. In attempting to separate these pages, some person has slightly torn the corner of fol. 24, so as to destroy the e in plegge and the t in trouth in l. 1049, defacing also the last word in l. 1050; be it non maligne is therefore suggested, in the sense "be no-wise ill-disposed to me," the word maligne having already occurred at l. 46 of the Prologue. The Fr. text has,

Dame, dit Il, je vous pleuis,
Que tant comme le feray viz,
Ne faullieray le couuenant.

1059. hold, MS. bold; hold is of course the right reading, as the Fr. has tenez; cf. also l. 1056.

P. 43, l. 1072. And to (the) ladies which that men (had) brought, &c.

1081. forcelet; this should be spelt forceret, the wrong spelling being due to confusion with formelet in the next line; forceret means a casket. Also your in the MS. is a mistake for yuor, ivory (Fr. youire); this is yet another instance of the inversion of letters; see note to l. 850.

1082. formelet; this again should have been spelt formelet. The Fr. text has fermoil, which is also sometimes written fermeillet or fermillett. It means a chain, agrafe, or carcanet.

P. 44, l. 1101. drust, durst.
1106. sate, he sat; where he means Raymond—

Car Il ne voult pas couroucier
Raymon, qui fuft fur vng coursier;
Congie prent, &c.

1113. had = there were; Fr. y auoit; cf. l. 1127.

P. 45, l. 1122. Fr. on peut bien feauoir fe le ment.
1125. quicke Roche, live rock; Fr. viue Roche.
1132. the contray, i. e. the people of the country.
1139. She named the castle Lusignen after the latter part of her name; in l. 1199, we have mention of the town of Mel, corresponding to the former part of the name; but see note to l. 1146.

1142. The Fr. text omits all mention of Ciprian, and merely says,

Encore le Roy a presen
Crie en fon cry, lufignen.

But the statement is verified by the Fr. of l. 5351.

1146, 7. The word sautilh in the MS. should be sautilh = lacketh
Mellufme autant dire vault
Comme merueille qui la ne fault.

This seems to imply that Melusine is equivalent to merveilleuse; but it is hard to follow this etymology. In l. 1139 is mentioned Lusignen as being named from the latter part of her name, and in l. 1199 is mentioned the town of Mel. Hence M. de la Mure suggests (p. 489) that the derivation should be reversed, and that the name was compounded from the two chief places which she possessed, viz. Melle and Lusignan. But he adds in a note; “Cette étymologie du nom de Melusine n'est pas la seule que l'on ait imaginée; Bullet n'a pas oublié d'insérer dans les Memoires sur la langue celtique, ce mot, qu'il fait venir de Mé, moitié, et Lisowen, anguille; d'autres auteurs veulent que Melusine soit une altération du nom oriental Mélesinde.” More probably it is the same name with Millicent. The prose romance says, “Ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek langage is as moche for to say as thing meruayllous or conmyng fro grete merueyle.” (fol. 37.)

Apres ce temps elle fist faire
Le bourg ou a moult beau Repaire,

i.e. the fort where there is a very good place of retreat = the fort which is an excellent stronghold.

1174. lounes, loupes, louvres and loopholes. A louvre is an architectural term for a small tower with open windows or slits. It is derived from the French Vouvert; so here the Fr. text has,

Murdrieres Il a (.) a louvert
Pour lancier, traire, & defiendre.

P. 47, l. 1186. toure trompe, trumpet-tower.

1188. For, four, one at each corner; rewarde, regard, look.

Quatre trompeurs farafinois
La furent mis a celle fois,
Pour le fort et le bourg garder
Et pour tout entour Regarder, &c.

1194. Oede, Fr. Oedes, the name generally spelt Eudes, by
some confounded with Hugues. De la Mure; Histoire, &c., p. 506.


P. 48, l. 1220. peito, Poitou.

1223. coronicles, mis-written for cronicles; Fr. text, la cronique.

1235. (She) made that day in Luxembourg (many) a fair thing;

En Luxembourg maint beau fait fift.

P. 49, l. 1252. mallers, Maillezais in Poitou. The abbey was burnt by Geoffrey in a.d. 1232,¹ for which offence he had to pay to the church the sum of 1000 écus; De la Mure, p. 493. The particulars are given at length in a later part of the romance.

1253. How Raymond was enraged both against Geoffrey and Melusine, and how he lost Melusine, is all related at length hereafter.

P. 50, l. 1274. We may here collect the names of the ten sons of Raymond and Melusine. They were, according to the romance,

1. Urien, who had an ugly face and eyes of different colours, in honour of whom Lusignan was built. 2. Oede (Endes), with a face like fire. 3. Guy, who had one eye lower than the other. 4. Anthony, marked with a scar like that made by a lion's claw. 5. Raynold, with one eye. 6. Gaffrey (Geoffrey), with the great tooth. 7. Fromont, with a blemish on his nose. 8. Horrible, with three eyes. 9. Raymond. 10. Thierry. M. de la Muro considers four of these as historical, and arranges them in this order. 1. Guy, taken prisoner by Saladin in a.d. 1187; king of Jerusalem, 1185—1192; exchanges the kingdom for that of Cyprus in 1192, buying it of the knights templars for 100,000 écus d'or (!), they having previously purchased it from Richard I. of England, who had conquered it. He died in Cyprus, a.d. 1196. 2. Geoffrey, inherited Vouvant and Mervent in Poitou. He burnt the abbey of Maillezais, a.d. 1232,¹ and had to pay for the rebuilding of it. He was afterwards buried in this new abbey. There is a document extant, proving that in 1216 he made over a large amount of land to the monastery of Beau lieu in Roanmois. [This document is given at length by M. de la Mure at p. 501, and is the only authentic document (says the editor of the book in a foot-note) on which he rests his conjectures concerning Melusine's family.] 3. Odo or Endes, but who ought to have been called Hugues, who inherited the domain of Lusignan. 4. Amery, or Amaulry, called Urien in the romance, who succeeded Guy as king of Cyprus, from a.d. 1196—1210.

¹ De la Mure; p. 493. Surely this date is wrong, and should be an earlier one.
1275. Now I return, &c.; cf. l. 1177, I shall declare.
1281. to know where, to know war; Fr. Aler veult sçaouir de la guerre.
1291. to well find ther peple, to well find their people; i.e. to pay them good hire. Fr. Et pour bien fauldoier leur gent.
1295. teise, draw, tend.

P. 51, l. 1299. Famagouce; such is the true reading, the town being the modern Famagousta. The Fr. text has "famagoffe." Compare

"And sall fayr to Famagoste
for lyes to seke,
And saill forth to Cipres
as the buk tellis."

Miscellaneous Poems, in Lancelot du Lak; ed. by Mr J. Stevenson, 1839; p. 151.

1313. Urien's men were seen taking up their quarters in the sultan's tents, and dislodging the sultan's men. In the prose romance the sultan is called Brandymont.

1315. regid; read ren gid, ranged. The Fr. text has Rngies, a mistake for Rengies.

1319. Armed was with, was armed by.

P. 52, l. 1335. garison, healing; none would undertake to heal him.

Le Roy dun dart envelymee,
Qui bien fut forgie et lyme,
Fut tellement feru a point
Quen lui de garifon na point.

1338. The, MS. Thy; Fr. text, Les Cypriens.
1340. thowne, town; so whent for went, l. 1413; where for were = war, l. 1281; then for ten, l. 3477.
1345. enforced, augmented; Fr. text, enforcies, from enforcier, to augment.

P. 53, l. 1375. myght, MS. nyght. The sense is, so that there might never be recovery (for that man). Fr. text, Uneques homme ne le pouoit guerir.

1375. perceived; this in the MS. looks like pertained; but the French has, quant Vriens lappercoit. Cf. note to l. 548.
1386. dedes Army, deeds of arms; "Tant fift darmes ce Vriens.

P. 54, l. 1394. Ther by, MS. Therby; French, Par Guyon et par Vriens.

1396. thought long, thought to abide (?). Cf. A.S. lengian, to dwell. French text, Vriens es trefz se loga. That he did not wish to remain there long is shown by l. 1399. But probably we should read "log," i.e. loge = lodge; cf. hug for huge.

1414. Moche went Cipryan, many a Cyprian went.
P. 55, l. 1424. Who, O lord God, who (could withstand him)? Not a giant, at any time.

1442. know, known.
P. 56, l. 1454. Whereby (you) shall not lose.

1462. send, sent.

1468. Whom, as I best could, (I) have warded and defended.
P. 57, l. 1483. The general sense is, She cannot sustain such fierce conflicts of arms, nor the sharp showers (of arrows).

Femme ne peut les fiers estours
Darmes porter, ne les durs tours.

1500. hir, here; spelt in next line here. French text, "or orez, Yriens, or me pardonnez."
P. 58, l. 1517. If (I) saw (there) were any respite of death in you.

1523. reised god, elevated the host. Fr. leuoit dieu.

1555. The words scrawled in the margin in a later hand have been written near the edge of the page, and the letters in brackets cut away by the binder; these marginal notes are, of course, of little value.

1566. Coleis, Colchis.

1572. medee auise, Medea's advice. The words are run together in the MS.
P. 60, l. 1578. ille, island; should rather have been spelt ile as in l. 1570.

1579. Compare

Il en y est advenu mille,
Mille voire par mille fois,
Tant au plain comme aux destrois.

1586. The Fr. text has merely "de la contree" where the English has "maree," which I guess to mean marshy land, of which there are 20,000 acres in the department of Deux Sévres. (Encycl. Metr. s.v. Sévres.) "The porte yaffe" is not represented in the French copy.

1595. The insertion of ne is essential to the metre and the syntax; Fr. Quil nalast. Even thus, the metre still lacks a syllable.

1599. full know, well known, illustrious.

1601. The marginal note in the MS. should state that the "king of hermyne" was "vnkull to vriens wit." M. de la Mure
remarks (pp. 509, 521) that Urien, whose real name was Amaulry, was a younger son of Melusine, and obtained the kingdom of Cyprus by succeeding his elder brother Guy; that his first wife's name was Cive or Eschive d'Isbelin or d'Iblin, daughter of Baudouin, Count of Rama in Palestine; and that, instead of his wife's uncle being king of Armenia, it was his (Urien's) daughter who was married to Leo I., first king of Armenia, created king in A.D. 1197 by Henry VI. (or V.), emperor of the East. By hermyne is meant Armenia, the Fr. text having armenye.

P. 61, l. 1614. hermyns, Armenians; Fr. armyniens.

1630. MS. occorded, but Fr. Chascun faccorda. See l. 1633.

1633. Guye efter send, Guy (was) sent after. Fr. Guy fut maunde.

P. 62, l. 1641. wilfull, willing.

1648. It had before been two brothers (that were kings).

1652. Compare

Et en leur temps forment ayderent
A ceulx qui fônt deulx defcendu,
(Ainfi comme jay entendu),
Et ceulx de Rodes, fe faichies,
On guerroye Iusques en leurs marchees.

1663. noyours, annoyers; Fr. Et leurs nuyfans fupsperedent.

P. 63, l. 1670. Sept psalumes, seven psalms; but the Fr. has "les quinze psalmes."

1666. Brehain; the prose romance has Behayne, and there is little doubt but that Bohemia is meant, and Tieck accordingly writes Böhmen. Sometimes the term is restricted to a city, and it then means Prague, as in l. 1951.

P. 64, l. 1700. Fr. text, le Roy daufay, and Roquefort says this means Alsace; Tieck, too, has Elsaß.

1704. For hurt, which is in the MS., read hurd, heard.

Car chascun deulx sauoir vouloit
Pourquoy le Roy les gueréroit;
Et cestoit pour vne pucelle.

1708. Fr. Fille du duc, mais orpheline. Thus Orphelyne means that she was an orphan; her name was Christian, as told in l. 1827; and the prose romance calls her father Asselyn; fol. 105.

1718. A-ferrome, from afar; Fr. de long.

1721, 2. Army peple, men-at-arms; "Cuftile" is given by Burguy as another form of Cousteau or Couteau, a knife. Compare

Voient grant foifon de gens darmes,
A grans cousteaulx et grans guifarmes.
NOTES TO THE POEM. 247

1723. The MS. reading “ftafte,” should perhaps be “ftafte;” i.e. they ranged themselves in lines, and put themselves in battle order; Fr. text, Lors fc mid dreunt en ordonnance. Staf means a line in l. 6555, 6581.

P. 65, l. 1735. Again the Lusignans cried out full fast. De Reechief lusiguen[s] efcrient. The MS. reading eryng is an evident blunder for cryng, the peculiar spelling of cryng which the scribe or translator has generally adopted; thus, in l. 1761, he writes reioed for reioyed, ioyng for toying, l. 1808; while in l. 1900 we have the very word cryng. In the text, I have written crying by mistake.

1740. ech by thaimself, each by himself.
1754. takyng, taken; Fr. pris = modern Fr. pris.

P. 66, l. 1765. (They) presented the king to this fair creature. 1767. shappe, shaped.

1767. Afterwards commanding these brethren to come to her. P. 67, l. 1799. yeuyng, given; cf. takyng in l. 1754.
1802. where, were; cf. whent for went, l. 1413.
1808. The MS. kew is of course an error for knew; Fr. feauoient.

1815. forigers, foragers; MS. forigers; but Fr. text, fouriers.

P. 68, l. 1818. Compare

A lentree de Luxenbourg
Lieu ny auoit ne carrefourg
Dont len neuft veu venir les gens
Au fons de ces doux Instrumens.

1841. wace, was; Fr. affis fut.

P. 69, l. 1851. at thy's iournay, to-day; Fr. au Iourduy.
1877. And had, if (I) had.

P. 70, l. 1886. With-that, provided that.
1892. demage, damage; Fr. dommaige.
1900. cryng, crying; cf. note to l. 1735.
1904. semble wyse is equivalent to the lyke wyse of l. 1901.
1905. surete, surety.
1907. now ye, certainly a mistake for myght I; for the Fr. text has,

Et dit, barons, moult lies feroie,

where lies = Lat. letus.

1909. The first to = two.

P. 72, l. 1951. According to Tieck and the Volksbuch, Brehaigne means Prague in Bohemia, as before noted.
1964. deing. The MS. has either deing or doing; that deing is right is proved by the sense, and by the Fr. text, which has “mouront.”

1967. He shall have my brother’s (king of Brehain’s) daughter to wife. Compare
La fille mon faire¹ a moillier
Aura Regnault, car employer
Ne la pourroit mon frere mieulx.

P. 73, l. 1971. After my brother, (he shall be) king of high degree. Fr. Roy sera.
1973. hoir, heir. Fr. hoir.
1981. Anynsime, or Auynsime; the Fr. text has—Dedens quinze Iours, within this fortnight; but the etymology is not clear; I suppose it is ad vigesimam, sc. diem. See Glossary.

P. 74, l. 2006. Sir Anthony is certainly the speaker, we must not read—"Sir Anthony," (he) said, &c. The French has—Anthonie lui dit, frere, alez.

2101. done is here the infinitive, generally spelt don.
2018. this said duk, viz. duke Anthony; cf. ll. 1997, 2003. Observe that the English version is quite wrong; for it states that "this said duke went towards Luxembourg," whereas it should state that "the king went towards Luxembourg to meet this said duke;" the Fr. text might easily be mistaken, as it runs,

En luxembourg, vers le duc, va.

P. 75, l. 2019. The spelling wordle seems intentional, in order to eke out ten syllables for the line. It is not uncommon.
2056. By comparing the various statements in De la Mure (pp. 494, 502, 518), it appears that the old shield of Lusignan was barry of ten pieces, argent and azure; over all a lion gules (not crowned); and the shield of modern Luxembourg is argent, a lion gules, crowned or. If then, as Christian in this line suggests, the bars of azure in the Lusignan shield be left out of the consideration, Anthony would bear the arms of Luxembourg very nearly, as then the whole field would be argent. But De la Mure points out that such a shield (viz. argent, a lion gules) really belonged to Cyprus, and that it should not be thus confounded with the Luxembourg shield, since in this latter the lion is crowned.

P. 76, l. 2066. Baueres and Almayn, Fr. baviere et alemaigne, Bavaria and Germany.

2073. Traqu, Fr. text, Craquo ; Cracow. The prose romance speaks of "Zelodyus, kyng of Craco;" (fol. 129).
2075. Esclauons, Slavonians (?). Fr. text, esclauons. In l. 2077, we read that he was lord and sire of that land also, viz. of Slavonia as well as Cracow.
2079. In the MS. "fe" is written so as to resemble "ft;" thus "scarmifh" resembles "ftarmifh," and in l. 2075, just above, "Esclauons" resembles "Estlauons." This practice is common enough in old MSS.
2083. Fedris, the name of the king of Brehain, called in the

¹ Obvious error for frere.
NOTES TO THE POEM.

Fr. text *Fedoiz*, but in the Volksbuch, *Friedrich*. The prose romance has "the kynge Federyk of behayne;" *fol. 123.*

P. 77, l. 2094. The Slavonians beat the men of Brechain, and chased them *to the end*, i.e. as far as they could, viz. back to the town again. Fr. *Iusques au bourg.

2096. Compare

Mais le bon due de luxembourg
Tantoft oftera le debat;
Le Roy brehaignon fe combat
Aux faulx farralins de tous lez,
Qui fes gens ont moult Recuilliez.

2103, 4. Here and there he cast them down, fighting full manfully, cut down one man, and overturned another on to the ground. Fr. *Lun detrenche, lautre mort Rue.*

2113. *she*, viz. his soul; Fr. *A dieu soit elle commande*.

2117. But (as for) the Saracens indeed, they followed close (after them), catching up those who fled.

P. 78, l. 2126. *noyng = noying*, annoyance.

2132. "They greatly dreaded the Saracens at that time, when they saw their king dead, who was formerly of great puissance; whereof the Saracens had then great joy, (because) there were (many) Christians who had been ended and finished (?)" But this last line is so forced and absurd, that it is far better to read "Trifting," and to interpret the line to mean—"trusting their war had been ended and done." In support of this, we may remark that the scribe has already written *Traquo* for *Craquo*, l. 2073. The line is not in the French.

P. 79, l. 2154. To preserve the right sense, the translator should have said—The *Sarifins* went out, thaim faft truffling—i.e. fast destroying (or driving back) the people of Brechain; the mistake evidently arose from a misconception of the Fr. text,

*Brehaignons vont fort destruifant*,
where *Brehaignons* is in the accusative case.

2159. *Als! alas!* Cf. l. 2166 below.

2161. *most,* I must.

2167. In what manner (of) form.

2171. *were,* neither.

P. 80, l. 2208. This messenger is a *Saracen* scout, not the one mentioned in l. 2182.

2213. For see the many Christian people, fast coming.

P. 81, l. 2221. *not-For-pat,* nevertheless; Fr. non pourtant.

2223. The construction is obscure; Fr text,

Et anthonie dautre contree
Venoit en bataille ordonnee.

2232. Two of them there hath Raynold cast down.
P. 82, l. 2246. Here again, as at l. 2073, the Fr. has Craquo.  
2251. grace, grass; so also vace for vas, l. 1841.  
2252. deth, dead.  
2253. cried and grad. Compare  
Le Roye de Craquo crie & hue;  
which supplies us with the origin of the phrase hue and cry.  
P. 83, l. 2287. An hye, on high.  
2287. or is the right reading; Fr. Vng Royauhne ou vng empire.  
2359. commanded, commended.  
P. 86, l. 2380. May is the right reading; Fr. Qui eglentine espousera.  
2381. For my part, I say to you.  
P. 87, l. 2406. Cf. l. 2342.  
2415. And all that belongeth to her you (shall have) to take  
(for your own).  
2420. For your free kindness and courtesy, he shall defend, &c.  
2422. Read "werre;" the meaning is—For he can war well;  
Fr. Car il feet assez de la guerre.  
P. 88, l. 2428. The king prepared for his niece all such fine  
array as pertains to a queen.  
2446. vis, read vois; Fr. Et dient tous a vne voix.  
P. 89, l. 2464. ortholegne; the Fr. text has a different reading,  
Regnault fift grant guerre en frise,  
Oestellere de la conquift;  
Danemarche par force acquift;  
but this is hardly more intelligible.  
2469. Was not on this side of the Romans; a proverbial ex-  
pression which has occurred before, l. 266.  
2471. Speke me shall; the me is adopted from a phrase in the  
preceding line of the Fr. text—Je me tairay.  
2483. As any man could on this side of the sea; Fr. de ca la  
mer; cf. l. 2469.  
P. 90, l. 2187. Compare  
Cellui deliura les deft[t]rois  
Dardayne, ou auoit moult grant bois,
NOTES TO THE POEM.

Maint bon châtel fortifia;
Yuay premier edifia;
Sur meuze vng noble pont fiit
De meffieres, et puis conquit
Plusieurs bon lieux par fa prouefle.

Here Dardayne = D'Ardennes, famous for its forest, and it is easy to see how this was changed into "dardane." In the next line, knight is of course wrong; read brought, which is used to mean a castle in ll. 1171, 1199. Yvon ( = Fr. Yvay) is probably Givet, a town on the Meuse, lower down the river than Mezieres.

2195. vected, made war upon.

2196. Faborugh; probably Friborugh = Friburg in Switzerland (?). The Fr. text has briourg. Aritrige is mis-written for Autrige = Autriche or Austria; Fr. text, autriche.

P. 91, l. 2519. of courage, courageously.

2523. This line, as it stands, means—In warring, a strong warrior, well set. But it is a mistranslation; and should express that he carried on war bravely in Guerrande; for the Fr. text has—En guerrande fort guerreoya. Guerrande is mentioned at l. 2950, where the story of Geoffrey's combat with the giant is resumed; it is situated on the sea-coast near the mouth of the Loire.

2528. Compare

Jufqua la Rochelle Ilz prenoient
Sauuergarde, tant le craignoient.
Il prenoit a paftiz partout
Autant au millieu comme au boul.

According to Roquefort, pastis (from Lat. pactio) is a forced contribution which men agree to pay an enemy; so that the giant, in fact, levied "black mail" on the inhabitants; but the word paceyfed (or pateyfed) remains obscure.

2533. This seems to imply that Geoffrey heard that the giant called him a man with a great tooth, but the line is merely parenthetical in the Fr. text;

Quant Gieffray la noueille entend,
(Que len appelle au grant dent), &c.

P. 92, l. 2543. Hym-selfenn the tenth, i. e. He went with nine others. It is a French idiom; Luy dixiefme fen part de la.

2553. malers, Maillieres in the Fr. text, Malliers in German. It means Maillezais in Poitou; De la Mure; Histoire, p. 493. The prose romance has Maillezes, fol. 112.

P. 93, l. 2579. monke; MS. moke (!)
2553. all my lifes fate, i. e. all my life; Fr. Car la vueil Ie ma vie vser.
2585. *in you (is) all the hold; i.e. all depends upon you;* Fr. *en vous tient.*

2586. *herd, hard.*

2594. This apparently refers to the tonsure.

P. 94, l. 2608. *A morn, on the morrow;* Fr. *au matin.*


2623. *Broughdieu;* Fr. *bourg de dieu.*

2630. Fr. *À fainct martin, la grant egilise.* "France had three (tutelar saints), who had each his sacred city; each, as it were, succeeded to, without dispossessing the other. St Martin of Tours was the older; St Remi, who baptized Clovis into the Catholic Church, had an especial claim on all of Frankish descent. But, as Paris rose above Tours and Rheims, so rose St Denys, by degrees, to be the leading saint of France." Dean Milman; Hist. of Latin Christianity; vol. 6, p. 244. 2nd ed. At p. 249 of the same work we read, "Tours and Poitiers quarrelled for the body of St Martin."

2632. *And thereof (I will) cause deeds to be made.*

P. 95, l. 2633. Compare

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{Ou de notre dame de chartres;} \\
&\text{Voire, fe tu veulx de paris,} \\
&\text{Ne foiez done de Rien marris;} \\
&\text{Car bien suis acointe du pape,} \\
&\text{Il ny aura Riens qui mefchappe;} \\
&\text{Et puis apres ferez euefque,} \\
&\text{Ne demoura guerres apres que} \\
&\text{Autre bonne euefchie auras,} \\
&\text{Soit paris, beauvoir, ou arras.}
\end{align*}
\]

P. 96, l. 2650. Fr. text, *Et la pour nous dieu pryeras.* The English is obscure.

2668. The word *in* seems redundant, as far as the sense is concerned.

2672. Compare—*Ilz furent ars, vaille que vaille;* where *ars* means *burnt.*

2676. Compare

\[
\begin{align*}
&Mellusine fut a vouent; \\
&Et mectoit fes Robes au vent, \\
&Ou nouuellement fut venue, \\
&Jamais elle ne fen fut tenue.
\end{align*}
\]


P. 98, l. 2744. Whose coming was the occasion of the feast; but the Fr. only says that the ladies came there on that occasion—

\[
\begin{align*}
&Et de dames tresgrant foifon \\
&Y vindrent pour celle achoyfon.
\end{align*}
\]
NOTES TO THE POEM.

P. 99, l. 2761. You are not so hardy as to enquire of your wife, either seriously or in jest, whither she goes.

2771. The right sense should be—And some others say that she goes on this day to Fairy-land; compare

\[ \text{Autres dient que en faerye} \\
\text{Va cellui Iour—faichies de voir,} \\
\text{Frere, mectes paine a fauoir.} \]

2784. There he faste knakked; knakked (knocked) is the translator’s blunder; it should mean, There he fast hastened where he had not been (before). The mistake is easily traced; Fr. text, Se Rapa ou onques neuff efte.

P. 100, l. 2809. Here is an evident allusion to the coat of arms of Lusignan. The shield was “burelé d’argent et d’azur de dix pieces;” De la Mure, pp. 494, 502; cf. note to l. 2056. So too Melusine’s tail was divided into bars or stripes of argent and azure.

P. 101, l. 2812. to sight gan purchas; i.e. he saw.

P. 101, l. 2817. to Ende, to the end that; Fr. allin que.

P. 101, l. 2818. clout, a fragment of cloth; Fr. drapelet; in next line, melled is the Fr. mefle (mélée) smeared, lit. mixed; and Alway = altogether.

P. 101, l. 2857. There is a line omitted before this; compare

\[ \text{Et droit euft de ce courouchiers;} \\
\text{Deftruit en fut et exillies,} \\
\text{Car, &c.} \]

where courouchiers should perhaps be courouchier; so that the meaning should be, And (Raymond) was right to be angry at this; (the earl) was destroyed for it, and (his people) exiled.

P. 102, l. 2868. To on his brother, to one, viz. to his brother; Fr. A vng, fien frere.

P. 103, l. 2872. purer, poorer, more wretched.

P. 103, l. 2880. Fr. Perdray ma pensee Ioyeuse; thus pensif = thoughtful, and is redundant.

P. 104, l. 2928. merely, merrily.

P. 105, l. 2950. Guerrande; read Guerrande, as in the French.

P. 105, l. 2960. staf, a mace; Fr. machine.

2963. A complete mistranslation; it should be “which had cost many écus;” Fr. Qui coufte auoit mainte escu. The mistake
arose from the double meaning of escu, viz. 1. a shield; 2. a piece of money.

2963. Again wrong; it should mean, May God preserve him! he undertakes a great deed! Fr. Dieu le faulue, grant fait emprent.

2969. stil you, be silent; Fr. vous taifies.

P. 106, l. 2980. So long war hast had, or made.

2992. full, foul things, evil; unless it be an error for ill. The line means, Who sware by his gods that evil should come to him; the Fr. text however is slightly different—Les dieux Iura que mal y vint.

2993. He considered himself sorely disgraced, since a single man desired to war against him openly.

P. 107, l. 3016. The translator probably meant this line and the next to be said by Geoffrey; but we ought to alter And to fail; for the Fr. has,

Chetif—dit guedon, &c.

3023. foly, is no nay, it is folly, there's no denying it; Fr. ecft grant folye.

3025. she, i. e. his life, which is feminine in French (la vie).

3029. Fr. text, Mais le geant compte nen tient.

P. 108, l. 3032. sett; the nom. case to the verb is Geoffrey, who set him (a stroke) there in the breast.

3035. to se = in sight; an expletive phrase.

3037. The syntax is hereabouts very wild. The line means, Hast thou not given me such an offering? it shall be restored this moment; i. e. You have bestowed on me a fair blow, and it shall be now returned.

3039. This means—he was wrath that he had just been so cast down to the ground in that isle by a single stroke.

3043. This means—as Geoffrey kept turning about, never still, the giant (took) the steel falchion in hand, cutting the legs off Geoffrey's courser. The omission of the verb took is very awkward.

3051. This describes the effect of a second blow given by Geoffrey; the first nearly cut off the giant's left arm (his right was cut quite off soon afterwards), and the second smote him sorely on the haunch.

3055, 6. The sense is—the giant thought he must make the fight a mortal one.

3058. thereof gaf; imitated from the French;

Son flael prent et meet en la place,

Au gieffroy fur le heaulme en donne.

P. 109, l. 3064. fleing; Fr. text, voler.

3065. The MS. actually has legges; but the Fr. tells us that—Yng de fes marteaulx guedon prent.
NOTES TO THE POEM. 255

3067. Compare

            Du coup Ruer moult fesuertuc (sic)
            De gieffroy actaint la machue;
            Il la luy fist voler des mains.

3071. To Gaffray noght had, Geoffrey had nothing; this use of had is an imitation of the French idiom y auoit.

3074. geuyng, given.

3078. Whether arm, staffe, or axe, (they all) fell down right nigh him. It was his right arm, says the prose romance.

3080. The last word in the line is most obscurely written. The Fr. merely says—Quant vie vng de ses bras perdu. Bede does not seem right. The word "grad" (see l. 2253) would fit in better.

3082. of-new, lately; it often means anew, again; but the giant had still one arm left to raise his sword with.

3084. But (Geoffrey) avoided the stroke.

3089. Compare

            Lui a donne vng tel merel,
            Et vne fi tresgrande offerende,
            Heaulme na qui ne pourfende.

P. 110, l. 3093. hys horne sarasin, his Saracen horn; this well exemplifies the variation between the English text and the Cambridge French copy; for the latter is here wrong; it says, Puis prent fon corps sarafinois; but corps must be an error for corne, a horn.

3103. geanvt, giant's.

3104. You moved war (i.e. fought) against this man, and thought in your mind to vanquish him, and have now discomfited this enemy.

3111. I shold = I ought; i.e. it was my duty to; Fr. deuoie.

P. 111, l. 3124. Whereby (he) had then manfully ended the war.

3110. wace, was; as also in l. 1841.

3117. Alas! (he) wrought the letters (at an) ill hour.

P. 112, l. 3163. Norbelande; Fr. text, Northombellande.

3172. The word on is necessary; Fr. Il maine a tout le pays guerre.

P. 113, l. 3194. Fr. text, Pour lamour de chrestiennete. The next line is not in the French at all.

3213. The word goste seems introduced for the sake of the rime, to the prejudice of the sense; the French is,

            Dair fut vermeil comme sangs,
            De fin dueil quil auoit au corps.

P. 114, l. 3218. tho ill, those evil men; thys, thus.
3230. messengers, should be messenger; so in l. 3235, Thai should be he, &c.; for there was only one messenger; cf. l. 3346.
   P. 115, l. 3256. ballyd; a mistranslation, which looks like guesswork; for the Fr. has palle, i.e. pale.
   3263. full, foully, evilly; mal le pensastes.
   P. 116, l. 3292. Thaken, for taken; so too in l. 3477, Then for Ten.

P. 117, l. 3339. semyng in corage, as it seems to my thoughts; Fr. text, "Dieu le pere, ce mest daduis."

P. 118, l. 3358. conduite, conducted; Fr. conduisoit.

3365. The Fr. line corresponding to this is,

En peu deure moult loings alerent.

Way's note, in his edition of the Promptorium Parvulorum, to the word kennynge is so entirely to the point that I give it here. "Will. Worcester uses the term kenning to denote a distance at sea, pp. 179, 313; and it appears from Leland that 20 miles was accounted as a kennyng, probably, as the extreme distance within ordinary sight. 'Scyille is a kennyng, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste pointe of Corne- waulle.' Itin. iii. f. 6. See also f. 13." Many readers will probably recall the lines in Keats's Sonnet "On first looking into Chapman's Homer,

"Then felt I like some watcher of the skies
When a new planet swims into his ken."

P. 119, ll. 3381—3392. These lines are parenthetic, being added by the writer to prepare us for the coming dénouement of the story.

P. 120, l. 3399. bured, buried; of hys, of him; altered for the sake of the rime. We still say—that body of his.

3417. blessed with right hand, crossed himself; Fr. si se signa.

3423. Is it this? is it thus? Fr. Est il ainsi?

P. 122, l. 3476. wronged, read wrong. Fr. text, "Nay pas tort se Ie me tourmente."

3484. Fr. text, "Et, pour la larme de vastosme." It seems to be a sort of proverbial oath. The words "hys fair" seem to have no meaning, and to be merely expletive.

P. 124, l. 3551. serched, sic in MS.

P. 125, l. 3556. sery, we should expect say, to rime with Gaffray; yet sery may be = Lat. servo, in the sense of say, utter, or speak, which it sometimes bears.

3575. Trouwing means as I trow; Fr. "Bien quinze fois, se croy Ie, ou vint."

3584. Fr. "Mal vey ton gracieux demaine."

P. 127, l. 3617. This line seems imperfect. The line in the MS. ends with "difeiue," in which the e has been smudged nearly out again. The Fr. has,
NOTES TO THE POEM.

"Se mon corps a toy demouroit,
Tu ta perceuras bien briefment
De ton maluis parIurement;
Se verite meussies tenue,
[Fol. S2 b.] Jusques ala mort me eussies cue,
Et par moy eussies eu secours," &c.

3640. seueralte can only mean separation; yet the precise opposite is meant; "Plus ny sera ensemble tenue."

P. 128, l. 3652. She draws the three barons aside, to tell Raymond and them her special injunction about Horrible; hence her speaking in an undertone, and her addressing Raymond as before.

P. 129, l. 3689. The Pr. has Qui de tous eulx eftoit le maiffcre,
JSil en fut caufe, bien en peut eftre;
meaning, I suppose, that if the abbot were at the bottom of all, it was not to be wondered at.

P. 130, l. 3711. This story of Melusine's re-appearance before melancholy events is always carefully insisted on wherever the legend is told. Her first manifestation of herself was just before Raymond's death, as told further on, ll. 5182—5194. According to the prose romance (fol. 218) she was seen by an English captain, one Sersnel, just before he lost the castle to the duke of Berry; and she was also seen several times by one "godart," and moreover by one "yuon of walles," and by many others.

P. 132, l. 3802. How the earl of Forest met with his death will be duly told hereafter. See p. 170.

P. 133, l. 3809. This eulogy of the lords of Parthenay is carefully enlarged upon at the close of the poem, for obvious reasons.

P. 139, l. 4011. Rather or later, Sooner or later. This is a peculiarly good instance of the use of rather, it being so well brought out by later following.

4015. The Fr. text has,

Elle fait mon euer espartir,
En Remectant comme la cire
fait le geant feu en larmes frire."
Ainsi fe tourmente Raymont.

She divides my heart, re-kindling it as the giant fire fries wax into tears. Thus Raymond torments himself." The translator has quite missed this.

P. 140, l. 4048. "Whether I lie or no, God on high knows." Such asseverations occur often.

P. 141, l. 4055. norbelande; why this spelling occurs is not clear; for the Fr. text has "northombelande," and the prose romance "Northomberland." Tieck writes it Norhemen.
P. 142, l. 4101. That the French copy from which the translator took the poem had slightly different readings from the Cambridge copy is of course likely enough. Already, more instances of deviation have been pointed out than can be accounted for by a supposition of errors in translation. The mention of the "marbre stone" on which the giant sat is a crucial instance; for the Cambridge copy reads,

La guide voyt fur vng Rochier  
Le geant aalis fur vng arbere;

whereas, when we turn to Tieck's German version, the word "Marmorstein" re-appears; so that there was doubtless a special mention of marble in that French copy which the translator used.

4106. He had no dread or fear at all, for he thought he need not mistrust God that he had been misled.

P. 144, l. 4149. The re-appearance of the word "werly" in this line, as indicated in the foot-note, is of course due to its having been copied in from the line above. It is clearly superfluous.

P. 145, l. 4181. The Fr. has, De leighe de fix ou fept ans.

P. 147, l. 4210. We ought rather to read "And yut, so I shall;" Fr. text, Et fi feray Ie; mais dy moy, &c.

P. 148, l. 4254. The comma above the line after "cosyn" is a misprint.

4278. It wanted but little that he had not been destroyed.

P. 149, l. 4311. The reading "Aid" is supported by the Fr. text;

Se la ne luy donnent aye  
Magot, Apolin, Ternagant.

P. 150, l. 4319. The reading "conquered," is amply supported by l. 3912 (not 3192, as misprinted) which runs, Wich that ceason conquered was and gett.

4336. The cold knife-blade entirely passing through (his thigh- armour).

4384. According to the prose romance, the name of this mountain of "Northomberland" was called "Brombelyois," and the story of "Elymas, kyng of Albany," is told at much greater length and at the beginning of the romance, which is its right place. There we find that Presine was the king's second wife, and that the breaking of his oath was due to his listening to the suggestions of Nathas, his son by his former wife; with many other additions.

P. 153, l. 4407. With the daughters thre he closed, he was enclosed by his three daughters. Fr. text, Car fes trois filles lenclouirent.

4426. Grimold was either the fifth, sixth, or seventh of them, and he hath been the last.
NOTES TO THE POEM.

P. 156, l. 4495. She, i.e. the chamber. The translator doubtless employed she because the Fr. text has Elle; just below (l. 4499) he uses it.

4508. Fr. Ils portent moult grant medecines.

P. 158, l. 4549. married; perhaps the translator meant married, but the proper meaning here is vexed, Fr. marrye. The French here arranges a few lines in a different order, but the extract given exactly fits in in place of fol. 88. The translator claims to have made his translation nearly line by line, and here 57 French lines answer to 56 English ones. As we are sure of the exact number of lines lost, we are able to continue the right numbering of the lines by just missing 56.

4607. More about lady Melior and the Sparrow-hawk castle will be found further on. See p. 186.

P. 160, l. 4621. Palatine, elsewhere spelt Palestine, had her name assigned with evident reference to the acquirement by Guy of Lusignan of the title of king of Jerusalem; see l. 4634.

4625. Coings; this is spelt in several other ways, as may be seen in the Index of Names. The Fr. text has (elsewhere) "cougro;" and the prose romance, "Guygo." The story of Pailestine's treasure is given more at length further on. See p. 196.

P. 162, l. 4687. This means that the giant perceived Geoffrey, and perceived that he was doomed. Geoffrey does not perceive him till l. 4691.

4694. The mis-spelling dorn is probably due to the word Anon following it.

P. 164, l. 4735. Fr. text, De fon papier estes plainez.

P. 167, l. 4827. waloping, galloping. It is curious that this word occurs in the Prose Romance also, at fol. 169; "whan the saudan was departed fro the batayll, he waloped till he caem to [the] sarasyns oost."

P. 171, l. 4964. The prose romance calls the pope Benedictus; but, strangely enough, there is neither a Benedict nor a Leo among the popes of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

P. 173, l. 5007. Ayglon, called Chastaillon in the Camb. Fr. text. 5010. alludes to l. 3807.

P. 175, l. 5055. In all the marches he ruled over, whether it was wrong or right.

P. 180, l. 5218. lefte is of course the reading. Fr. text,

De fes pechies Riens ne laiffa.

P. 183, ll. 5326, 7. There is only one Fr. line answering to these two, but it supports the reading "drad." It runs, "Sarrafin neult qui le craingne."

P. 184, l. 5329. Hys leyung, during his lifetime; Fr. Son vivant.

5357. Fr. text, Du pierregort en angleterre.
P. 185, l. 5359. *cambrere,* Fr. text, En arragon, ceulx de cambiere.

P. 186, l. 5114. The prose romance says, (*fol. 7 b*) whoever "wil goo watche there the day before the euyn and thewyn also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx (24th?) day of Iung," may achieve the aventure. It was thus in the "most cheffest time of somertide," (l. 5522) not near midwinter, when we commemorate the *Evangelist.*

P. 189, l. 5503. Fr. text,

Ainsi la chambre painte estoit
Dun pie de mur Iusques au toit,
Qui denifoit les nafcions
Et les eftranges Regions,
Du furent telz hommes vaillans
Qui point ne furent femmeillans, &c.

where "denifoit" means described, not "deuided."

P. 193, l. 5619. This line should mean, Since you do not keep to that which is your own; Fr. Mais puisque ne ten veulx teuir.

P. 194, l. 5615. Fr.

Arrine est a dure feste,
Car point ne voit qui le loppine,
Mais maint coup eft fur fon efcrine.

Thus the Fr. verb loppiner, (*lit.* to cut into pieces, hence to beat severely), has been twisted into "his opinion!"

5653. For remarks on "anointed" in the depraved sense of beaten, see Notes and Quer. 3rd S. IX. 359, 522. The Fr. text has *oint.*

P. 195, l. 5672. *Crius,* not mentioned in Camb. Fr. text.

5683. Fr. text, Mais la moitie pis gouerna.

5684. De la Mure devotes his last chapter to the kings of Armenia, giving the list as follows. Leo I (reigned 1197), Constant, Haiton, Leo II, Theodore, Leo III, Hugues, John, Leo IV, Leo V, Leo VI. This makes Leo I the hero of the Sparrow-hawk adventure, Constant the king mentioned in l. 5682, and the rest the "nine heirs." The name of the last king agrees with the prophecy in l. 5628, and De la Mure tells us (p. 526) so much of his history as confirms the account in the next stanza; "il se refugia en France auprès du Roi Charles VI, l'an 1385. Et ayant dispose de ses droits au Royaume d'Arménie, en faveur de la Maison de Chypre, comme il a été vu ci-devant, il mourut à Paris, l'an 1393, le 29e novembre. Il y fut inhumé en l'église des Célestines, ou on voit sa representation," &c. I may add that La Coudrette insinuates that he saw the funeral himself—"Ou moult de gens le vey ensemble"—a line omitted in the translation.
NOTES TO THE POEM. 261

P. 196, l. 5718, *treteth*, read *tretynge*; where —*ynge* marks the infinitive.

P. 200, l. 5823. Fr. text,

\[\text{Vng homme trouua en sa voye,}\\ \text{Qui liques au mont le connuoie;}\]

which shows that "be" should be "he," and suggests that l. 5824 should run thus,

Which to this moutain he gan *hym conuay,*

where "he" means *high,* as elsewhere. For this mountain is generally called the *high* mountain; see l. 4625, 4631, 5725.

P. 201, l. 5284. *Brandes* should no doubt be *Brandest*; Fr. text, *Brandest.*

P. 205, l. 5972. Fr. text,

\[\text{Qui fut Iadis clere de mellin,}\\ \text{Et pres dilleecques demouriot;}\]

whence it is clear that *mellin* (translated Merlyn !) is the *name of a place,* probably Molina near the Sierra Molinà in the extreme S. of Arragon.

5981. Fr. text,

\[\text{Ce devin eftoit nay despenge,}\\ \text{Et fut a leseole a tolette, \\&c. ;}\]

so that "of good cognicion" should have been *born in Spain*; and "Tholouse certain" really represents *Toledo.*

P. 208, l. 6061. Fr. text,

\[\text{Helas, Il euft eu le trefoir,}\\ \text{Et conquis, feuft vesgu encoir,}\\ \text{Et terre de promiffion,}\\ \text{Qui tant eft lainete Region.}\]

P. 209, l. 6105, Fr. text,

\[\text{La gift, la est la tombe mife}\\ \text{Je lay veue de mes deulx yeulx.}\]

P. 211, l. 6162. Fr. text, Elle court plus fort quene fleffe.

P. 212, l. 6175. Who this "one William" was I fail to find, there being no archbishop of Bourdeaux of that name at this time, though Bourdeaux would be the see in which was Parthenay. Nor was the archbishop of Paris, nor of Tours, so named at this time; but it is observable that William Fabri was then bishop of Perigueux, the native place of this lord of Parthenay's daughter-in-law; see l. 6373.

6182. A curious mistake about the date has here crept into the text; the year should be 1101. For the Fr. text has, "En lan mil *ynge* et quattrecens; and this fulfils the conditions; for, in
1401, the 17th of May was not only a Tuesday, but the *Tuesday before Pentecost*. The false date, 1407, is easily accounted for; for it so happens that in that year too the 17th of May was on a Tuesday, but it was the Tuesday *after* Pentecost, which makes all the difference.

P. 213, l. 6206. Fr. text,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Fut faiete la translacion} \\
\text{En Ian et Incarnacion} \\
\text{Du chief du gracieux corps;} \\
\text{Car Il estoit la pieca mors.}
\end{align*}
\]

P. 214, l. 6266. The reigning king was Charles VI.

P. 219, l. 6123. Both here and below the Fr. text spells the name "coudrette."

P. 220, l. 6133. The Camb. copy of the Fr. text ends with the line, Adonqueques fe taira coudrette; the litany being missing, though part of the page is left blank.

P. 223, l. 6546. The translator, being deserted at this point by Coudrette, gives us an original epilogue, wherein he considerably falls off; and, towards the end, seems almost to give it up.

P. 224, l. 6553, repeated from Prologue, l. 15.

6577. This boast is hardly borne out by the facts.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[The French words inserted between marks of parenthesis after the word to be glossed are the corresponding words in the French text. Thus “Aduertise (aduiser)” means that aduiser is the word which the translator has rendered by aduertise; but it is not meant that aduiser occurs in all the passages where aduertise does. only that they are found to correspond once at least. In very many instances, the Fr. word greatly explains the English one, which is the reason for giving it. The following abbreviations have been used;—Pr. Parv. = Promptorium Parvolorum; Bur. = Burguy, Glossaire de la langue d’oil; Cotg. = Cotgrave’s French Dictionary; Roq. = Roquefort’s Glossaire; Jam. = Jamieson’s Scottish Dictionary. Ch. appended to a word means that it is used by Chaucer. Other abbreviations, as A.S. for Anglo-Saxon, O.N. for Old Norse, O.Fr. for Old French, &c., will be readily understood. The letter p before a number refers to the Prologue. The books referred to in italics—as K. Horn—are books published by the E. E. T. S.]

A, he, 5400.
A, on, 752, 805; A day, on a day, at times, 752.
Abake, to putte (Recuillier), to put aside, decline, 3110; to defeat, 2094, 2100.
Abakwarde, backwards, 5888.
Aby, abide it, 4679. Ch.
Acause, because, 2913, 3611.
Acceptiff, acceptable, pleasing, 3285.
Acquitail, acquittal, 4764.

Aday, on various days, at various times, often, 4252.
Adieu commaunde, I commend you to God, 3849.
Adquire, acquire, p. 99.
Adrad, afraid, 588.
Aduertise (aduiser), to pay heed to, 477; to notice, perceive, 2847.
Aferrom, 629, 3375; afar off, at Aferrome, 4488, a distance.
A.S. feorran, feorrene.
Affiaunce, trust, 3177.
Affray, disturbance, 2854. Ch.
Affy, to be affianced to, 6052.
Aform, 136, 347, 353, 4435, 4891, 4995, before.
Afray, terror, 140. Ch.
Again, 2534, \} against.
Agayne, 251, \} Agast, were afraid, 4806.
"Agaste, supra in a-ferde."
Fr. Parv.
A-ly, on high, 1210. See Anhy.
Alabastre, 4515, \} alabaster.
Alabastre, 5039, \} alabaster.
A-land, on land, 4836.
Alfaste, very quickly, 3252.
Alienyng, alienating, 6128.
All-oute, fully, entirely, completely, 2320, 4463, 5922.
It occurs also in Lancelot of the Lake.
Al-oute, the same as the above, 866.
All-ther-first, first of all, 2490.
Als, also, 3440, 4163, 5089. Ch.
Als! alas! 2159, 2166.
Fr. text, las, which see in Roq.
Amended, 4544, \} grew stronger,
Amendid, 4035, \} grew up.
Ameruelled, astonished, 405.
Amidward, in the middle, 4291.
Amorn, in the morning, on the morrow, 5519.
An, written for And, 4957.
Ancelle, handmaid, 6456. Lat. anciatra.
And, if, 5384, 5446, 6809.
An-ly, on high, 2704, 2966, 3145, &c.
Anoynted, used jocularly of a good beating, 5653. So the Fr. text, bien oint.
Antecessour, ancestor, 6359.
Antecessoures, predecessors, 4786.
A-per-se, superexcellent, lit. A by itself, 1148.
Aperly, openly, p.30, 331.
Piers Pl.
Aplace, in her place, before all, 932.
Aply, to ply, bend, 4187.
Apparaill (la pareille), the like of it (!) Apparently copied from the Fr. text; 742.
Apparailled (apparaillie), adorned, 927.
Appareill, to deck, adorn, 5236.
Appetite, desire, wish, 2621; desire, love, 2896.
Apply, to bend to, submit to, 5313. See Aply.
Arew, arrow, 6162.
Argent (argent), silver money, 1119.
Armes, coats-of-arms, painted shields, 5481; a coat-of-arms (simy.), 5494.
Army dedes, deeds of arms, gallant acts, 1738, 4134, 5745; dedes Army, 1386, 1489.
Army peple (gens d'armes), men completely armed, 2215.
Armyly (tout arme), completely armed, used as an adv., 5418.
Arson (archon), saddle-bow, 2961. Fr. arçon.
Asaid, said, 450.
Askes, ashes, 3412.
Assemble, encounter, 1728.
Assembled (assemblerent), encountered, 1328, 1725.
Assoled, prob. error for assoiled, 5224.
Astabled (establisst), established, 5281.
Astat, estate, condition, 393, 1257. All. Poems.
Astoned, stunned, benumbed, 4289.
Astronemyc, 6, | astrology.
Astronomyc, 187, | So in Lancelot, l. 432.
Astronomian, a man learned in astronomy and astrology, 12.


Bace, low, 621. See Bas. Baculere, bachelor, a novice in arms or arts. See Bachelor in Roq. 616, 1925, 4243, 5955. [The MS. has in all four places the reading “bailure,” but it is hard to see how this can be right, unless the i had the sound of j, and even then it is a strange spelling.] Bakke, in the phr. with the bakke = backwards, where with =A.S. wiþ, 4709. Balled, bahl, 3256. Ch. Bandone, disposal, 4767. “For both wise folke and unwise Were wholly to her bandon brought.” Ch. Rom. of Rose, 1163; where the orig. has a son bandon. Baptime, baptism, 1242. Barge, a ship of large size, 1284, 5666. The Fr. text says it was so called because it was
si large. Roq. says, "grande barque qui portoit trois voiles et un ancre."

Baronage (baronnye), an assembly of barons, 685, 5199. See barniez, Roq.
Barony (baronnye), the same as Baronage, 853.
Barreres (barriere), barriers, bars, 4663. [M.S. Barrore, but Pr. Parv. has Barrere, q. v.]
Bas, low; gen. in phr. "hie and bas," high and low, 4, 523, 927, 945, &c.; adv. downwards, 665.
Base; in phr. base wise (en bas), in a low soft way, in a whisper, 2916.
Baste; more basly (plus bas) = lower, 1216.
Basse, low, 6157.
Bash, be amazed, wonder, 782. O. Fr. esbahir.
Bashmed, amazed, 605, 2351, 2940.
Basterd, bastard wine, 979.
Bastiled (basti), fortified, furnished with defences, 1134.
"Bastillé, fortifié avec des tours et des créneaux." Roq.
befor, before, 1357, 4943, 5280. See Aforme.
Behest, promise, 273. Ch.
Behofull, behoveful, necessary, 3379, 4109.
Behold, sb. a look, glance, 3513.
Belay, belly, 4307, 4534.
Beument, bemoaned, 3320, 3883, 3907, &c.
Bered (enseuely), buried, 3399.
Berres, an error for Breres, briars, brush-wood, 3297. See Brere in Pr. Parv.
Besain, beseen, seemly, 858.
Beseying, busying, 3131.
Besonesse, industry, diligence, 2495.

Bete (bastue), adorned with beaten gold (?) 917. See Tyrwhitt, note to v. 981 of Cant. Tales.
Betan, the same as Bete, 4502.
Bethenke, think of, 3988.
Bette, 3034, 3035, 5192, 5441.
Bild, 1172, 4670, 5280.
Billed, 3115, 5280.
Blecere, wound, hurt, 3572. Fr. blessure.
Blenced, 3085, swerved aside, 4058, 4754. The Fr. text generally has se signa.
Bluie, quickly, 5673. Rob. of Gloucest. l. 50.
Blode, in phr. of blode = by blood, i.e. by blood relationship, 4829.
Bode, vb. tarried, abode, waited, 2958, 4058. A.S. bidan.
Bode, sb. abiding, tarrying, rest, 1937, 4466. Ch.
Boode, tarried, waited, 5414.
Bmid, awaited (vb. act.), 5414.
Bodie, sb. abiding, tarrying, rest, 1937, 4466. Ch.
Bolned (enflez), swelled, 1428.
See Morte Arthur, l. 3657.
Boode, tarried, waited, 5414.
Bood, awaited (vb. act.), 5414.
Botine, bottom, 4480. A.S. botin.
Brace, embrace, seize, 1446. "bracer; embrasser," Burguy.
Braid, Braide, Brayd, time, moment of time, 453, 486, 2828, &c. O.N. braie\^8, a rapid movement, a twinkling.

Braid (braient), cried out, lit. brayed, 2122. O. Fr. braire.

Brandes (brandist), brandishes, 5854. Unless it be an error for brandest, brandished.

Bred, broad, 5647.

Brede, breadth, 1180, 3008, 3101. Ch.

Brede, bread, 3661.

Breffes, letters, 2683.

Brandes (brandis), brandishes, 5854. - Unless it be an error for brandest, brandished.

Bred, broad, 5647.

Brede, breadth, 1180, 3008, 3101. Ch.

Brede, bread, 3661.

Brizet, small twigs, brushwood, 2399. "Broce, menu bois;" Burgny. "Brozettes, small heath wherof headbrushes are made;" Cotg.

Bristly, bright, 2149.

Burlid, striped; only in the phr. "burlid with siluer and Azure," 2809, 3492, 3870. "Burelle d'argent et d'azur;" (We blaze it thus) he bears so many clessets argent and azure;" Cotg. Cf. the heraldic term Barruly.

Buschinentes (bachines), prob. an error for Buschinetes or Baschinetes, basnets, light helmets, 2148. See Bassinet in Cotg.

Bustesly (raylement), boisterously, violently, fiercely, forcibly, 2262, 3257, 4171, 4271. See Boystows in Pr. Parv.

By-ment, bemoaned, 1346. See Bement.

Byrnde, burnt, 3408.

Catife, wretch, 3318.

Calange, challenge, i. e. claim, 3725. "Calanger, as Chalanger." Cotg.


Canoun, canon; right canoun = canon law, 8.

Carectes, characters, 6605.

Carfoukes (carrefourg), places where four roads meet, 1819. See Cartehouse in Pr. Parv. [Carfax is often derived from quatre voies; why not from care fourps (quatuor fours) ?]

Carfty, crafty, 5708.

Casedony, chaledony, 4510. "And suppe riche casedoines;" Fl. & Blanch. 286.

Caste, plannest, intendest, 3016.

Catell, catell, chattels, goods, 457.

Catholike, 462, 3500.

Cautels (catddle), trickery, cunning, attempt at overreaching, 5563. See Roq.

Caytif, 2166, } wretch.

Caytiff, 3016,

Ceseon, season, 4150, 5521.

Celest, celestial, 5449.

Celestif, celestial, 3288.

Cereatly, p. 18, 6354, } in due order.

Ceriatly, 1836, } order.

Lat. seriatim.
Cerched, searched, 4743.
Cerching, searching, 4656.
Certes, certainly, 3665, 4984.
Cesse, cease, 4043.
Chanon (chanoine), a canon, 644, 2626.
Chapitre-hous, chapter house, 3249.
Charge, vb. to heed, reck, care, 3937.
Charge, sb. regard, care, 4124.
Chaufe, to chafe, warm, 224.
Chaufed, chafed, warmed, 4024; chafed, angry, 3258.
Chauising, chasing, 4911.
Chere (chier), dear, 2749.
Cherefull (tres chier), dear, 2585.
Cherished, vb. neut. grew up, 4035.
Cherisly, dearly, 5338.
Cherishly, dearly, 122.
Chermat (chere mate), fallen, 5882. See Char and Mat in Burguy.
Chersh, to cherish, 6318.
Ches, chose, 326.
Chese, choose, 4965. Ch.
Cheue, achieve, 597.
Childed (enfant), bare, 1157, 1193; born, 4401.
Chine, chink, 4343. A.S. cine.
Chinesse, chine, back; chinesse bred = broad back; unless chinesse is intended for a gen. case, and then chinesse bred = back’s breadth; see brede. The Fr. has simply leschine; 5647.
Chirsly (moult chier), dearly, 23.
Clariners, clarion-players, trump-
Comynte, community, 4072.

"Comowunte, communitas."

Pr. Parv.

Concellour, counsellor, 3860.

Conclude, include, 6553.

Conduce, 6465, to conduct.

Conforture, aid, assistance, strengthening, 4149.

Confraternite, 39.

Coniectures, instructions, lessons, p.100.

Conisaunce, 802, to know, p.104.

Connyngliede, skill, p.5.

Conquere, to acquire, 3942, 4319.

Centred, encountered, met, 3346.

Obs. It is followed by again against; contred again met.

Contring [followed by again] encountering, meeting, 1640; [without again] encountering in a hostile manner, 3030.

Contrepane, comparison, 6587.

[The word here means lit. a counterpart, a sense which it has but very seldom; see a Pane, or parte of a thynge;]

Pr. Parv. “Counterpaine, the counterpart of a deed;” Wright; Prov. Dict. The usual sense of Fr. contrepan is a gage, pledge.

Contune, to continue to be, to remain, 2207, 2881.


Corage, intent, p.80; heart, mind, 355; thoughts, feelings, 1895, 2779; mind, will, 2012; of corage = in meaning, 530. See Corage, Roq.

Cordiall, prob. = by heart, p.10; unless it is a mere expletive.

Cornicles, chronicles, 1223.

Corporall, large of body, 4456.

Corsed, cursed, 4310.

Cost, side, quarter, direction, 605. O.Fr. coste.

Costile, a knife, dagger, 4334. See Custile.

Costile-yre, knife-iron, knife-blade, 4336.

Coude, knew, 9.

Couent, convent, 2659, 3254, 3266, 3321. O.Fr. covent.


Couyne, contrivance, arrangement, manner, way, 5582. Ch. See Convine, Roq.

Cowd, could, 4918.

Cowde, knew, 14.

Coyly (coyement), quietly, secretly, 2184.

Cracching, scratching, clawing, 5892. “Clawyū or cracchyū.” Pr. Parv.

Creat, created, p.32.

Cressed, increased, grew, 5604.

Cressith, increaseth, augmenteth, 4262.

Cross, sword-hilt, so named from its shape, 4711, 5904.

Crown, tonsure, 3224.

Crusedly, cursedly, 5246.

Crussing, cursing, 2851.

Cure, care, charge, 2617. O.Fr. cure. Roq.

Curtois, 703, courteous.

Curtoys, 97, courteous.

Custell, a dagger, 5853. - Fr. couteau, O.Fr. coustel, cottle, Lat. cultellus.

Custiles (couteaulx), daggers, large knives, 1722.

Dampned (dampne), damned, 283, 307, 3335.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Damycel, damsel, 936.
Dan = Lat. dominus, a title often given to monks, 3259, 3272. Ch.
Dangerous, sparing, niggardly, 1812. Ch.
Debonair, 6525, Debonaire, 28, 828, courteous, Debonayr, p. 91, gentle. Ch.
Debonerly, courteously, 895. Debonerly, 895.
Debonerte, affability, sweet and gentle demeanour, 3888. Debonnairete, Cotg.
Dede, deed, 4364.
Dede, dead, 263, 297, &c.
Dede-cold, cold in death, 292, 453.
Defautes, defects, failings, p. 74. Deing, dying, 5946.
Delefull, doleful, 3293. Delieverly, quickly, 2859, 4138.
Demage, damage, 1892, 2316, 3035. Demain (demaine), service, use; [lit. property, domain], 5164. See demaigne, Roq.
Deme, to judge, 3600. Ch. Demenyng (demaine), conduct, demeanour, 3584. See demainer, Roq.
Diminute, diminished, 5680.
Demurly, softly; demurly in audience, too softly to be well heard, 788. Fr. text, tout bas.
Departson, departure, 104, 1079, 3362, 5024, 5260, &c. Depeynted, painted, 5503. Ch. has depeint.
Derain, 4643. See Deray. Deray (desroy), foolishness, lit. disorderly conduct, 4524. Contr. from Disarray, as O.Fr. desroy from desarroy. Desherite, disinherited, 1046.

Determine, to come to an end, 5596, 5974, 6135. Deuer, duty, 6218. Ch. Deuin, to recount; to deuin, so to speak, p.108, 3660. See deviner, Bur.
Deuise, sb. agreement, manner agreed on, 505; direction, appointment, 2385. Deuise, vb. in the phr. to deuise = to relate, to recount, 479, 728, 983, 2846, 3744, 5603. [A mere expletive phrase, always at the end of a line, and introduced for the sake of the rime.]
Devoir, 941, duty. Fr.devoir. Devor, 5304.
Disma[ill]ed (desmailles), deprived of its mail, hacked about, rent, 4357.

Disnature, unnatural conduct, 376.

Disordinatly, foolishly, lit. disorderly, 3560, 3670.

Disording (desordonnee), unruly, unbridled, loose in behaviour, 2768.

Dispend, spend, 41.

Displesance, sorrow, 3741.

Dispoilled, undressed; desp. hym, undressed himself, 2888; desp. hir, undressed herself, 2908.

Distayn, deprive, 509. Ch. [lit. to deprive of colour, cause to fade.]

Distrained (destrains), afflicted, vexed, 614. Ch.

Distroed, destroyed, 4673, 4790.

Distrussand (destruiant), destroying, 4082.

Dole (dueil, douleur), grief, 657, 3206, 3669, 3763, 3969. Ch.

Dolent (dolent), mournful, sorry, 514, 3395.

Dongun, 1130, † donjon tower, Donjon, 4766, † tower, dungeon.

Donion, 2983, † See Donjon in Burguy.

Doubtance (doubtance), dread, 2130.

Doubte, sb. fear, 2541; vb. are in fear, fear the worst, 1336. O.Fr. douter.

Doubted, feared, 1209, 1218, 1369, 2814, &c. ryght doubted (redoubte), much feared or respected, 829.

Doubty, doughty, 1636, 4821, 6281.

Doubtyng, fearing, 4819.

Doucet (douxe), sweet, 877, 972, 1008, 3898.

Doughter, daughter, 5389.
Encheson (achoison), occasion, reason, 558, 2744, 5286. O. Fr. achoise or encheison, Lat. occasio. Ch.
Endly, having an end, final, 4011.
Enduryng, dining, 4629.
Endys, ends, 2531.
Enfaimling (affamee), starving, succumbing to hunger, 1300.
Enfeffed, intrusted, 2617.
En-gree, in good part, 3819.
Engine, skill, 5016; craft, contrivance, 4244, 4392, 5613, 5708. Lat. ingenium.
Enhaused, raised, elevated, 6255.
Enheritour, heir, 5013, 5357.
Enlesing, lose (inf. mood), 5625.
Enmeddis, amidst, 4223, 5823.
Enmyddes, amidst, 870, 933, 1841, 3085, 3097, 4894, &c.
Enpreising, praising, 1671.
Enpreynted, imprinted, impressed, p.10.
Ensemble, together, 2474, 3996.
Ensuffering, suffering, 4627.
Entend (actendez), understand, heed, 2746.
Entendement, understanding, endeavour, p.81, p.84. Ch.
Entent, intention, will, wish, p. 18, p.82, p.155; thoughts, 3300, 3394. Ch.
Ententifly, attentively, 5459.
Entercommanuing (sentre-commanderent), mutually commending, 103.
Entere, inter, 4941.
Entered (enterray), interred, 1534, 3401, 3628.

Entermet, to have dealings with, 215. [O.Fr. entremetre, but this gen. has the sense of undertake, attempt, like Entremete below.]
Enterial, 591.
Enteurial, 1095, 2455, } time; lit. interval.
Entreloued, loved mutually, 3734.
Entrelouing, loving mutually, 6352.
Entremete (entremectre), to undertake, to take care to do, 3657.
Entrepreignant (entrepreinnant), enterprising, 2504, 5073, 5355.
Entreproched, approached each other, 2225.
Entresemblung, encounter, 1730.
Entreual, 45, } time. See Entreual, 5165, } Enterial.
Enuiron, prep. round about, 570; adv. round about, round and round, 877, 2905, 4800, 5520. Fr. environ. Ch.
Enuironne, adv. round about, 5480; prep. round about, 3874.
Enuyron, adv. round, 4447.
Equipollent (equipolent), equivalent, to the same effect, 530.
Erbigage, lodging, tent, 1017.
O.Fr. erbegier, Roq.
Ert, (thou) art, 4256, 5573.
Eschawfe, warm, 969. O.Fr. eschafier.
Escarmish, (escarmuce), skirmish, 2210.
Eschange, change, 3727. Ch.
Eschawfe, warm, 969. O.Fr. eschafier.
Eschew, flee from, avoid, 4074. Ch.
Escrried, cried out, 2185. O.Fr. escrrier.
Esglise, a church, 2630. O.Fr. esglise.
Espouse, bride, 931, 954, 1000.
Estat, rank, 794, 813; position, 2903; state, condition, 3496.
Ch.
Etern, eternal, 6437. Ch.
Eneridell, every whit, entirely, 2800, 2920, 4253.
Everydele, entirely, 423. A.S.
Eteridell, all over, entirely, 2800, 3755.
Exampleir (lexemplaire), a copy, p.131.
Exemplair, a model, a pattern, 6377. [Lat. exemplar has both the above meanings.]
Exort, exhortation, 3972.
Expresse, exactly, 3004.
Eaccion (façon), fashion, make, 3100.
Fade, to dispose, arrange, p.164.
A.S. fadian, to set in order, dispose.
Fader, father, 683, 4642, 5118.
Faidar, 6274, father.
Fayder, 5258, father.
Faders, father’s, 4628.
Famylyons, hungry, 6258. Lat. famelieus, O. Fr. familiaus.
Fantain, fountain, 323, 765, 4161.
Fantesie, fancy, 358; a vain thing, p.58. Ch.
Fantesied, fancied, imagined, p.45.
Fantesye, 3485, fancy.
Fantisie, p. 58, fancy.
Fardell (fardel), a bundle, 573. Ch.
Fauchon (faulx, branc), a falchion, sword, 3042, 3044, 3051. Lat. falx.
Faut, to lack, 2175.
Faute, to lack, 797; hence fauteth = lacketh, 6379; fauteth, miswritten for fautith, lack, 1147. Cf. Sp. fallar,
It. fallar.
Fauteed, failed, wanted, 4278.
Fauting, lacking, p.5.
Fayn, an error for Sayn, say, p.184.
Fe; in the phr. in fe = under tribute, 2511; also in fe = in fief, in fee, 2630. Moeso-Goth. fijhu.
Feblesse, feebleness, 3740. Ch.
Feld, a field, 1702, 2216. Ch.
Fele, many, 2518, 2683. Moeso-G. jilu. Ch.
Felony, perfidy, treason, 2833. Roq.
Femine, feminine, 3820.
Fend, a fiend, 4075, 4141, 5783. Ch.
Fenestre, 3823, 4932, a window.
Fenistre, 3863, a dow.
Lat. fenestra.
Fentise, cowardice, 4214.
Feresly, fiercely, 5870.
Ferron, 629, &c. See A-ferrom.
Fers, fierce, 4655.
Fet (1) fetched, 2782; (2) feats, acts, 6330.
Fiffe, five, 5265.
Fifte, fifth, 4426.
Fill, fell, 3046, 3088, 4286, 5894; befel, fell out, 446, 2731.
Fille, fell, 5604.
Fin, 3645. See Fine (1).
Finabilly (finablement), finally, 5385, 6493.
Finance (finance), ransom, 1853. Burguy.
Find, in the phr. wel find = to pay, recompense, 1291.
Fine (1), extreme, very, 4175, 6155; see Fin in Burguy; (2) conclusion, end, 4011. Ch.
Flaelles (fleaulx), flails, 2999. Lat. flagellum.
Floure-delise (fleurs de lis), fleurs-de-lis, 1006.
Fly, flew, fled away, 4905, 5652. Foley, foolish, 3546.
Folily, foolishly, 5602. Ch.
Folyly, foolishly, 3260.
Fonden, found, p. 173.
Fong, received, 2423; got, 1265; received, took in, 1333.
Fonge, to take, 4828. Ch. AS.
Forcelet, should rather be spelt Forceret, a casket, 1081.
"Forceret, petit coffre, cassette." Roq. See note to "Forcoree" in Pr. Parv.
Forigers, foragers, 1815.
Formelet, should rather be spelt Fermelet, a brooch, a jewelled fastening, 1082. "Fermal, fermail, fermeillet, Agrafe, boucle, chaUne, crochet, carcan." Roq.
Forshend, utterly destroyed, 3306. A.S. for and secedan.
Forsmeté (detrenche), smote down, 2104.
Fortake, kept prisoner, 5386.
Fortaking (pourprins), 5591.
The Eng. word means a taking of prisoners, cf. Fortake; but the true meaning of pourprins is an enclosure, a domain. See Bar. and Roq.
Forth-progresse, journey, 3199, 5029.
For-why, wherefore, why, 3117.
Forwoxn, overgrown, huge, 2990. A.S. forweaxun.
Fouchesafe, vouchsafe, 2039.
Founre, 2650. The words "Raymentonde" and "stounde" show that the word should be "founde." It should also prob. be joined to in preceding it; and we get in-founde = enter (sc. heaven), go in, go up, ascend. It is thus a compound of the O.E. founde, to go (Morte Arthure, 1228; Lancelot, 2612) A.S. fundian. Cf. A.S. in-gan, to enter.
Fourge, to make, perform, p.4, p.25, p.133.
Fourging, construction, 1002.
Foyson (foison), plenty, 32. See Fuson, Fusion.
Franchise, freedom, 3745; territory (see Pr. Parv.), 4961; hertes franchise = to heart's content, 5472.
Franchised, free, noble, lit. rendered a free man, 1487.
Franke, free, 1506.
Fransh, French, ^9. 198.
Fray, terror, 4901.
Friendlyhed, friendliness, 1403, 6448; of friendlyhede, for friendship's sake, 3022.
Frenshest, most Frenchlike, p.175.
Frike (friique), fresh, delicate, 2803. "Fryke, or craske, or yn grete helthe. Crassus." Pr. Parv. See frique, Roq.
Fro-thens, thence, 3294, 3326, 3449, &c.
Fro-whens, whence, 3762, 5830.
Full, in an evil hour, lit. foullly, 3263; that full hym come = that he had come to him in an evil hour, 2992; Fr. text, que mal y vint.
Fume, smoke, 3957.
Fumy, smoky, 3954.
Fundementes, foundations, 1121.
Fusion (fioison), plenty, 128, 4362, 5466; a number, multitude, 2283, 2743. Lat. fioiso.
Fuson, plenty, 985, 5287; number, 1113, 1721.
Fuste (joing), fist, 4301.
Fyn, faithful, sincere, 3831.
"Fine, vraie, sincere, fidele."
Roq.
Garison, healing; take hym in garison = undertake to heal him, 1335. O.Fr. garison, from vb. garir = Meso-G. warjan.
Gain, against, 2827, 3749, 3793.
Gane, did (aux. vb.), 5402.
Garnyson, stronghold, castle, 5467. See Garsone in Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has en garnison = by way of provisions, but the translator has not so taken it.]
Gayn, towards, 345, 564; against, 2791, 5863.
Geant, giant, 4676, 4687, &c.
Geaunt, 3233, giant.
Giaunt, 3197, "giant."
Gent, fair, pretty, 2441, 3490, 3590.
Gentile (gente), gentle, noble, 308; noble person, 643; pretty, 1611. The comp. is Gentelere, prettier, 1612; the sup. is Gentillest, prettiest, 342.
Gentilesse, graciousness, nobleness, 3175. Roq.
Gere, contrivance, plan; lit. gear, 276.
Gesian (gesine), child-bed, 4391, 4397, 4529, 5581. From O.Fr. gesir, Lat. iacere.
Gete, procure; gete do hym for to dy = procure his death, 3655; see Gett.
Gett, 3942, gotten, obtained. Gette, 4319. In l. 5932 the sense is, whether (the stroke) was gotten with the back or the sword-edge.
Gidour, guide, 4105, 5833.
Gif, given, 5798.
Gisarmes (pl.), a weapon of which the shape is disputed, perhaps a battle-axe with a spike at the back; see Bur., Roq., and Way’s note to Gyserne in Pr. Parv. 1722. Used by Ch.
Gise, guise, manner, way, 5866. Ch.
Glente (glissa), glanced aside, 253. Ch. O.Fr. glinser, Roq.
Glinte (clissa), slipped, 4934.
Glode, glided, 726.
Goldish, golden, 1348.
Goddoughter, 3722.
Godmodere, godmother, 274.
Goodlokest, goodliest, fairest, 343. [In the Piers Pl. MSS. are many such forms, as, Lightloker, Mystiloker, Sadloker, Silokest, Wikkedlokest, Wisloker.]
Goste, spirit, 3213, 4927; creature, being, 4809, just as A.S. guest = a guest, a man, a human being.
Gostes, spirits, p. 46.
Gouernail, behaviour, 844; arrangement, management, contrivance, 861, 5561, 5774.
Gouernall, control, might, 6070.
Gouerneth hir, comports herself, 2765.
Grad, shouted, 2253. A.S. grown.
Grame, grief, 2663, 3310, 4469, 4940. A.S. grama. Ch.
Gre, agreement, accord, 3951. Fr. gré.
Greabill, suitable to the occasion, devout, 5176.
Greabilly, satisfactorily, pleasantly, 1543.
Greable, agreeable to, 6580.
Gree; see En-gree, 3819.
Gree, I agree, 5019.
Grees (degrees), steps, 4917, 4908, 5434. Cf. grissens in Forby.
Greitbed tbam, got themselves ready, arrayed themselves, 1411.
Greithed, made ready, 4168.
Gret, greeted, 5524.
Gretth, an error, either for Greeth = agreeth, suiteth; or else for Goeth, 6561.
Grice, steps, 1427. See Greens.
Grint, ground, 3267. Ch.
Grinting, grinding, 2141. Ch.
Grohund (liurier), a greyhound, 1389.
Grome, man, being, 2990. Cf. Gawayn, 1006.
Gud, good, 4952.
Gudfader, godfather, 274.
Guerdon, sb. a reward, 551; rb. to reward, 1876. O.H.G. widerlon, changed in Low Lat. into widerdonum, whence It. guiderdone, O.Fr. guerdon.
Habill (habille), able, dexterous, mighty, 2355.
Hable, active, 4536, 4639, 4876.
Habound, abound, 4429.
Had, was, 5065, 5326; was had = was, 5770, 5993; placed, set, 5492. Cf. Fr. y avoir.
Hamwarde, homeward, 3450.
Han = hath, 2699. [Prob. an error due to the pl. sones preceding. Fr. text, a mis.]
Hanche (hance), hanunch, thigh, 3054, 4333; hanches = thighs, 5643.
Hansell, an earnest, a gift (ironical), 4885. O.N. and Dan. handsel.
Hapne, to happen to do, to succeed in doing a thing, 5884; hapned, happened on, lighted on, 5871. [Wrongly translated; the Fr. has hupper = clutch, seize.]
Hardesse (hardiesse), hardihood, 5948.
Hattyd of, hated by, 5091.
Haunt, to use, p.167; to exercise, prove, 2524; go, approach (Fr. text, yroit), 4396. O.Fr. hanter, Bur.
Hanour, possessions, riches, wealth, 3191, 3323, 4769, 5685. Fr. avoir.
Haused, raised, lifted up, 3083, 4265, 5883.
Hautyng, loud, 236. See Hautain.
Hawse, exaltation, 498. O. Fr. hault, Lat. altus, high.
He, high, 132, 4631, 6395.
Hed, heat, 3557. [Prob. an error for het or hete, as in 1. 2935.] Fr. text, chault.
Heder, hither, 152, 2843. A.S. hider.
Heder-to, hitherto, to this time, 4412.
Hend, gracious, courteous, 6144. See All. Poëms.
Hent, to take in hand, undertake, 599; took, 129, 3909; hent
and went = took and went, 810; to have, 1837; receive, take, p.157, 683, 2411, 5241; to procure, 5740; to hent = for one to take, 5808; hys sight hent = catch with his sight, perceive (Fr. text, percevoir), 5493; arrived at, got to, 5272; received, had, 5009. A.S. hentan, to hunt for, catch.

Ch.

Herber, arbour, 6024. Ch.
Herbigage, lodging, 1790.
Herbiging, taking up their quarters, 1313.
Herbourg, to harbour, shelter, 6523. A.S. herbergan.

Herd, hard, 2586, 4482; herd fast, 5645, where Fr. text has dure feste = hard feast, said ironically.
Herdly, tending a herd, shepherd-like, 5117. [An ill-coined word.]
Herite, heritage, acquisition; non herite = there is no acquiring anything, p.203; inheritance, possession, 38. O.Fr. herite, contr. from Lat. hereditas.

Bur.

Hert, heart, 3206.
Hertly, heartily, p.73.
Hest, behest, command, 90, 907, 5313. Ch.

Hiduous, hideous, 5136.
Hiduou[s]nesse, horror, 3494.
Hiest, highest, 4925.
Hild, held, 4994.
Hire, to hear, 3877, 4763, 5055, 5529.
Hiring, hearing, 4202.
His, sign of gen. case, 4874.
Hit, it, 3109.
Ho, who, p.134, p.136, 2368; which (of two), 4122, 4131; whoso, 5377.
Ho many, how many, 4042. [If so, ho should be hou, as elsewhere; but probably many is an error for may, as at l. 6572, and we should read "ho may" = who-ever may.]

Hodelnesse, secrecy, 2080; oblivion, 5961. Hidellike = secretly, occurs in Gen. & Ex. l. 2882. Cf. Sc. hode, to hide; Jam.

Hoder, whither, 2764.
Hoir (hoir), an heir, 1973.
Hoirs, heirs, 508, 5323, 5554, 5684.
Hold, held as, considered as, 5204, 5338.
Hold, faithful, friendly, 2146. A.S. hold.
Holde, holding, possession, p.34. Or else, in holde may mean very faithful. See In.

Hole, holy, 4963.
Honorous, 3251, honourable.
Honourous, 3236.
Hostage, temporary abode, 2475. See hoste in Bur.

Houith, behoveth, 3657.
Houred, lit. divided in hours, hence set, appointed; always in phr. houred braid, houred tyde (or the like), = set time, particular moment, 528, 2695.
Hout, out, 5652.
How-were-it, howbeit, 3207.
Hag, huge, 4940, 5959.
Hume, damp, wet, 2882. Contr. from humid, of which the Prov. forms are humid, humit, and humens. Raynouard. [The Fr. text has merely en veg puis.]
Hurd, 3564, 3765, heard.
Hurde, 4783, 5258.
Hurteling, knocking together, pushing, tussling, 4328, 4330. Fr. heurter.
Hy. See An-hy.
Hy, hasten, 2950. Ch.
Hyduous, hideous, terrible, 5770.
Hyer, in phr. more hyer = higher, 5435.
Hyre, hear, 3388, 4405.
Hys, sign of gen. case, 6007.
Iape, a jest, 2636, 5695. Ch.
Iawne (Iawne), yellow, 971.
Iesseron, coat of small mail, 4335.
I-horsed, mounted on horseback, provided with horses, 886.
Ie, 1570, 3040, )
Ie, 1575, } isle, island.
Image, creature, 1508.
In, a shortened form of Inly, very, exceedingly, 5077, 5899, 6023.
Incongrav, unfitly, wrongly, 4389.
Iniquite, misery, misfortune, 4156.
Inly (lit. inwardly), very, extremely, 27, 168, 3950, 4656, 5072, 5869. Ch.
Innepec, suddenly, on a sudden (?) 3823. Apparently contr. from Fr. inopine.
I-now, enough, 165, 457, 781, 804, &c.
Instaunce, time, 1064, 2932, 3106.
Into (en), in, 875.
Joint, an arrangement, lit. a juncture or joining together, 5019.
Iolyest, prettiest, 343.
Ionglyng, jangling, i.e. garrulousness, 3751. "Jangelynge, Garrulacyo." Pr. Parv.
Iornay, lit. a day's work; hence trouble, labour, p. 141.
Iournay, a day, 1851, 4068; a set day, 58; hence a day's conflict, a fighting-bout, combat, 4123.
Cf. the expression, "to gain the day."
Joustes, joustings, 988, 989. Ch.
Joynant, adjoining, 4513.
Joyned, enjoined, 5146.
Is, used as gen. case-ending, 28, 5750.
Jumelles (jumelles), strengthened with cross-pieces, made doubly strong, 1182. Fr. jumeler, der. from Lat. gemellus.
Iuparde, a doubtful result, possible danger, 5458. Fr. jeu parti.
Justice, vb. to rule, govern, 3807.
Justicere, a dispenser of justice, 5308.
Kechins, kitchens, 881.
Kennyng, the extreme distance at sea to which the sight can reach, 3365. [This distance has been much over-rated, as thus—"Scylley is a kennyng, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste point of Cornewaule;" Leland, Itin. iii. f. 6.—"thre kennynges ferre on the see, that is, one and twenty leghes ferre;" Prose Romance of Melinsine, fol. 61.]
Kepe, kept, 2931.
Keruyng, cutting, 5889.
Knakked, hurried(l), 2784. [The Fr. text has Se Rapa = he hastened. "Kock, to move briskly about," Wright. But see the note.]
Knakking, knocking, 1733.
Knewlich, 844, ) knowledge.
Knowlich, 4121, ) knowledge.
Knowleeing, knowledge, 2773.
Kynred, kindred, 213.
Labbyng, blabbing, 3751. Du. 
labben. Ch.
Lachesse, negligence, p.11, 6574.
O.Fr. lachesse. Ch.
Lad, led, 1251, 2754, 5800; led 
over, changed, 2938; con-
ducted, governed, 5322.
Lade, passed through, endured, 
suffered, 3785; much as in 
the phr. to lead a life.
Lateis, lattice, grating, cage, 
4747.
Latise, (traille), the same as 
Lateis, 4666.
Launcegay, a javelin, dart, 2108.
Compounded of Fr. lance, and 
zagaye, a Moorish pike, Sp. 
azagaya. Ch.
Leche, a physician, 5143. Ch.
Led, laid down, 2889.
Lemys, limbs, 4237. A.S.
Urn.
Lenght, length, 5859.
Lepete, leapt, 3046. 
[An error 
for lepte; see 1. 
3070.]
Lere, to teach, 77. A.S.
Iceran.
Lese, to lose, 506, 1454, 
2892, 3642, &c. Ch.
Lesing, a lie, 6293. A.S. lea-
sung. Ch.
Lesing, losing, 5548.
Lesingmonger, a liar, 3604.
Lesingour, a liar, 5753.
Lesse, lose, 3542, 3752.
Lest, least, 69, 87.
Lete doo make, caused to be 
made, 5167; lete make, cause 
to be made, 691.
Lette, a hindrance, 5903. Ch.
Lette, prevented, hindered, 3047. 
A.S. labtan.
Lene, in the phr. parting leue = 
leave taking, 5060.
Leuer, liefer, 3205. Ch.
Leuer, (leuier), a lever, a huge 
mace, 4177, 4265.
Leuerey, delivery, 560.

Leuyng, hys = during his life, 
5329; leuing, life, 488.
Lifte, left (hand), 4496.
Ligging, lying, 4511, 4785. A.S. 
liggan. Ch.
Light, lieth, 453, 1023, 4523, 
6105.
Linage, lineage, 1036, 4630, 
4926, 5033.
Loge, tent, 985.
Logge, lodging, abode, 5168.
Logges (logies), tents, 2220.
Loke (enserray, serre), locked 
up, constrained, bound up, 
1533; was locked, was bound 
up, 3774. Ch.
Lome, frequently, 119.
"The Lion lete cri, as hit was 
do,
For he hird lome to tell.”
197. A.S. ge-lóme.
Longing, belonging, 1939, 2671.
Longith hir, which belongs to 
er, 2415.
Loos (los), praise, p.96, 1225, 
4215, 5387. Ch. “Loos, or 
fame.” Pr. Parv.
Loote, lot, 3184.
Lored, taught, 3962. See Lere.
Lorn out fro wit, deprived of 
wit, 3885.
Losce (perte), loss, 3434, 3608.
Lose (loz), praise, p.157. See 
Loos.
Louers, louvres (see note), 1175.
“That no light leopen yn at 
lover ne at loup.” Piers Pl. 
Lowpes, loop-holes, 1175.
Lust, listeth, wishes, desires, p. 
31, 2994; please, vouche-
safes, 286; please, 367, 689, 
760; hym luste = it please 
him, 5379.
Lust, sb. will, pleasure, 328. 
A.S. lust. Ch.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Lyn, linen; or rather perhaps, flax. A.S. lin, flax.
Lynde, lime-trees; wodes lynde = lime-trees of the wood; 159. A.S. lind, pl. linde, (Caedn. p. 197, l. 4).
Lyuerey, delivery, 560.
Made, mad, 3559.
Mahyme (mehengnie), disgrace, blemish, 6356. See mahain in Bur. and Roq. Cf. It. magagna. [Mahyne would perhaps be a better spelling.]
Maine, a suite, 1087, 1305.
Maistry, in the phr. to gret maistry = with great art; Fr. text, par grant maistris, 4503; maistrie, art, skill, 188.
Maker, poet, author, 6106.
Malerous, evil-disposed, 6473.
Malice, adj. (yrez), angry, irate, 2780, 3039, 3446, 3537, &c.
Manhede, manhood, p.92.
Manion, many a one, p.170.
Manlyhed, manliness, 4352.
Manoir, mansion, 619.
Manson, abode, 5169.
Manyon, many a one, 634.
Marbre, marble, 4101.
Marches (marches), frontiers, and hence, lands, territory, 5085; frontier-lands, 5314.
Maried, vexed, 4549. [An error for Marred, q. v.]
Markois, a marquis, p.115, 850; marquises, 6342.
Marred (marriz), vexed, afflicted, 2140, 3509, 3516. Roq.
Matrimonial, sb. a wedding, 952.
Mayne, or Maynee, a suite, a company of followers, household, 826, 2456, 4914, 5199.
Me, men, people, used like the Fr. on, 6562; K. Horn, 366.
Meeches, the midst, 2531.
Meene, middling, 4061.
Mene, 4613, } mean, way.
Mene, 4983, }
Melled (risesent), lit. meddled with; hence, had to do with, were busy about, 1545; (mesle), lit. mixed; hence, smeared, 2819.
Melling, an encounter, 1326.
Memoir, memorial, p.151.
Menal, menial, 900.
Menuing, diminution, 6570.
Mercy, in phr. graunt mercy = many thanks, 5533.
Messe (messe), mass, 943, 953, 6095. Ch.
Metephisike, p.80.
Metrely, metrically, 6566.
Mene, move, 6557.
Mened, moved, 3275.
Meneth, moveth, 5564.
Middles, amidst, 5779.
Ministre (monstier), minster, 2596, 2621, 3693.
Minstrie, minster, 3319, 4856.
Mis-caimce, mishance, harm, 5642.
Miscreantes, misbelievers, pagans, p.52.
Misded, misdeed, sin; hence, untruth, 5662.
Misdede, misdid, sinned, 4645.
Misfall, to have misfortune, be unlucky, 3614.
Mister, need, 5213, 5874, 6253.
Mistriste, mistrust, 4108. Roq.
Mo,more, 964, 3696. A.S. mü. Ch.
Glossarial Index.

Moder, mother, 4850, Ch; adj. mother, native, 6573.
Moisted, moistened, 3574.
Moisty, moist, 3953.
Moitees, halves, 5936.
Moitie {mottle), half, 734.
Mondiall (mondain), worldly, of this world, 18; earthly, human, 3915. Prov. mondial.
Montance, amount, quantity, number, 5229. Eoq.
Morteis, to grant in mortmain, 6083. See Amortir, Cotg.
Mortesing, granting in mortmain, 5287.
Most, 4987, } must. Ch.
Moste, 5291, }
Mouth, to speak, utter, 2852.
Mow, may, are able, 5446. Ch.
Muable, changeable, 814. Fr.
muable.
Munnurhed, murmuring, complaint, 3603.
Musarde (musart), one who is bemused, a fool, 5537. Bur.
Muserde, as Musarde, 5559.
Muses, thoughts, musings, 3431, 6513.
Mustred, fully exhibited, shown, 3003. O.Fr. mostrer. Sp. and Port. mostrar.
Mynstracy, minstrelsy, 944; Lancelot, 2762.
Mynstre, a minster, 4987, 5247.
Natheles, nevertheless, p.6, 5882.
Nauce, ship, 5673. See Nave, Roq.
Nawhere, nowhere, 4388, 4483.
Nay; in the phr. is no nay = it cannot be denied, 501, 3023, 3665. Ch.
Nere, never, 5702.
Nerre, nearer, 4111, 5826. A.S. nearra.
Neuer-for-neuer, never at any time, 4906, 5139.
Nobleded, nobleness, 6339.
Nobles, renown, 21; splendour, 5474.
Noblesse, grandeur, splendour, 5438, 5460; renown, 2658; see Noblesce, Roq.
Nobley, fine apparel, rich clothing, 2656.
Noght-for-that (non pourtant), nevertheless, 2815, 4077, 4222.
Noisance (ennui), vexation, 1865, 1892; displeasure, 3538, 5535; grief, 3373, 3738, 3915, 5641.
Nombred, numbered, 3687.
Nome, to take, 1403. Meso-G. and A.S. niman.
Norish, nurse's, 3806; nurse, 3837; nurses, 4025.
Noriture, nurture, 3837.
Not-for-that, notwithstanding, 4703; nevertheless, 5883.
Nouell, novel, new, 5194, 5397; news, 2717, &c.
Nouels (nouuelles), news, 45, 4432, 4740.
Nouelles, news, 1627, 1949, 2125, 2206, &c.
Noyed (ennoyee), vexed, annoyed, 242, 1866; was vexed, grieved, 623.
Noyng, sorrow, grief, 2126.
Noyours (nysans), annoyers, foes, 1663.
Noysance (ennuy), discomfort, trouble, grief, 383, 401; annoyance, offence, 2512.
O, one, a, 3770, 3773. Ch.
Obluay, 3798, 5416, } oblivion.
Obluy, 5137, 5141, }
Occision, slaughter, 5320, 5908.
Oder, other, 5108.
Of, off, 5825, 5889, &c.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offeryng</td>
<td>dealing a blow</td>
<td>3090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of-fors</td>
<td>perforce</td>
<td>5487, 5804, 6405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of-new</td>
<td>newly; lately; anew</td>
<td>3082, 3511, 6101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On-lif</td>
<td>alive</td>
<td>4204, 2417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ooste</td>
<td>host</td>
<td>1313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ope</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>4907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or</td>
<td>ere, made provision for</td>
<td>4084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordained</td>
<td>made provision for</td>
<td>2428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordanyng</td>
<td>set in order, draw up</td>
<td>2222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinat</td>
<td>regular</td>
<td>p.188, Ch. ordination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinance</td>
<td>appointment, due order</td>
<td>63, 699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orgulous</td>
<td>proud; surly, furious</td>
<td>2955, 5771, 3543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orison</td>
<td>prayer</td>
<td>4969, 5171, 6425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orpheline</td>
<td>an orphan</td>
<td>1708</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Os</td>
<td>as, 554, 2076, 3372, 6424</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ousy</td>
<td>the name of a wine</td>
<td>982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>or, p.198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ouermette</td>
<td>excessive, immense</td>
<td>3101, 3171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ouerthwart</td>
<td>perversely, hence</td>
<td>4015, 3993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ouse (toit)</td>
<td>eaves</td>
<td>5504, 5654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owayne</td>
<td>he had; possessed, held</td>
<td>1298, 1521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owe</td>
<td>to possess, own, have with one</td>
<td>75, 4546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paceyfed</td>
<td>see Pateyfed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pagent</td>
<td>page</td>
<td>p.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain</td>
<td>721, see Pane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panche</td>
<td>paunch</td>
<td>5773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pane</td>
<td>a stake, 724, the same as Pain in 721, see Pane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parage</td>
<td>parentage, birth</td>
<td>475, 6007, Roq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parcas</td>
<td>perchance, 3690. See Pecas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parcellly</td>
<td>partially, partially</td>
<td>4015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parde</td>
<td>par Dieu</td>
<td>155, 3993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parfight</td>
<td>perfect</td>
<td>3994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parfightnesse</td>
<td>perfection</td>
<td>p.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parlement</td>
<td>a parliament, talk, discourse</td>
<td>2363, 2653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part here</td>
<td>depart, hence, part to you here</td>
<td>2839, 5636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parted</td>
<td>departed, 2972, 5157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Pesible, soft, gentle; in wise pesible = in an undertone, 3653.

Pesibilly, peacefully, 2427, 5198.

Petyvins, men of Poitou, 1362.

Pight (tendus), pitched, 869, 918, 5417; set, placed, 5034.

Pilour, pillar, 5035.

Pine, pain, sorrow, torment, grief, 2899, 3634, 3668; trouble, 6515. A.S. pîn.

Pipe (tonneau), a large barrel, properly a half-tun, 5773, 5926. “Pype, vessel, or half-tunne.” Pr. Parv.

Pitty (pays), pit, 2882. [Cf. Moisty for Moist, Bryghty for Bryght.]


Playnly (a plain), openly, 1567.

Plener, full, plentiful, 2751.

Plenerly, fully, 1931; plainly (Fr. plaines pour voir), 2047.


Plieth, bendeth, tendeth, p.81.

Plite, condition, 2721, 2803; ending plite = final state, death, 5681.

Ply, to bend, 4188.

Porete, poverty, 3666.

Port, 1350, door, gate.

Porte, 2680, 5420, door.

Port, Porte, burden, distress, 3819, 3925, 3987. Fr. porter.

Portraed, pourtrayed, 5478.

Poscede, possess, 2629.

Postell, apostle, 4963.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

Postelles, apostles, 6477.
Poyntement (ce point), point agreed on, agreement, 505.
Predestinati, predestined, 4379.
Preise (preisse), prize, value, 1518. O.Fr. preiser. Bur.
Prented, imprinted, 3859.
Present, at this present, 2865.
Preynens, present time, 1439.
Presently, now, 2370, 2841; immediately, 4748.
President, precedent, original, p. 16.
Prest, Preste, quickly, readily, 1697, 2542, 2739, 4486, 5023, 5403. Fr. pret, O.Fr. prest.
Preue, privy, secret, 3462.
Preu, prove, ^.92.
Preuyd, proved, £>. 170; approved, p. 174.
Preuyngly, with good proof, 2524.
Preuently, imprinted, impressed, 382. "Preentyn, Inprimo."
Pr. Parv.
Prisyngly, laudably, p. 96.
Prise (pris), high estimation, fame, p. 99; prize, 3895.
Procincte (lencliainte), neighbourhood, precincts, 737.
Proheim, p. 29, } procm.
Promission; in phr. land of promission = land of promise, Palestine, 4634, 5713, 5759, 6063.
Promittingy, promising, 5128.
Prossesse; in phr. within prossesse = in process of time, 5288.
Prys (pris), honour, fame, 5387.
Psabulmes, psalms, 1670.
Pulquierous, fair, 1263. Lat. pulcher.
Punition, punishment, 3671.

Purchas, to get, acquire, 1300; attain, reach, 546; attain to, have, 733, 1347, 1447, 2939; that it may purchace = that I may translate it, p. 70; to purchas = to be got, to be had, 266; purchas syghes, heave sighs, 194; made purchas = acquired, 2497; mage gan purchas = arrived, 2734.
Purchassyng, means of recovery (for him), 1375; Fr. Text, "Quicques homme ne le pouoit guerir."
Purer, poorer, 2872.
Purneance, provision, 2376.
Purneyd, provided, 2378.
Pusance, power, skill, p. 187.
Pusan, 4438, } mighty.
Pusaunt, 212, } Pusantly, mightily, 2466.
Quarell (querelle), suit, claim, demand, 5560. "Querelle, A sute, action, or process against," &c. Cotg.
Quented (acointe), acquainted, 2636.
Quicke, alive, 384; quicke roche, live rock, 1125, 4352.
Quite-clayme, a quit-claim, free and full pardon, 1885. Fr. text, II est de nous quie et clamez.

Rabbishly, hastily, speedily, 4690. "Rapy or hastyn. Festino." Pr. Parv. [Ravishing = rapid; Ch. Shak.]
Radde, read, 3203, 4651.
Raid, in the phr. ill raid (tres mal atourne), = in an evil plight; lit. ill dressed, but Raymond was undressed already, 2915.
Raide, in the phr. foule raide = put into an evil plight, 3090. O.Fr. arvoir.
Ramage (Ramaige), wild, uncultivated, 527. Ch.
Randon, impetuosity, 1727. O.Fr. randon.
Rase, to tear, rend, 5884, 5938. Fr. raser.
Rather, sooner, 4011.
Raundon, as Randon, 3048, 5866; haste, 707.
Ray, array, apparel, 846, 2429. Eayd (1), dressed, 2608; (2) read, 3186.
Raynes, the reins, 4325.
Rehaude (Hbaude), a ribald fellow, a wretch, 2839, 4197; Recheat, retreat, place of shelter, 159. O.Fr. recet, Eur.
Reclaust, warmed again, 4024.
Recluse, become a recluse, 4966.
Recomfort (reconfort), comfort, consolation, 412.
Recommend, entrust, 5208.
Recreant (recreans), defeated, utterly worsted, 4781, 5325.
Recreantly, disgracefully, 4436.
Redoubted, feared, 6168.
Reced, as Renged, 1315.
Rentid (renta), endowed with rents, 5300.
Repair (repaire), fort, fastness, 1133; abode, 5168; to your repair you take = betake yourself to your usual abode, i.e. to Poitiers, 574.
Repref, reproof, dishonour, 371, 1255, 1258, 2322.
Repreued, reproved, 237.
Requeryng, praying, beseeching, 3174.
Require (requiers), pray, p.204; beseech, entreat, 2579, 5612; ask for, 5383.
Requiring, praying, beseeching, p.61, 1616, 3352.
Resoned, talked to, 791.
Resplendising, shining brightly, 1196, 4512.
Rethoriously, rhetorically, with flourishes, 6611.
Reuel, pleasantry, jesting, sport, 5193. "Revel, ... badinage, plaisanterie." Bur. Ch.

Rew; in phr. by rew = in order (lit. by row), 5211, 6500, 6554. Ch.

Rewarde, look about, consider, 1190, 2367, 5528. O.Fr. rew borderline. Roq.

Rewarded, regarded, beheld, 291. Ch.

Rewmes (royaulme), 1467, 1505, 2412, 5552, &c. Ch.

Rewmes, kingdoms, 1647, 1662, 1669.

Richesse, riches, 5437. Ch.

Right (droit), law, 8.

Riuage, arrival; riuage gan purschas = arrived, 2734; Fr. text, arrived.

Riu, open in one's dealings, public, openly manifest, 3461.

"Ryff, or opyny knowe. Manifestus, publicatus." Pr. Parv.

Riued, arrived, 1350, 6408.

Roche, rock, 4270, 4935, 5031.

Romans, romance, 6415, 6417, 6418, 6420.

Ron, run; run in age = advanced in years, 5425.

Rought, recked, 5106.

Route, company, 3787. Ch.

Routhe, ruth, pity, 3684. Ch.

Row, rough, 1266. A.S. roh.

Ger. roh. Ch.

Rowted, snored, 5784. Ch.

Rudesse, violence, force, 4272.

Fr. rudesse.

Rychesse, riches, 5283.

Ryn, run, 3252.

Ryn (rain), border, edge, rim, 879. Ger. rain. O.Fr. rain.

Ryued, arrived, 3248. See Riued.

Saad, said, 647.


Sad, adv. firmly, certainly, 874, 3274; determinedly, 2208; discreetly, quietly, 4104; firmly, fixedly, 3859; full sad = very certainly, 4459. [The word is often a mere expletive.]

Sagesse, wisdom, 6224.

Sagilly, sagely, 5315.

Said, an error for sad = discreet, 5788.

Sain, say, 1183, 2760, 2767, 2771, 5193. Ch.

Sain, seen, 729, 752, 2991, 3099.


Samfayl, without fail, 2351.

[Rather read sanfail; see Sanfaill.]

Sampler, p.77, { original. Lat. Sampere, 2947, | exemplar. Sampnolence, somnolency, slumber, 4616.

Sanfaill, without fail, 1590.

Santréd, mused, wondered, 4653.

Cf. Eng. saunter.

Satefied, satisfied, i.e. well rewarded, 1917; satisfied with presents, 5162.

Sauacion, salvation, 4970, 5155.

Sautes, assaults, 2145. Ch.

Say, essay, attempt, 354.

Sayand, saying, 206.

Saying-again, gainsaying, 3242.

Sayn, 51, | seen.

Sayne, p.186, |}

Sayn, say, p.184.

Seaberger, scabbard, 2790, 3047, 3060, 4722.

Scarmish, skirmish, 2079.
Scaturday (sampilmed), Saturday, 2724.
Scapel, chapel, 771.
Schapel, church, 3247.
Scomfite, to discomfit, 4198.
Scomfite, discomfite, conflict, 4148.
Scripture, writing, record, records, p. 118, 2076, 2115, 5484, 5494, &c.
Scorched, scorched, 3551. [Spelt scorched in l. 3678.]
Secundarilie (secondement), a second time, 512.
Self, seven, 4181.
Self, seventh, 1261.
Seth, seventh, 4437.
Seignorie (seignorie), lordship, dominion, 55, 5197, 5751; rank, high degree, 339. Ch.
Seignoried, was lord of, ruled, 5090.
Semblable, like, 6488. Ch.
Semblably (samblablement), similarly, in like manner, 5330.
Semblabily, as Semblably, 1092.
Semblance, appearance, 1768.
Semblant (samblant), appearance, 1421. Ch.
Semble wyse, like wise, like manner, 1904. [Cf. lyke-wyse in l. 1901.]
Send, sent, 5273.
Sentence, meaning, sense, 6553, 6568. Ch.
Sentiment, opinion, p. 125.
Sept, seven, 1670.
Sepulture, sepulchre, 3627. Ch.
Sery, prob. an error for “say,” 3556. [If sery exists, it can only mean assert. Cf. Lat. sero, It. asserire.]
Setterday, Saturday, 5598, 5601.
Seueralte, separate portions, 3640.
[The text requires some word expressing the exact opposite of this, viz. integrity.]
Sew, to follow, 2002; to pursue, 1751. Ch.
Sewed, followed, 138, 142, 3980, 4476, &c.
Sex, six, 5281. Lat. sex.
Shad, shed, 5063.
Shal, an error for small, small, 1393.
Shamenous, shameful, 3407, 3444, 5135.
Share (trench), shore, cut, 3075.
She, it; used of a chamber, 4495, 4502. Fr. la chambre.
Shend, despoiled, ruined, 4988.
A.S. se'cnan.
Shereful (chiere), dear, 829.
Shete, to shoot, 1176.
Shette (chut), shot down, i.e. fell quickly, 5905. A.S. sec'ehan, unless it be imitated from Fr. chut.
Shiste, 2792. Prob. an error for shifte = divided the wood, sliced away at it. “Schfytn, or part asundyr;” “Schyftyn, or partyn, or delyn.” Pr. Parv. Cf. Du. schiften, Dan. skifte; Sw. skifta, to divide; O.N. skjifa, to cleave, split; Ger. schiefern, to slice off. The Eng. shire, a slice, seems to give the true clue to the word. The Fr. text has Tant boulta parcy et par la, where boulta = bunta, thrust, smote.
Shitte, to enclose, 555; shut, 4409, 4412; shut in, 3295, 5791, &c.
Sho, she, 836.
Sighty, visible, 1229. Pr. Parv.
Simplesse, simpleness, lack of skill, 6567, 6601, 6608, 6610.
Sin, since, 3731, 4113, 5557.
Sinistre, left, 3049.
Sith, since; long sith = long since, 6209; euer sith = ever since, 4414.
Sithen, since, 163, 4424; afterwards, 3187, 3980. A.S. sithan.
Sixte, sixth, 4427.
Slay (occist), slew, 1251.
Sle, to slay, 210, 1367, 119, 3017.
Slegges (marteaulx), sledge-hammers, 3000, 3065. A.S. slce.
Sly, siew, 2090, 3978, 4073; to slay, 114.
Slye (tua), slew, 147.
Slyest, slewest, 4254.
Smortherting, smothering, 3303.
Soghed, sighed, 2890.
Sogheth, sigheth, 6164.
Solain, famous, excellent, fair, 864, 6104. O.Fr. solempne.
Sollemply, solemnly, 6192.
Sompnolence, slumber, 5384, 5452.
Sompnolent, slumberous, 5376.
Sonly, soon, 4078.
Sothlese, Sothlesse, truly, verily, 197, 417, 940, 2657, 3852. [Sothlese should mean untruly, but the author insists that it shall not.]
Souldan, sultan, 1301, 1315, 1371, 1383. Ch.
Soudiour, soldier, warrior, 4081. See Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has foudlreant = one who terrifies.]
Souverayn, supreme, 210, 291, 297, 387, &c.
Soule, sole, single, 3641, 3770.
Souly, solely, singly, 4198.
Sounded, sounded, 4718. Ch.
Sounneth, soundeth, 5782.
Sowghid, sighed, 1944.
Sowly, as Souly, 4154.
Speedly, speedily, 3451.
Spell, to tell, relate, 5103, 5705. A.S. spellian.
Spere, sphere, 6509. Lancelot, 6.
Sperhauke (espresier), sparrow- hawk, 5374, 5396, 5440, 5453.
Sperhauke, i.e. Sparrow-hawk castle, 5413.
Spored, spurred, 4214.
Sporing, spurring, 4098.
Sprancles, sprinkles, tear-drops, 4016.
Sprites, spirits, feelings, affec- tions, 4648.
Staf, a line, verse, 6555. Cf. Eng. stave.
Staffes, lines, 6581.
Stage, story of a tower, 4925.
Standede, Standed, stone-dead, 115, 1376, 2282, 3121.
Staste, 1723. Doubtless an error for Staffe; they staffte them = they ranged themselves in line; an idea repeated in the words "putt into ordinance;" for the Fr. text has merely, Lois se misdrent en ordonnance. Cf. Staff, a line, supra. Kilian gives "Staven, Figere, pangere, statuere."
Stede, place, 4686, 4938, 4942.
Steke, to set, fix, 3538. G. stecken.
Stered, stirred, excited, 2217. Ch.
Stied, mounted, climbed, 5861. A.S. stigan.
Stikell, steep, 5848. A.S. sticde.
Stile, steel, 2259, 2960, 3042.
Stilen, of steel, 256.
Stoke, stuck, 3955.
Stonde, timæ, 3517. See Stounde.
Stondie, astonied, 2346. See Stoned.
Stoned, astonied, amazed, 728, 2940, 4700; in a trance, 3569.
O. Fr. estoner.
Stonyng (esbahissement), abasement, cause of shame, 1230.


Store, 5617. An error for Stere, to stir, cause, bring about.

Stour (estour), also Stoure, conflict, combat, 1360, 2231, 4165; pace, rate, 4827. Ch.

Stourne, stern, 5730.

Stratte, strait, narrow, 5809. Lat. strictus.

Strayned (destraint), strained, tormented, 1106.

Streight, stretched, made ready, 869, 918, 1005, 5417. A.S. streecan, to stretch; p.p. gestreht.

Streith, straightway, 712.

Strenglit (fort), a fortress, 1179, 1184, 1192, 3452, &c.

Stroyng, destroying, 3408.

Strayng, destroying, 3408.

Sutte, sweat, 3079.

Sucte, to sweat, 4851.

Suflisantmente, sufficiently, 3984.

Sughed, sighed, 5024.

Sugret, 3848, sugared, sweet.

Sugrd, 6029; Ch.

Sured, betrothed, 5087.

Surmitte, to lay a charge on, impose a task on, 5606. The line means, “To impose a task on Palestine, my youngest sister.” “Surmettre; imposer, charger, accuser.” Roq.

Surrend, to restore, render back again, 4986.

Suster, sister, 5595. A.S. suster.

Sustre, sister, 5606.

Sustres, sisters, 5575.

Swatte (tressue), sweated, 2781, 2876, 4929.

Syn, afterwards, p.176; since, 4928. See Sin.

Synny, sinful, 5218.

Tach (tache), a blemish, 1265.

Tacked (attachierant), attached, 4802. Pr. Parv.

Taking, sh. capture, 4920; vb. taken, 4921.

Talmondois (taillemondoiz), 1224. Prob. the name of a place, as taille = district. Roq.

Targe, target, shield, 4212.

Tasting, feeling, testing, 4491. Ch.

Teise, draw near to, approach, 1295.

Tend, vexed, grieved, 2328; irritated, disquieted, 5785; was vexed, incensed, 3213. A.S. teonan, to vex, irritate, incense.

Tende, kindled; debate tende = kindled strife, 2097; kindled, lighted (Fr. text, abumer font), 2136. A.S. tendan, to light, kindle.

Termyne, to finish, bring to an end, 5996.

Terrene, earthly, 417.

Terrenly, as regards lands; worthy terrenly = a great landholder, 5014. [The Fr. text has sera grant terrien, where terrien = terrier, seigneur qui a beaucoup de terres.]

Tewisday, 2670, 3247, Tewsdæy, 3309, 5763, day.

Tha (ilz), they, 1365.

Thaken (esprins), taken, seized, 3292.
Thaught, taught, 98, 768, 3962.
The, prosper, 4959. A.S. þeów.
Then, ten, 3477.
Thenke, think, 3801, 3804, 3815.
Ther-hens, thence, 4315. [Perhaps an error for Ther-thens.]
Ther-thens, thence, 3125, 3350, 4818, 5070, 5517, 5763.
Ther-thorough, thereby, 3149.
This, thus, 2892, 3424.
Tho, those, 1343, 1653, 3176, 3218, &c.; A.S. þæs. Ch.
Tho, then, 253, 4534, 5391. A.S. þæs.
Thorthought, through, 3863.
Thought, though, 6611.
Thrall, adj. subject, 4714.
Thraste, to thrust, 4233.
Throw, time; that throw = at that time, 626; in a throw, in a brief space of time, 3360. See Pr. Parv. A.S. þræc. Ch.
Thanges, 568; thongs. A.S. Thanges, 582; þwæng.
Thyme (temps), weather. 2735.
Thys, thus, 297, 3218, 3279, 5069.
Timbre (jüst), wooden hilt, 1377.
Tirandise, tyranny, 4732.
Tirandisse, tyranny, 6487.
To, two, p.173, 31, 144, 1648, 1649, 1651, &c.
To-announcement (ton denuancier) preceding (you); man to-announcement = ancestor, 5566.
To-bore, native, 6563.
To-brok, brake very much, 5893. A.S. to-brecan.
To-chappled (dectrenche), cut small, 2272.
Togeders, together, 102, 1027, 1727, &c.
Told, accounted; nought told of = thought nothing of, 3029.
To-rent, rent severely, 5648; quite broken, 4290. Ch.
Tornorne, to-morrow, 2749.
Torn, turn, 2764, 2838, 2938, 3043, 6566; return home, 5266. Ch.
Torned, turned, 3738.
Torning, 2905, turning.
Tornyng, 3449, turning.
To-stoniste, much astonished, 2198.
To-tore, to tear severely, 5938.
To-tore, tore severely, 5872.
Tour, a tower, 4662, 4772, 4907.
Tour, a turn, circuit, 3875. Fr. tour.
Townishe people (celles de la ville), people of the town, 2443.
Toxicat (envelyme), poisoned, 1333, 1429.
Traiteresse, traitress, 2770.
Trauers, in the plr. in trauners (au trauners), across, 1161; across, sideways, 5886.
Trauersing, changing about, changing the place of words, 6562.
Traving, for Tarying, tarrying, 49. See note.
Trenchand, cutting, 3045. Ch.
Trewage, tribute, 4729, 4739, 6154. O.Fr. treu, treuage. Roq.
Trimble, tremble, 3997.
Trowe (trou), a hole, 4270.
Trowing (se croy Je), as I suppose, 3575, 4260; expecting, trusting, 4266.
Trusse, sb. a bundle, 720; (see Pr. Parv.) pack off, begone, 3011. O.Fr. torser, trusser. Bur.
Trussing (destruisant), making (them) pack off, routing (them), 2154; perhaps here used in the sense of destroying.
Tydy, timely; tydy stounde, timely moment, 5722. Cf. Ger. zeitig.
Vail, to avail; but used in phr. vail that vail might = happen what may; Fr. text, vaille que vaille, 2672.

Uaillant, valiant, 4650.

Ualey, valley, 584, 725, 747, &c.

Valoure, value, power, p. 50, 3899.

Uandosme, 3484. This is a proper name (the modern Vendôme), and the allusion to it must be a proverb. The line means, "By the tears of Van
dosme's beauty," (or face, or appearance), though "hys fair" is merely expletive. Fr. text, Et, pour la lurtne de vandosme.

Uarray, very, 5399.

Uermaill (venneillon), vermilion, scarlet, 3213, 4279, 5477.

Uerray, very, 4652.

Uiage, journey, expedition, 3123, 5820; purpose, 3953; necessaries for a journey (Lat. viaticum), 5020; of viage = on their journey, 2476. Ch.

Uilloincd, dishonoured, slighted, 2993. O.Fr. vilainer.

Vilously (villainement), insultingly, 2861.


Vmbleste, humblest, 4842.

Unbore, unborn, 3709.

Unconnyng, unskilful, 6610.

Unconnyngnesse, lack of skill, p. 12.

Unfold, explained, p. 130; to narrate, relate, 893, 4372, 5124; visibly, openly, plainly, 697, 2350, 5038; produced, given birth to, 4401; unfold of = brought forth by, 465 (cf. 1, 4401); narrated, related, 5990; evident, manifest, openly displayed, p. 35, 26.

Unhaply, by ill chance, 5918.

Unknow, unknown, 843, 4954.

Unmesurablenesse, want of moderation, talkativeness, 3594.

Unmete, immense, measurement, 5775. A.S. unmette.

Unmete, imperfect, sinful, 5225.

Vnshit, to open, 3501; open-Vnshitte, ed, 3945, 4747, 5792.

Vnwemmed, unblemished, 6569. See Wemme.

Uoide, to depart, 4109, 5590. Ch.

Uoided, departed, 5639; avoided, 3084.

Uois, voice, 2404, 3547, 4870.

Volente (voulente), wish, desire, 47, 3473. Ch.

Voluntarily (voulentiers), gladly, 5055.

Wacche, watch, 5523; to watch, 5375, 5395.

Wacchyd (veitta), watched; wacchyd his person = took heed to himself, kept himself awake, 5518.

Wace, was, 4769, 4844, 5243.

Waillant, valiant, 5354.

Wake, to watch, 5444, 5454. Ch.

Waked, watched, 5461.

Waking, watching, 5527.

Walling, welling up, 4161. A.S. wællen. Ger. wällen.

Wallure (mars), walls, 1152, 5504.
Waloping, galloping, 4827. Kilian gives "Galoppe, waloppe" in Appendix. See note to the line.

Warant, safeguard, defence, 4195; to guard, save, 4201.

Wardain, warder, 4415. Ch.

Warde, sb. custody, 4824; vb. guard, 5003, 5005; cf. garde in l. 5004.

Warde (gardez), take care, beware, 805, 834.

Warly, warily, 41, 4267; adj. warlike, 1362.

Waymented, lamented, 3324. O.Fr. waimenter. Bur.

Waymenting, lamenting, 4953; sb. a lament, 3459. Ch.

Wemme, spot, blemish, 466. A.S. went.

Wend, to turn about, 6566; went, i.e. arrived, 3153; went, 2264; turned, over-turn, 2104.

Wendyng, turning, 2905.

Went, weened, knew, 5646. See note to the line.

Wene (guerre), war, 2980, 3056, 3172, 4056, &c.

Were, whether, 5659. See Wher.

Were, wary, 4063.

Werly, warlike, 1591, 4148.

Wern (escondirioie), deny, refuse, refuse to do, p.126, 556, 1494. A.S. wyrnan.

Wern, warn, 4197. A.S. werman.

Werne, to deny, refuse, 82, 86, 520; see Wern.

Werre, war, 3659, 4429.

Werred, warred on, 5318. Ch.

Werrie, in a warlike way, 1741.

Wesom, weary, 4406; wersom goste = tired, oppressed spirit.

Wher, whether, 359, 4048, Where, 4654, 4657, 5083.

Where (guerre), war, 1281.

Where-hens, whence, p.114, 3351, 3383, 5489.

Wherethorough, whereby, 447, 3389, 4404.

Wherethorough, wherefore, 3079.


Whilis, whilst, 5597.

Wice, wise, 4896.

Wight, nimble, swift, 4910. Ch.

Wightly, quickly, 326; nimbly, 2260, 4226; soon, 4697, 4843; strongly, vigorously, 3066, 4699.


Wilfull, willing, glad, 1641.

Will, adv. well, 5527, 6171.

Wilnyng, wishing, 3178. Ch.

Win, to rise, get up, 2986. See Jam. s. v. Win — "to win up, to rise."

With, used in the sense of by, 4673. Ch.

Withdrawaunt, withdrawal, 5927.

Witshay, to gainsay, 86, 3235; refuse, 5529. A.S. wisseygan.

Ch.

Withsaing, gainsaying, 482. See l. 485.

Wo, adj. sad, 2538, 2562. Ch.

Woer, sadder, 2855.

Wode, mad, 3291, 4897. Ch.

Womanhed, womanhood, 2315.

Wonderly, wonderfully, 26, 5282; wondrous, 1241.

Wone (firm, ne), dwelling, 5786. Ch. [The MS. has lone.]


Wordly, worldly, 457, 2644, 2923; mortal, 1177; living in this world, alive, 3533. [Lance.

INDEX OF NAMES.

[In this index, the references under words in large capitals are to the pages of the book; otherwise, the references are to the lines. By p. is meant page, and by prol. the "Prologue."]

Albany, 4386, 5362.
Allexaundre, 6322.
Almayn, 2066.
Amerys, Amerie, or Amerye, earl of Poitiers, p. 8; adopts Raymond, p. 11; goes out hunting, p. 12; is accidentally slain by Raymond, p. 16; is buried, p. 29.
Angoy (Anjou?), 968.
Anthonye, prol. 177.
Antony, or Anthonye, fourth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 48; besieges Luxembourg, p. 64; marries Christian, p. 71; further notice of him, p. 184.
Aras (Arras), 2640.
Ardennes. See Dardame.
Aristotle, quoted; prol. 78.
Aritrige (= Autrige, i.e. Austria), 2497. Fr. text. Autriche.
Armenia. See Hermency.
Armiens, 1604.
Arragon, or Arrigon, 4636, 5168, 5607, 5709, 5764, 5768.
Arthur, prol. 91, 5748.
Auncere (Auxerre), 975.
Auoblon, or Aualon, 4548, 4644, 4858.
Ausoy (Alsace), 1700, &c.
Ausos (Alsaciens), 1703, 1733, 1736, 1743, 1750, 1754.
Ayglon, 5007.
Bachus, prol. 37.
Barry. See Salz.
Baueres (Bavaria), 2066.
Bernagant, 4312; an error for Ternagant = Termagnant.
Bertram, son of Amerye, 28.
Bertram, son of Anthony, and grandson of Melusine, becomes king of Alsace, p. 90.
Bewme (Beaune), 970.
Bew-repair, 1171; Fr. text, le bourg ou a moult beau Repaire.
Bewuais (Beauvais), 2640.
Blanche (daughter of Amerye), 27.
Brehaigne (Bohemia), 1696, 1939, 1951, 1972, 5328.
Brehaignons (Bohemians), 2072, 2093, 2116, 2154, 2182.
Bretain, 5086.
Brough-dieu, 2623.
Cambriere, 5359.
Celestines, 5961.
INDEX OF NAMES.

Charlemain, 6359, 6360.
Chartres, 2633.
Cipresse (Cyprus), 1297, 1467, 1600, 5317, 6275.
Ciprian, king, 1142, 1352, 1437.
Ciprian, a man of Cyprus, 1414.
Cipriens, men of Cyprus, 1316, 1332, 1338, 1400, 5351.
Cipriens, also spelt Quonig, Comqs, and Comquez, a mountain in Arragon, 4607, 4625, 5708, 6061.
Columbere (Coulombiers), 34, 125, 146, 866, 1099.
Comquez. See Coinqs.
Constantinoble, 946, 1114.
Couldrette, author of the French version of the romance, 6423, 6433.
Craquo, king of, p.76; killed by Raynold, p.82; burnt by the men of Alsace, p.83.
Crystian, daughter of the duke of Luxembourg, p.64; gives a feast to Anthony and Raynold, p.68; pardons the king of Alsace, p.70; is married to Anthony, p.71; asks Anthony to wear the arms of Luxembourg, p.75.
Crius, 5672.
Dardane, 2488. An error for d'Ardennes, the place meant being the French department named Ardennes.
Demarke, 2465.
Digon (Dijon ?), 974.
Dingenon, 982.
Eglentine, daughter of the king of Bohemia, p.78; laments his death, p.79; besieged by the Saracens, id.; welcomes the king of Alsace, p.83; is married to Raynold, p.87, 88.
Englande, 5357, 5741, 5968, 6006.

English Knight, the; his adventure in Arragon, 5741—5971.
Ermynee, daughter of the king of Cyprus, p.51; laments his sore wounds, p.52; besieged by the Saracens, p.53; made heiress by her dying father, p.56; marries Uriens, p.59.
Esclanous, 2075, 2091, 2094.
Estables, 978.
Faborugh, 2496. An error for Friburg; Fr. text, brouby.
Famagouce, Famagonsta in Cyprus, 1299, 1304.
Flourye, daughter of the king of Armenia, p.61; marries Guy, p.62.
Forest, earl of; 36, 60, 79, 91, 101.

Forest, earl of. See Fromounte.
Fraunce, 5687, 6388.
Frige (Phrygia), prol.36.
Frise (Friesland), 2463.
Fromont, seventh son of Raymond and Melusine, p.49; asks his father if he may turn monk, p.92; becomes a monk at Maillezais Abbey, p.95; is burnt by Geoffrey, p.96 (of which there is a more detailed account, pp.113—117).

Fromonte (earl of Forest), tempts Raymond to find out where Melusine goes on a Saturday, p.98; is threatened by Raymond, p.101; slain by Geoffrey, p.102 (of which there is a longer account, pp.169, 170).

Gaffray (Geoffrey), sixth son of Raymond and Melusine, p.49; says he will fight the giant Guedon, p.91; his fight with Guedon, pp.105—109;
slays Guedon, p. 110; says he will go to Northumberland, p. 113; burns down Maillezais abbey, pp. 114—117; goes to Northumberland, p. 118; he is to rebuild the abbey, p. 129; fights with the giant Grimold, pp. 141—151; enters the enchanted mountain, pp. 155—164; slays Grimold, p. 163; sees Raymond, p. 167; kills his uncle Fromont, p. 170; rebuilds the abbey, p. 176 (cf. p. 182); is assailed by the pope, p. 180; goes to Montserrat, p. 181; hears of Palestine's treasure, p. 207; falls ill, p. 208; dies, and is buried in the abbey, p. 209.

Gawayn, prol. 97.
Gian (Guienne), 6362.
Greffon, son of Uriens, 1562, 1584, 1585.

Grimold the giant, is sought by Geoffrey, pp. 141—144; fights with Geoffrey and flees away, pp. 145—151; found and slain by Geoffrey, pp. 161—163.

Guedon the giant, wastes Guerrande, p. 91; fights with Geoffrey and is slain, pp. 105—110; was cousin to Grimold, p. 148.
Guerrande, 2950, 3140, 3157, 3343, 4832.

Guy, third son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 48; goes to Cyprus, p. 51; aids the king of Cyprus, p. 52; marries Flourye, and is king of Armenia, pp. 61, 62; alluded to, p. 183 and p. 192.

Helmas, king of Albany, and husband of Presine, father of Melusine, Melior and Palestine, p. 152; enclosed in the enchanted mountain, p. 153; his tomb, p. 156; his history, pp. 157—160; alluded to, pp. 168, 173, 193, 199, and 207.

Hermeneg (Armenia), 1637, 5321, 5369, 5372, 5391, 5672, 6275.

Horrible, eighth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 50; Melusine advises that he be slain, p. 128; he is stifled in a cave, p. 137; alluded to, p. 184.

Hungery, 5993.

Iason, 1573.
Ihesu, 6525, 6539.
Iohan of Pertney, 6217, 6233.

Judus Isciariot, 3337.

Jupiter, 4313.

King of Bohemia; see Breaigne.

King of Craquo (Cracow); see Craquo.

King of Cyprus; see Ciprian, king.

King of France, 6265, 6272.

King of Hermyne (Armenia); his adventure at Sparrow-hawk Castle, pp. 186—195.

Lancelet, prol. 95.
Latin, 6558, 6565.

Lesignen, prol. 135, prol. 195. See Lusignen.

Loehier, 2486.

Lusignen, built and named, 1138; name alluded to, 3725; used as a war-cry, 5352; the romance named from it, 6420. [Mentioned very often.]

Luxembugh, 1235, 1697, 1802, 2096, 2475, 5333.

Lyon (popeLeo), 4964, 5144, 5156.

Mabregon, prol. 172.
Machon, 31.

Mahounde, 310, 4313.
Mailers Abbey (now Maillezais), 1252, 2553, 2581, 2591, &c.; burnt down, 2666, 3291—3325; rebuilt, 5104; Geoffrey is buried there, 6099.

Margot, 4312.

Mars, 2671.

Mathefelon, 6236, 6301.

Medee (Medea), 1572, 1575.

Meisiere (Mezieres), 2492.

Mel (Melle, dep. Deux Sèvres), built, 1199.

Melior, second daughter of Helmas and Presine, p.159; alluded to, p.174; keeper of Sparrowhawk Castle, p.185; interview with the king of Armenia, pp.190—194.

Melusine, eldest daughter of Helmas and Presine, p.158; her doom, p.159; meets with Raymond, pp.19—27; marries Raymond, pp.33—44; builds Lusignan, Mel, &c., pp.45, 47; her children, pp.46—50, p.92; is seen bathing by Raymond, p.100; comforts Raymond, p.104; Raymond calls her serpent, p.124; she reproaches him and bids him adieu, pp.125—134; is changed into a serpent and vanishes, p.135; reappears, p.139; her name explained, p.45.

Merkministre, 2622.

Merlyn, 5973. See note.

Meruant (Mervent), built, 1200; given to Thierry, 5007.

Meuse (river), 2491.

Midas, prol.36.

Mont-sarrat (Monserrat in Arragon), 5148, 5169, 5296, 5305.

Mychaell, 6462.

Norbelande (Northumberland), 3163, 3168, 4055, 4726, 4823.

Norway, 6278, 6280.

Octauian, 2.

Oedès (Eudes), second son of Melusine, p.47; marries daughter of the earl of Forest, p.63; alluded to, p.183.

Orthologue, 2464.

Palestine, youngest daughter of Helmas and Presine, p.160; mentioned, p.174 and p.193; she guards her father's treasure in Arragon, pp.196, 197.

Pannebourght (Pembroke), 5357.

Partenay (Parthenay), prol.122, prol.146; built, 1204. [Mentioned very often throughout the poem.]

Partenay, lord of, 6145; date of his death, 6182.

Partenay, Iohan of; see Iohan.

Pareys (Paris), 2640, 5690, 6202.

Payny (pagan lands), 1561.

Paynymes, 1328, 1385, 1395, 1469, &c.

Peyters (Poitiers), prol.121, 3, 21, 32, 174, 521, &c.

Péteuin (a Poitevin, a man of Poitou), 1374.

Petyuins (Poitevins), 1362, 1733, 1743, &c.

Petto (Poitou), 1220.

Penticost, 6182.

Perceuale, prol.97.

Perregort, 6354, 6372.

Poitiers, 53, 64, 89, &c. See Peyters.

Polin (Apolin), 4312.

Pope, the; 2636, 5144, 5156, 5216, 5224, 5253.


Promission, land of (land of Promise, Palestine), 5713, 5759, 5786, 6063.

Quonig, 4607. See Coinqs.
INDEX OF NAMES.

Raymound, son of the earl of Forest, adopted by Earl Amery, p.11; hunts with Amery, and accidentally kills him, pp.12—18; meets with Melusine, whom he marries, pp.19—42; permits his son Fromont to turn monk, pp.92—95; is tempted to see where Melusine goes on a Saturday, pp.98, 99; sees her bathing, p.100; his rage, and self-reproaches, pp.101—104; hears how the abbey of Maillezais is burnt, and visits the ruins, pp.119—121; his grief, and how he called Melusine a serpent, pp.122—124; his adieu to Melusine, and lament at her loss, p.177; becomes a hermit, p.178, 179; dies, p.182.

Raymond, ninth son of Raymond and Melusine, p.92, l.2550; where “Fromont” is a mistake for “Raymond”; becomes earl of Forest, p.184.

Raynold, fifth son of Melusine, p.49; goes with Anthony to Luxembourg, pp.63—68; goes with him next to Bohemia, pp.74—85; marries Eg lentyne, pp.86—89; mentioned again, p.184.

Ris, 980.

Rochel (Rochelle), 31, 968; built, 1219; also 1282, 2529, 3807, 5110, 6461.

Romain (Romanée?), 972.

Romayns (Romans), 2469.

Rome, 266, 4964, 5068, 5119.

Saints, invocation of. On pp. 221, and 222, the following saints are invoked: SS. Agnes, Andrew, Augustin, Clement, Cuthbert, Denise, Edith, Germain (Germanus), Iohan the baptist, Katerine, Laurence, Martin, Mary, Magdelene, More (Maurice), Mychaell, Nicholas, Paul, Peter, Seuerine (Severinus), Siluestre, Steuin (Stephen), Vincent. Also at p.224 thanks are given to S. John the apostle, S. Michael, and the Virgin Mary.

St. Cross, church of, 6189.

Seint Johan-of-Angely (now St. Jean d’Angely), 976.

Seint Iougon, 975.

Seint Lowes (Louis IX.), 6199.

Seint Martin’s, 2630.

Seint Messent (St. Maixent), 1200.

Seint pursain (St. Pourçain-sur-Allier), 980.

Salz and Barry (Salisbury), prol. 178.

Sarasins, 1311, 1330, 1964, 2089, 2099, &c.; all killed and burnt, 2290.

Sarasyne, 309.

Saturday, 490, 2724, 5598, 5601.

Soudan (Sultan), 1317; killed, 1381.

Sperhauke castell, romance of; 5370—5678.

Suriens, 1387.

Terry. See Thierry.

Tewsdav, 2670, 3309.

Theophilus, 6459.

Thierry, tenth and youngest son of Melusine, p.92; is to be lord of Parthenay, p.138; nursed by Melusine by night, p.140; goes with Geoffrey, p.173; governs Parthenay, p.175.

Tholouse, 5159, 5199, 5982.

Tiberius Cesar, prol.28.
INDEX OF NAMES.

Tourain, 970, 2629.  
Toures, 2629.  
Tourimz (Tours?), 974.  
Trinite, the; 6434, 6547.  
Tristram, 5750, 6008.  
Trompe (name of a tower), 1186.  
Turkes, 1387.  

Valerius Maximus, prol.27.  
Vandosme, 3484.  
Vauuant (Vouvent), built, 1200; 2676, 3125, 3368, 3372, 3453, 5007.  

Uiart, 978.  
Virgin Mary, 465, 6455, 6548.  
Urien, or Uriens, eldest son of Melusine, p.46; goes to Cyprus, p.50; kills the sultan, p.53; is made king of Cyprus, p.57; marries Ermynee, p.59; noticed, p.183.  

William, 6175.  
Yrlande, 6286.  
Ywon, 2490.